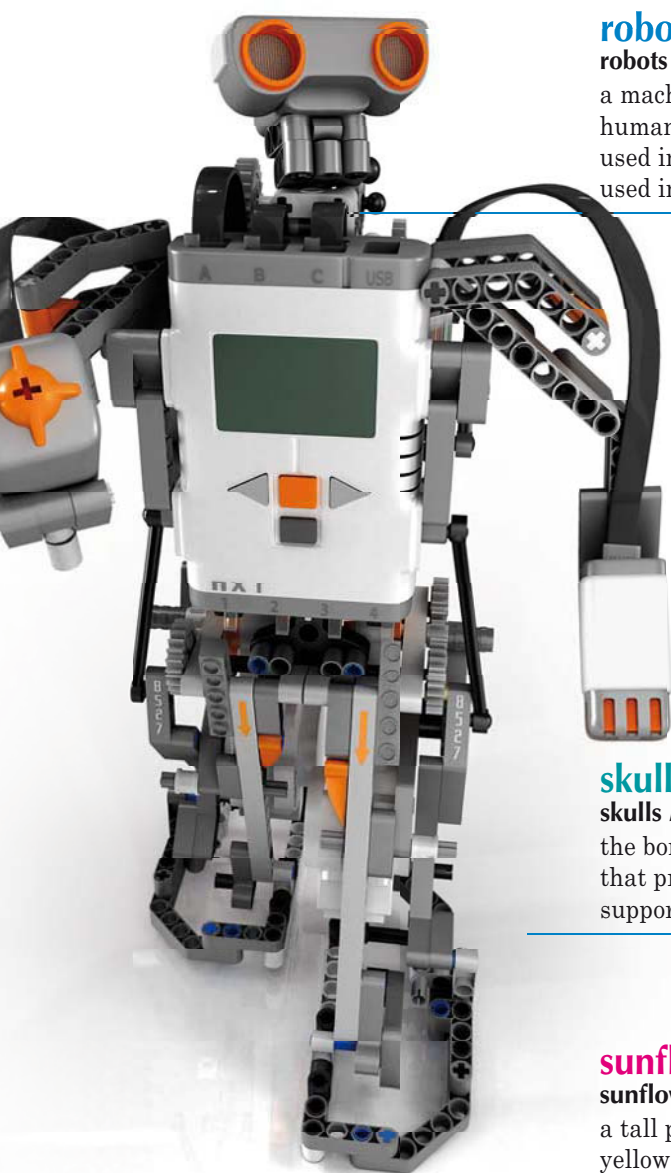




Children's Illustrated Dictionary



robot

robots *noun*

a machine that can imitate some human actions. Robots are often used in factories, but can also be used in homes.



skull

skulls *noun*

the bone frame of the head that protects the brain and supports the face.



bulb

bulbs *noun*

the rounded glass part of an electric light.



sunflower

sunflowers *noun*

a tall plant with large, yellow flowers. The seeds can be eaten or used to make cooking oil.





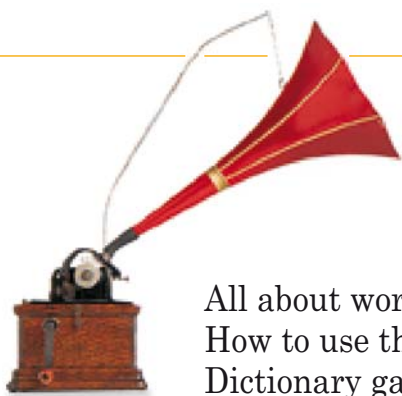
Children's Illustrated Dictionary

John McIlwain



DORLING KINDERSLEY

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z



Contents



All about words	4	<i>Musical instrument</i>	133
How to use this dictionary	6	<i>Pet</i>	148
Dictionary games	8	<i>Plant</i>	151
The dictionary	12	<i>Reptile</i>	168
Full-page entries:		<i>Sea life</i>	178
<i>Alphabet</i>	16	<i>Shape</i>	182
<i>Bird</i>	28	<i>Skeleton</i>	188
<i>Boat</i>	31	<i>Sport</i>	197
<i>Car</i>	39	<i>Time</i>	216
<i>Costume</i>	51	<i>Transportation</i>	221
<i>Dinosaur</i>	61	<i>Tree</i>	223
<i>Fish</i>	79	<i>Universe</i>	229
<i>Fruit</i>	85	<i>Vegetable</i>	233
<i>Growth</i>	94	Abbreviations	246
<i>Horse</i>	102	Spelling guide	248
<i>Insect</i>	108	Word building	249
<i>Jewelry</i>	112	Facts and figures	250
<i>Mammal</i>	124	Countries of the world	252



LONDON, NEW YORK,
MELBOURNE, MUNICH, AND DELHI

Senior Editors Nicola Tuxworth,
Susan Peach
Senior Art Editor Rowena Alsey
Project Editor Lee Simmons
Art Editor Marcus James
Editor Claire Watts
Designers Cheryl Telfer, Diane Clouting

Managing Editor Jane Yorke
Managing Art Editor Chris Scollen
Production Jayne Wood

Photography by Andy Crawford,
Steve Gorton, Susanna Price,
and Tim Ridley

Illustrated by Grahame Corbett,
Peter Dennis, Bill Le Fever,
Nicholas Hewetson, Louis Mackay,
Roger Stewart, and Jolyon Webb

Language Consultants The Centre for Literacy
in Primary Education, London, England
Pronunciation Consultant Sheila Dignen

2009 Edition:
Project Editor Niki Foreman
Senior Art Editor Sheila Collins
Managing Editor Linda Esposito
Managing Art Editor Diane Thistlethwaite
Publishing Manager Andrew Macintyre
Category Publisher Laura Buller
Production Editors Maria Elia,
Vivianne Ridgeway
Jacket Editor Mariza O'Keeffe
Jacket Designer Akiko Kato
Geography Consultant Simon Mumford
US Editor Margaret Parrish

DK India
Head of Publishing Aparna Sharma
Design Manager Arunesh Talapatra
Editorial Manager Glenda Fernandes
Assistant Editor Samira Sood
Designers Malavika Talukder,
Govind Mittal
DTP Coordinator Sunil Sharma
DTP Designers Dheeraj Arora,
Preetam Singh

First published in the United States in 1994
This revised edition published in 2009 by
DK Publishing
375 Hudson Street, New York, New York 10014

Copyright © 1994, 2009
Dorling Kindersley Limited
09 10 11 12 13 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
CD207—05/09

All rights reserved under International and Pan-American Copyright Conventions. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner. Published in Great Britain by Dorling Kindersley Limited.

A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress.
ISBN 978-0-7566-5196-1

Color reproduction by Colourscan, Singapore
Printed and bound by Toppan Printing Co. Ltd., China



Introduction

The Dorling Kindersley Children's Illustrated Dictionary is specifically aimed at children of seven years and up, an age when children are becoming increasingly independent readers and writers and when a dictionary can be a valuable companion.

Words and pictures

Unlike many other dictionaries, *The Children's Illustrated Dictionary* is not just about words—it also contains pictures. Children today are used to information being presented in a visual form through television, movies, and computers, and are skilled readers of images. As a result, they require books to be increasingly visually sophisticated.

The colorful photographs and illustrations in this dictionary are fresh, exciting, and highly relevant to children's interests and concerns. These images will help to draw young readers into the book; they also work with the text to give clear and concise definitions.

Vital skills for readers and writers

Using a dictionary can teach children many useful skills. One of the most important is the ability to locate information that is organized in alphabetical order. Once acquired, this skill will enable them to use many other reference books, from telephone directories to encyclopedias, that are organized along the same principle. The clear design and layout of this dictionary make it easy for children to learn how to look things up.

The Children's Illustrated Dictionary can also help to widen vocabulary and improve spelling. Young readers and writers can find out for themselves what an unfamiliar word means or check any spellings about which they are unsure.

In addition, this book will help children develop their awareness of words and the relationships between them. An introductory section explains the concept of parts of speech, such as nouns and verbs, that are also listed under each entry in the dictionary. The final section looks at word beginnings and endings, spelling patterns, and common abbreviations.

A dictionary with a difference

A unique feature of this dictionary is the 26 full-page entries, where words and pictures are grouped by theme.



Browsing through these word collections, on subjects as diverse as costumes and time, children will enjoy recognizing known words and concepts and discovering new vocabulary and information. These pages offer many opportunities for discussion and provide the basis for further exploration of a wide range of topics and themes.

A lasting work of reference

The Children's Illustrated Dictionary combines a core of common vocabulary with words that have a high interest level for children of this age group. It provides them with both a rich source of information about the world and an important resource for developing their reading and writing skills.



All about words

In every sentence that we speak or write, there are several types of word. They are called “parts of speech.” Each of them has its own name and its own job to do in the sentence. In this dictionary, each word

entry has its part of speech printed below it in *italic* type. The parts of speech that are labeled in the dictionary (verbs, adverbs, adjectives, interjections, prepositions, and nouns) are explained on these two pages.



She **runs** to school every morning.

Verbs

Verbs are sometimes called “action words” because they are words that describe what a person or a thing is doing. **Sit**, **think**, **sleep**, **sing**, and **climb** are all verbs. A sentence must contain a verb to make sense. There are a few special kinds of verb, such as “being” and “helping” verbs, that do slightly different jobs in a sentence.



The dog often **lies** on the floor.



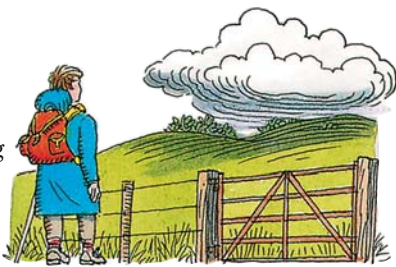
They **were** both very angry.

Being verbs

Being words, such as **am**, **is**, **are**, **was**, and **were**, all come from the verb **to be**. They link someone or something with the words that describe them.

Helping verbs

Verbs such as **have**, **be**, **will**, **must**, **may**, and **do**, are sometimes used with other verbs in a sentence. They show how possible or necessary it is that an action takes place. Helping verbs can also be used to show a verb’s tense.



It **may rain** tomorrow.



I **do like** sandwiches!

Verb tenses

The form of a verb shows whether the action it describes takes place in the present, the past, or the future. This is called the verb’s tense. When a verb, such as **hang**, appears in this dictionary, the entry looks like this:



hang
hangs hanging hung
verb

The second line of the entry shows how the verb is written in three different tenses—the present, the continuous present, and the past tense. These tenses are used like this:

Present tense:
She **hangs** up her T-shirt.

Continuous present tense:
She **is hanging** up her T-shirt.

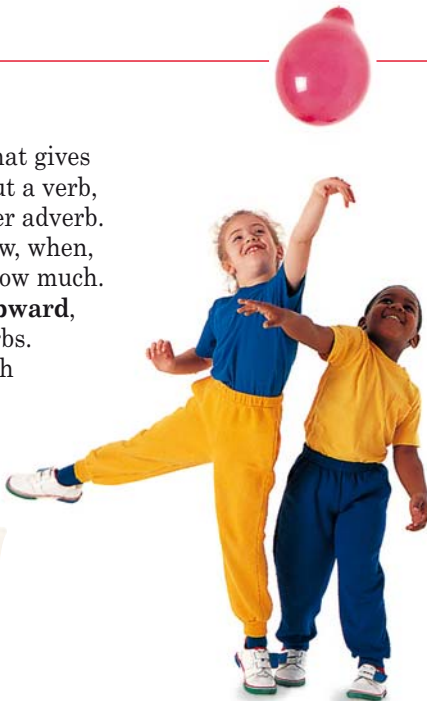
Past tense:
She **hung** up her T-shirt.

Adverbs

An adverb is a word that gives more information about a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. Adverbs can tell us how, when, where, how often, or how much. **Slowly, yesterday, upward, and very** are all adverbs. Many adverbs end with the letters “ly.”



*These newspapers are all published **daily**.*



*They played **happily** with the balloon.*

Nouns

A noun is a word that names a thing, a person, or a place. **Cat, teacher, spoon, and city** are all nouns. Nouns do not have to be things that you can see—words like **truth** and **geography** are also nouns.



*They often went to the **café** for a **snack**.*



*The **present** came in a round **box** tied with **ribbon**.*

Adjectives

An adjective is a word that is used to describe a noun. **Fat, yellow, sticky, dark, and hairy** are all adjectives.



*The car was **big, red, and shiny**.*



*A **tall, green, prickly** cactus.*

Interjections

Interjections are words such as **hello** and **good-bye** that can be used on their own, without being part of a full sentence. Exclamations, such as **Oh!** and **Ouch!**, are also interjections.

Conjunctions

Conjunctions are words such as **and, but, and of**, that are used to join parts of sentences together.

Prepositions

Prepositions, such as **in, with, behind, and on**, show how one person or thing relates to another.

*She held the ball **above** her head.*



Comparatives and superlatives

If you want to compare a person or thing with another, you often use an adjective in the comparative or superlative form. **Taller, easier, better, and quicker** are comparatives. **Tallest, easiest, best, and quickest** are superlatives. Comparatives either end with the letters “-er,” or include the word “more.” Superlatives either end with the letters “-est” or include the word “most.”



Adjective:
*This ball is **big**.*



Comparative:
*This ball is **bigger**.*



Superlative:
*This ball is the **biggest**.*

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

What's on a page

Use the guide word at the top of the page to help you find the page a word is on. The left-hand guide word, **rabbi**, tells you that this is the first word on the page.

Each new letter
section starts with
a big letter, like this **R**.

Use the alphabet running down the side of the page to help you find your place in the dictionary. The highlighted letter tells you that you are in the **R** section.

The headwords in this dictionary are listed in alphabetical order—the same order as the letters of the alphabet. Words that begin with **A** are grouped at the start of the dictionary, followed by **B** words, and so on up to **Z**. Where several words start with the same letter, the second

Headword

This is the word you are looking up. The headword is printed in heavy, black letters at the start of the entry. The definition underneath explains what the headword means.

The right-hand guide word, **rate**, tells you that this is the last word on this page.

The photos and illustrations show you exactly what things look like and help to define the headwords.

Families of linked words are enclosed in a box. All the words in this box start with the same word, **rain**.

All the pictures and labels on a full-page entry are linked to the main headword. This page shows different car types, with their various parts labeled.



How the entries work

Headword

The headword is printed at the start of the entry. This shows you how to spell the word.

Plural

This tells you how to write a noun when there is more than one of the thing it is referring to. Here, **rams** is the plural of the headword **ram**.

Definition

This part of the entry explains what the headword means. If a word has more than one meaning, the first meaning given is normally the one that is most common. Other meanings are listed below.

ram

rams noun

1 a male sheep.



2 a device for pushing against something with force.



*They used the log as a **ram** to break down the door.*

ram verb

Part of speech

This shows whether the word is a noun, verb, adjective, interjection, adverb, or preposition. Find out more about parts of speech on pages 4–5.

Tenses of verbs

These three forms of the verb **share** show how it is written in the present, continuous present, and past tenses. These tenses are explained on page 4.

share

shares **sharing** **shared**
verb

1 to have or use together.

2 to divide something into parts to give to others.



*They **shared** the melon.*

Sample sentence

The sentence that follows the definition gives you an example of how the headword is used. In the sample sentence the headword is always written in heavy, black type like this: **shared**.

Comparisons

The two forms of an adjective that are shown here are called the comparative and superlative. They are explained on page 5.

Rarer means “more rare” and **rarest** means “the most rare.”

rare

adjective

unusual or not common.

*A **rare** blue morpho butterfly.*

■ comparisons **rarer** **rarest**

■ opposite **common**



Opposite

This tells you the word that is the opposite of the headword. For example, **common** is the opposite of the headword **rare**.

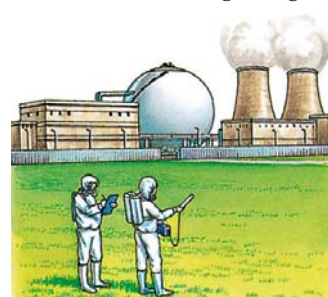
Pronunciation guide

This guide helps you to pronounce difficult words. It respells the word so that you can sound out the letters. Part of the guide is in heavy, black type. This shows you which part of the word to stress, or say more loudly.

radioactivity

noun

the energy released by the center of atoms breaking up in some substances. High amounts of radioactivity can be harmful to living things.



*They tested for **radioactivity** outside the nuclear power plant.*

■ say **ray-dee-oh-ak-tiv-i-tee**

radioactive adjective

Related words

Other words that are related to the headword are listed here. This related word, **radioactive**, is the adjective that comes from the headword **radioactivity**.

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Dictionary games

See if you can solve these word puzzles, using your dictionary to help you. The games will help you learn how to use the dictionary quickly and easily. You can play all of the games on your own, but you can also play

with a friend. Try giving a point for each correct answer and then see which of you gets the highest score. The answers to all the puzzles are somewhere in this dictionary. Have fun!

Alphabetical birds

How quickly can you arrange these 12 bird names in alphabetical order? You could use the alphabet at the side of the page to help you sort them out. For more help, turn to page 6, where alphabetical order is explained in detail.



pelican



parrot



flamingo



peacock



eagle



stork



owl



ostrich



duck



budgerigar



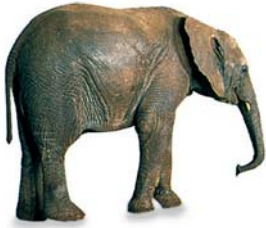
crane



penguin

True or false?

Here are some word definitions for you to read. Can you tell which are true and which are false? Remember to check every part of the definition before you decide whether it is true. You can find out whether you were right by looking up the words in the dictionary.



An **elephant** is a huge mammal that lives in Europe and North America.



A **microscope** is an instrument that magnifies very tiny things so that they can be seen in detail.



A **harp** is a musical instrument that you hit with sticks or your hands to make a noise.



A **stethoscope** is an instrument that is used by doctors for looking in your ears.



An **iguana** is a large lizard found mainly in Central and South America.



A **mosaic** is a picture or pattern made of small squares of colored stone.



A **plumber** is a person who repairs the glass in broken windows.



An **amphibian** is an animal that can live in water and on land.

Sound-alikes

Below are some pairs of pictures. The two words that go with each pair sound the same but are spelled differently. Can you figure out what they are? The first letter of each answer is shown as a clue.

Here's an example to help you:



hare

h



hair



s



f



p



s



Sound-unlikes

This is the opposite of the game above. The two words that go with these pairs of pictures are spelled the same, but sound different. Can you figure out what the words are? The first letter of each answer is given as a clue.

b



t



w



a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

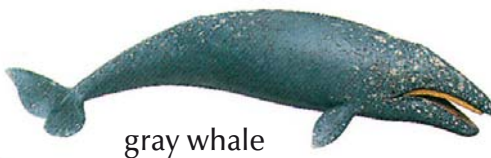
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Odd word out

If you look carefully at these pictures of animals and objects, you will see that in each group there is an "odd word out." Which is it and why? If you get stuck, the special full-page entries in the dictionary will help you.



angelfish



gray whale



mandarin fish



great white shark



bassoon



fiddle



balalaika



sitar



Triceratops



Stegosaurus



Tyrannosaurus rex



crested water dragon

Action words

The people in these pictures are all doing something. The words in the list are all "action words," or verbs. Can you match the right verb to each of the pictures? There are more verbs than pictures, so choose carefully. Check your answers by looking up the words in the dictionary.



juggle
kneel
climb
throw
hit
crouch
bend
stretch
drum
explore

Word detective

Be a detective and follow the clues to answer these questions. The answers are all in the dictionary.



◆ Which mammal gnaws down trees to build dams in rivers?

Look for a word beginning with b.

◆ What are emeralds, sapphires, and rubies?

Look for a page of sparkly things.

◆ Which word connects an egg, a nut, and a crab?

Look on page 183.

◆ What is the opposite of few?

Check on page 125.

◆ What is the name of a planet and also the name of the silver-colored metal used in thermometers?

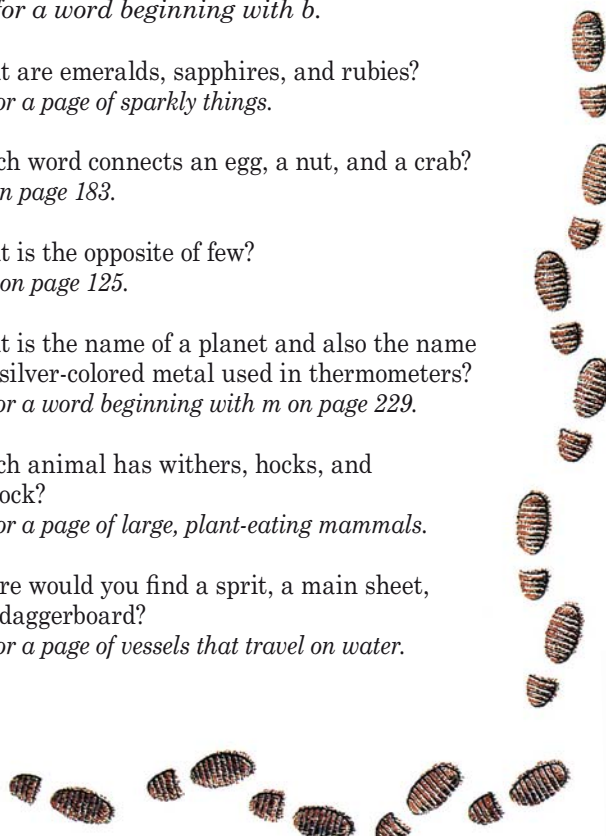
Look for a word beginning with m on page 229.

◆ Which animal has withers, hocks, and a forelock?

Look for a page of large, plant-eating mammals.

◆ Where would you find a sprit, a main sheet, and a daggerboard?

Look for a page of vessels that travel on water.



Guess the word

Some words have more than one meaning. Each of these groups of pictures illustrates three different meanings of the same word. Can you figure out what it is? Check in the dictionary to see if you are right.

Here's an example to help you:



Rhyming words

This is a game where you have to spot the “odd word out.” The words that go with each of these groups of pictures all rhyme except one. Which one is it?

The first letter of each word is there to give you a clue. Remember that there can be lots of different ways of spelling the same sound.



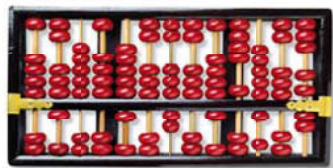
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

A a

abacus

abacuses *noun*

a frame with sliding beads, used for counting.



abbreviation

abbreviations *noun*

a short way of writing a word or a group of words.

"Ave." is an **abbreviation** of "avenue."

■ say a-bree-vee-ay-shun

abdomen

abdomens *noun*

the part of an animal's or a person's body that contains the intestines and stomach (see **insect** on page 108 and **sea life** on page 178).

■ say ab-do-men



He had the **ability** to play many instruments at once.

about

about *preposition*

1 on the subject of.

We talked **about** the play.

2 on the point of doing something.

About to leave.

about

about *adverb*

more or less.

There were **about** 300 people at the circus.

above

above *preposition*

over, or higher than something.



Above her head.

■ opposite **below**

abroad

abroad *adverb*

in or to another country.

She went **abroad** for her vacation.

absent

absent *adjective*

not there, or away.

He was **absent** from school because he had a cold.

■ opposite **present**

absorb

absorbs absorbing absorbed *verb*

to soak up.



A sponge **absorbs** liquid.

absorbent *adjective*

absurd

absurd *adjective*

silly or ridiculous.



She looked **absurd** leaving for school in her pajamas.

accent

accents *noun*

1 the way people say words.

She had a foreign **accent**.

2 a mark on a letter showing you how to pronounce it.

"Café" is pronounced "kafay."

accept

accepts accepting accepted *verb*

to take something that is offered to you.

accident

accidents *noun*

something that goes wrong by chance.



He spilled the juice, but it was an **accident**.

accordion

accordions *noun*

a musical instrument that you squeeze to make a sound.



accurate

accurate *adjective*

exactly right.

A stop watch gives **accurate** time.

■ say ak-yur-rut

accuse

accuses accusing accused *verb*

to say someone has done something wrong.

She **accused** him of lying.

■ say a-kyooz

ace

aces *noun*

a playing card that has one main symbol in the center.



ache

aches aching *verb*

ached

to feel a steady pain.



Her tooth **ached**.

■ rhymes with cake

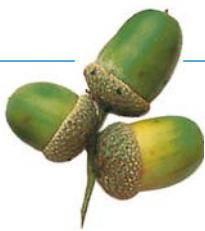
acid

acids *noun*

a sharp-tasting, sour liquid. Some **acids** can burn you.

acorn

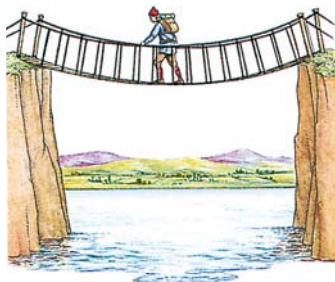
acorns *noun*
the seed of
an oak tree.

**acrobat**

acrobats *noun*
a person who performs
gymnastics on a stage or
in a circus.

**across**

preposition
from one side to the other.



Across the bridge.

act

acts acting acted *verb*
1 to behave in a certain way.
He was acting very strangely.
2 to take part in a play,
a film, or a television
program.

**action**

actions *noun*
anything that
somebody does.
*His quick action put out
the fire.*

activity

noun
1 energetic movement.
active *adjective*
2 something that has been
planned for you to do.

adapt

adapts adapting adapted *verb*
to change something to
suit a special purpose.



*This mug has been adapted so
that a baby can drink from it.*

add

adds adding added *verb*
1 to put one thing
with another.



Add cherries to the mixture.
2 to find the sum of two or
more numbers.

$$21 + 54 = 75$$

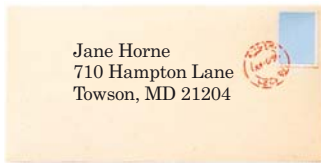
*Twenty-one added to fifty-four
equals seventy-five.*
addition *noun*

addict

addicts *noun*
someone who cannot give up
a habit that they have.

address

addresses *noun*
the building and area where
someone lives or works.

**adjective**

adjectives *noun*
a word that is used to
describe a noun.

adjust

adjusts adjusting adjusted *verb*
to make a small
change to something.



She adjusted her belt.

admire

admires admiring admired *verb*
to think that something is
nice or good.



*She admired her new
hair style.*

admit

admits admitting admitted *verb*
1 to say reluctantly that
something is true.
2 to allow someone to enter.
*A ticket admits you to
the movie theater.*

adopt

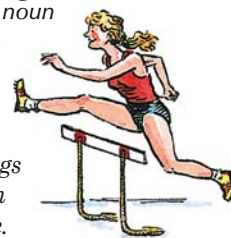
adopts adopting adopted *verb*
to take a child into your
home as part of your family.

adult

adults *noun*
a grown-up person.
■ opposite **child**

advantage

advantages *noun*
something
that is
useful
to have.
*Her long legs
gave her an
advantage.*
■ opposite **disadvantage**

**adventure**

adventures *noun*
something you do that
is exciting and new.
*Exploring the river was
a real adventure.*
adventurous *adjective*

adverb

adverbs *noun*
a word that describes a verb,
adjective, or another adverb.
The tortoise moved slowly.

advertisement

advertisements *noun*
words or pictures that try to
persuade you to buy or to do
something. Advertisement
can be shortened
to "ad."



■ say ad-ver-tiz-ment

advice

noun
suggestions to help you
decide what you should do.
*Follow your dentist's advice
on brushing your teeth.*
advise *verb*

adviser

A

adviser

advisers *noun*

someone who gives advice or makes suggestions.

*He was made student **adviser**.*

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

Z

aerial

aerial *adjective*

in the air.

*An **aerial** photograph.*

■ say air-ee-al

aerobics

aerobics *noun*

energetic physical exercises that are done in time to music.



■ say air-roh-biks

aerosol

aerosols *noun*

a can that forces out liquid in a fine spray.

■ say air-ro-sol



affect

affects affecting affected *verb*

to make something or someone different.

*The drought badly **affected** the harvest.*

affection

affection *noun*

the feeling that you like someone very much.

affectionate *adjective*



afford

affords affording afforded *verb*

to have enough money to buy something.

*We can **afford** to go away on vacation this year.*

afraid

afraid *adjective*

scared.

*He was **afraid** of mice.*



after

after *preposition*

1 later than.



*It is **after** 8 o'clock.*

2 behind.

*He was **after** me in the line.*

3 following.

*The cat ran **after** the mouse.*

afternoon

afternoons *noun*

the period of time between noon and evening.

again

again *adverb*

once more.

*The fans cheered when their team scored **again**.*

against

against *preposition*

1 next to something, touching it.



***Against** the fence.*

2 opposed to, or not on the same side.

*She was **against** the decision.*

age

age *noun*

1 how old someone or something is.



*The number of rings in a tree's trunk show its **age**.*

2 a period in history. *The Iron **Age**.*

aggressive

aggressive *adjective*

ready to attack.



*Cats can be **aggressive** if they are frightened.*

aggressively *adverb*

agony

agonies *noun*

extreme pain.

*The runner was in **agony** when he broke his leg.*

agree

agrees agreeing agreed *verb*

to think the same as someone else.

■ opposite **disagree**

agriculture

agriculture *noun*

farming.



*One form of **agriculture** in Thailand is rice growing.*

agricultural *adjective*

aground

aground *adverb*

stranded on rocks or sand, or in shallow water.

*The ship ran **aground** in the storm.*

ahead

ahead *adverb*

in front.



*He walked on **ahead** of the others.*

aid

aid *noun*

1 help.

*The helicopter came to the **aid** of the stranded walkers.*

2 a machine or a device that helps you do something.



aim

aims aiming aimed *verb*

1 to point an object at someone or something.



***Aiming** at the target.*

2 to try to do something.

*We **aim** to please.*

aim *noun*

air*noun*

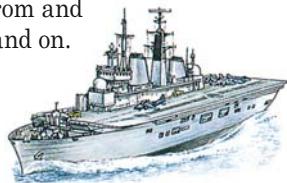
the mixture of gases that plants and animals breathe.
*A layer of **air** surrounds Earth.*

aircraft*noun*

any vehicle that can fly.

*airplane***aircraft-carrier***aircraft-carriers noun*

a ship for aircraft to take off from and land on.

**airline***airlines noun*

a company that owns and flies aircraft.

airmail*noun*

mail that is carried by airplane.

**airport***airports noun*

a place where people go to travel by airplane.

**ajar**

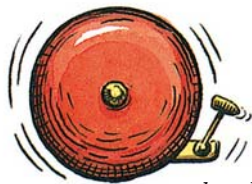
adjective
 slightly open.



*The door is **ajar**.*

alarm*noun*

1 a loud noise that warns you of something.



2 a feeling of fear.

*burglar
alarm*

album*albums noun*

a blank book for displaying pictures and other items.
*A photograph **album**.*

alcohol*noun*

a strong drink, such as wine or beer.

■ say al-ka-hol

alert*adjective*

watching and listening very carefully.



*The dog looked very **alert**.*

alien*aliens noun*

something that seems strange or foreign.

■ say ay-lee-en

alien *adjective*

alike*adjective*

very similar.



*These brothers look **alike**.*

alive

adjective
 living.



*Flowers need water to stay **alive**.*

■ opposite **dead**

all*adjective*

every part of, or everyone.
*He ate **all** the cake himself.*

allergy*allergies noun*

an unpleasant reaction to something that doesn't affect most people.



*He has an **allergy** to cats.
allergic *adjective**

alligator*alligators noun*

a large reptile that lives in swamps and rivers.
 Alligators eat fish and other animals that come close to the water's edge.

**allow**

allows **allowing** **allowed** *verb*
 to let someone do something.

*Her parents **allowed** her to stay up and watch the program.*

■ opposite **forbid**

almost

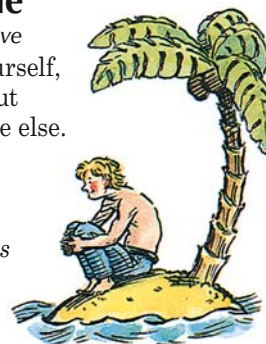
adverb
 nearly.



*The bottle is **almost** empty.*

alone*adjective*

by yourself, without anyone else.



*He was **alone** on the island.*

along*preposition*

from one end to another.
*We walked **along** the beach.*

aloud*adverb*

so that it can be heard.
*He read the letter **aloud**.*

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

Z

16

already

adverb

by this time.

*She was **already** eating breakfast when he woke up.*

also

adverb

as well.

*Sue is **also** coming with us.*

alter

alters altering altered verb
to change something.

*I have **altered** my story to give it a happy ending.*

altogether

adverb

including everyone or everything.



*There are eight apples **altogether**.*

aluminum

noun

a silvery-white metal that is light but strong.



aluminum

container

■ say al-loo-mi-num

always

adverb

1 very often.

*He is **always** playing loud music.*

2 forever.

*I will **always** remember our vacation.*

■ opposite **never**

amazing

adjective

very surprising or out of the ordinary.



*An **amazing** hat.*

amaze verb

ambition

ambitions noun

what you want to be or do.
*Her **ambition** is to travel to the Moon.*

ambulance

ambulances noun

a vehicle for taking sick or injured people to and from the hospital.



ambush

ambushes ambushing ambushed verb

to hide and wait for someone, then attack them by surprise when they come along.

among

preposition

in the middle of.



*There are poppies growing **among** the corn.*

amount

amounts noun

how much there is of something.

*Twice the **amount** of flour as brown sugar.*



amphibian

amphibians noun

an animal that can live in water and on land.



tree frog

■ say am-fib-ee-an

amphibious adjective

amplifier

amplifiers noun

a piece of equipment to make music sound louder.

amuse

amuses amusing amused verb

to make someone smile or laugh.

*The cartoon **amused** them.*

anagram

noun

a word or phrase made by changing the order of letters in another word or phrase.
*"Team" is an **anagram** of "meat."*

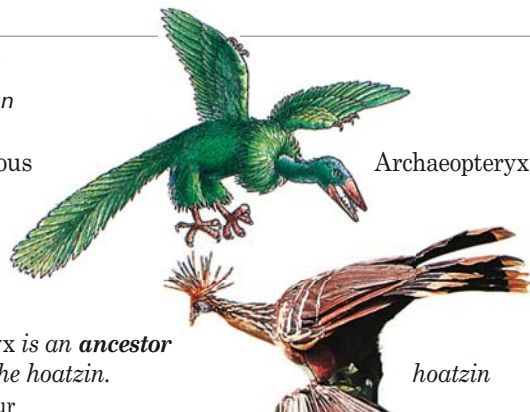
ancestor

ancestors noun

a relative from a previous generation.

*Archaeopteryx is an **ancestor** of birds like the hoatzin.*

■ say an-ses-tur



Archaeopteryx

hoatzin

anchor

anchors noun

a large, heavy, metal hook that digs into the seabed to stop a ship from drifting away.



■ say ang-ker

ancient

adjective

very old.



ancient

Roman statue

angel

angels noun

a messenger from a god or God.

anger

noun

a strong feeling of annoyance.

angry adjective

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

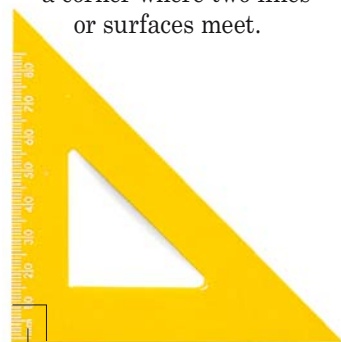
angle

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

angle

angles *noun*

a corner where two lines or surfaces meet.



right **angle** (90°)

animal

animals *noun*

any living thing that breathes and moves around. Insects, fish, birds, mammals, and reptiles are all types of animal.



bird



fish



insect



mammal



reptile

animation

animation *noun*

still pictures, often in cartoon form, that appear to move.

ankle

ankles *noun*

the joint between your leg and your foot.

anniversary

anniversaries *noun*

a special event that is remembered every year on the same date.

Wedding anniversary.

announce

announces announcing

announced *verb*

to say something for everyone to hear.
"I'm going," he announced.

annoy

annoys annoying annoyed *verb*

to make someone irritated.



The flies annoyed her.

annoyance *noun*

annual

annual *adjective*

happening every year.
Independence Day is an annual holiday.
annually *adverb*

anonymous

anonymous *adjective*

by an unknown author.
An anonymous letter.
■ say a-non-uh-mus

another

another *adjective*

1 different.
Do you have another pen? I think this one is broken.
2 one more.
Do you want another cookie?

answer

answers answering answered *verb*

to reply to a question.

answer *noun*

ant

ants *noun*

an insect that lives in large, organized groups. The males and egg-laying females have wings.



wood ant

antelope

antelopes *noun*

a mammal that is found on dry plains in Africa and Asia. Antelopes eat grass and other plants.



nyala

antenna

antennae or antennas *noun*

1 a part on certain animals' heads that is used for feeling (see **insect** on page 108).
2 a device for receiving radio and TV signals for broadcast (see **universe** on page 229).

antibiotic

antibiotics *noun*

a medicine that kills bacteria.

antiseptic

antiseptics *noun*

a substance put on cuts and grazes to prevent infection.

anxious

anxious *adjective*

worried or nervous.
■ say ank-shus

any

any *adjective*

some or every.

◆ *Anybody can do that, it's easy!*
◆ *She didn't tell anyone what she had seen.*
◆ *I'm going out, and you can't do anything to stop me!*
◆ *It might be cloudy, but we could go for a picnic anyway.*
◆ *Have you seen my pet mouse anywhere?*

apart

apart *adverb*

away from each other, or separate.



Standing with feet apart.

apartment

apartments *noun*

a home that is made up of a set of rooms inside a larger building.

ape

apes *noun*

a mammal that lives in forests in warm regions and feeds on insects and fruit. Apes have no tails and can walk on two legs.



gibbon

apologize

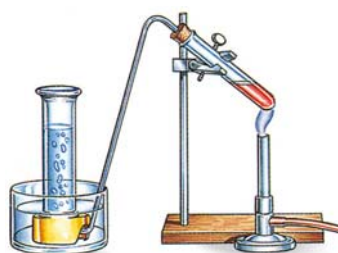
apologizes apologizing

apologized *verb*

to say you are sorry.

apparatus*noun*

the equipment you need for a particular task.



scientific **apparatus**

appear

appears appearing appeared *verb*

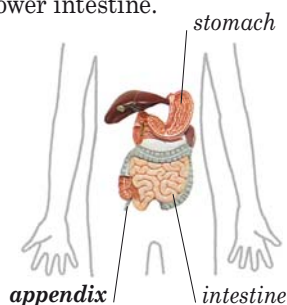
to come into view.

*The Sun **appeared** from behind the clouds.*

■ opposite **disappear**

appendix

appendices or appendixes *noun*
a very small part of your lower intestine.

**appetite***noun*

a desire for food.



*He has a huge **appetite**.*

applause*noun*

clapping and cheering.

*The **applause** rang out as the team ran onto the field.*

apple*noun*

an edible fruit with a smooth skin and crisp flesh.

**appointment***noun*

a meeting at a certain time.

*A dental **appointment**.*

appreciate

appreciates appreciating appreciated *verb*

to be grateful for something.

*She **appreciated** the flowers that her daughter sent her.*

■ say a-pree-shee-ate

approach

approaches approaching approached *verb*

to come near to something.

*The train slowed down as it **approached** the station.*

approve

approves approving approved *verb*

to think that something is right or good.

*Does your mom **approve** of your new shoes?*

approximate*adjective*

almost accurate, or not exact.



*The **approximate** number of marbles in the jar is 50.*

approximately *adverb*

apricot*noun*

an edible fruit with soft flesh and a pit in its center.

**aquarium***aquariums or aquaria noun*

a glass tank to keep fish and other water animals and plants in.

**arch***arches noun*

a curved part of a building or bridge.

**architect***architects noun*

a person who designs buildings.

■ say ar-ki-tekt

area*areas noun*

1 a certain piece of ground or space, or part of a surface.

*This is a play **area**.*

2 the amount of space something covers.

*The wood covers a large **area**.*

argue*argues arguing argued verb*

to talk angrily with someone because you disagree with them.

argument *noun*

**arithmetic***noun*

the adding, subtracting, multiplying, and dividing of numbers.

$$25 + 17 = 42$$

adding

$$36 - 25 = 11$$

subtracting

$$14 \times 7 = 98$$

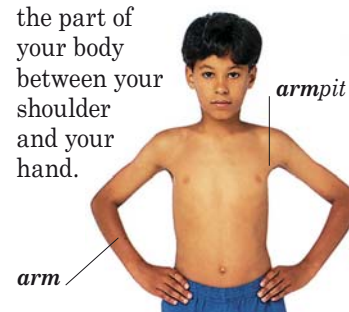
multiplying

$$28 \div 2 = 14$$

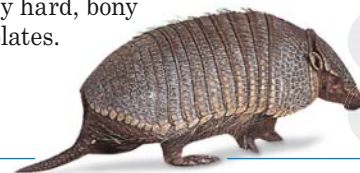
dividing

arm*arms noun*

the part of your body between your shoulder and your hand.

**armadillo***armadillos noun*

a nocturnal mammal that lives in North and South America and eats insects, snakes, and frogs. The armadillo's body is protected by hard, bony plates.



armchair

A

armchair

armchairs *noun*

a soft, padded chair with arms.



B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

Z

armor

noun

a suit of thick, metal plates worn long ago to protect knights in battle.



army

armies *noun*

a group of people and machines that fight on land.

around

adverb

1 nearby.

*I left my bag **around** here.*

2 in every direction.

*For miles **around**.*

around

preposition

1 from place to place.

*We walked **around** the city.*

2 on all sides.

*We sat **around** the table.*

arrange

arranges **arranging** **arranged** *verb*

1 to plan something.

*She **arranged** to meet me at 10 o'clock.*

2 to place something in a special order.



arrest

arrests **arresting** **arrested** *verb*
to catch hold of someone and officially accuse them of breaking the law.

arrive

arrives **arriving** **arrived** *verb*

to come to a place.

*The plane **arrived** at the airport.*

arrival *noun*

arrow

arrows *noun*

1 a pointed piece of metal that is shot from a bow.



2 a pointed shape that shows you which way to go or look.



art

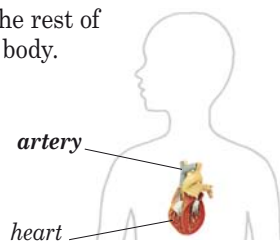
noun

the creation of something, often through drawing, painting, sculpture, or design.

artery

arteries *noun*

one of the tubes that carries blood from the heart to the rest of the body.



artificial

adjective

something false that is made to look like the real thing.

*an **artificial** flower*

■ ar-tuh-fish-ul



artist

artists *noun*

someone who creates pictures, sculptures, music, or other creative things.



artistic *adjective*

ash

ashes *noun*

1 the gray powder that is left behind after something has been burned.



wood **ash**

2 a deciduous, broad-leaved tree, with spreading branches that grow in pairs. The female ash produces winged seeds. The wood is hard and strong.



ash *leaves*

ashamed

adjective

feeling guilty about something you have done. *She felt **ashamed** about teasing her little brother.*

ask

asks **asking** **asked** *verb*

to try to find something out from someone.

***Ask** your dad if you can come with us.*

asleep

adjective

resting the whole body and mind with the eyes closed.



sleep *verb*

aspirin

aspirins *noun*

a type of medicine taken as a pill, used for relieving pain and fever.

assemble

assembles **assembling** **assembled** *verb*

1 to put something together.

*I **assembled** a model boat.*

2 to meet together.

*They **assembled** in the hall.*

assembly *noun*

assist

assists **assisting**

assisted *verb*

to help somebody.

*He **assisted** the customer with his coat.*

assistance *noun* **sales assistant**



assortment

assortments *noun*

a collection of different types of the same thing.



*An **assortment** of buttons.*

asthma*noun*

an illness or allergy that can make breathing difficult.

■ say az-ma

asthmatic *adjective*

astonish

astonishes *astonishing*
astonished *verb*

to amaze someone very much.
*She **astonished** the crowd by winning the race.*

astronaut*astronauts noun*

a person who is trained to travel into space.

**astronomy***noun*

the scientific study of stars and planets.

ate

*from the verb **to eat***

*I **ate** a whole loaf of bread yesterday.*

athlete*athletes noun*

a person who takes part in races or sports competitions.



athletics *noun*

atlas*atlases noun*

a book of maps.

**atmosphere***noun*

1 the layer of air that surrounds the Earth.
2 the feeling in a room or a place.

*The dark room had a gloomy **atmosphere**.*

atom*atoms noun*

a very tiny part of any substance.



*magnified **atom***

attach

attaches *attaching* **attached** *verb*
to fasten.



***Attached** with a paper clip.*

attack

attacks *attacking* **attacked** *verb*
to try to hurt a person or an animal.

*The wild dog **attacked** the flock of geese.*

attempt

attempts *attempting* **attempted** *verb*

to try to do something.
*They **attempted** to climb the wall, but had to give up.*

attend

attends *attending* **attended** *verb*
to go to an event, or to go somewhere regularly.
*I **attended** school for 11 years.*

attention*noun*

1 listening carefully.
*Pay **attention** in class!*
2 standing stiff and straight.
*Stand at **attention**.*

attic*attics noun*

a room at the top of a house, usually in the space under the roof.

**attract***attracts* *attracting* *attracted* *verb*

1 to interest.
*The museum **attracts** many visitors.*
2 to make something come closer.

Magnets

attract *iron filings.*

**attractive***adjective*

pleasing to the eye, mind, and senses.

audience*audiences noun*

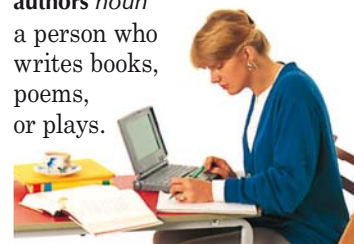
the people who come to watch a show or concert.

**aunt***aunts noun*

the sister of someone's parent, or their uncle's wife.

author*authors noun*

a person who writes books, poems, or plays.

**autograph***autographs noun*

a signature, usually of a famous person.

■ say au-toe-graf

automatic*adjective*

1 without thinking.
*Blinking is **automatic**.*
2 working by itself, without any assistance.
***Automatic** doors.*

automobile*automobiles noun*

another name for a car.



*vintage **automobile***

autumn*autumns noun*

one of the four seasons.
Autumn follows summer and comes before winter. It is the time when the leaves on some trees change color and fall to the ground.

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

avalanche

A

avalanche

avalanches *noun*

a large amount of snow, rocks, and ice that suddenly slides down a mountain.



B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

Z

avenue

avenues *noun*

a type of street. It is often wide and sometimes has a line of trees down each side.

average

average *adjective*

ordinary.

*He was of **average** height for his age.*

average

averages *noun*

1 a usual amount.

*My grades were above **average**.*

2 a number of things spread out equally.

*He eats 14 apples a week, an **average** of 2 a day.*

avocado

avocados *noun*

a green, pear-shaped tree fruit with a leathery skin and smooth, creamy flesh.



avoid

avoids avoiding avoided *verb*

to keep away from something.



*The car swerved to **avoid** the dog.*

awake

awake *adjective*

not asleep.

*I stayed **awake** all night.*

award

awards *noun*

a prize.

*A rosette is an **award**.*

award *verb*



aware

aware *adjective*

knowing something.

*He became **aware** that someone was watching him.*

away

away *adverb*

1 not here.

*The teacher was **away** today.*

2 to another place.

*I put all my games **away**.*

awful

awful *adjective*

very bad.

awkward

awkward *adjective*

1 difficult to use or inconvenient.

2 clumsy.

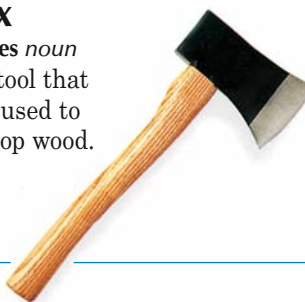


*A newborn foal looks **awkward** on its feet.*
awkwardly *adverb*

ax

axes *noun*

a tool that is used to chop wood.



Bb

baboon

baboons *noun*

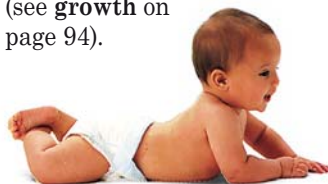
a large monkey that is found all over Africa. Baboons live on the ground and eat plants and small animals.



baby

babies *noun*

a very young child (see **growth** on page 94).



back

back *adverb*

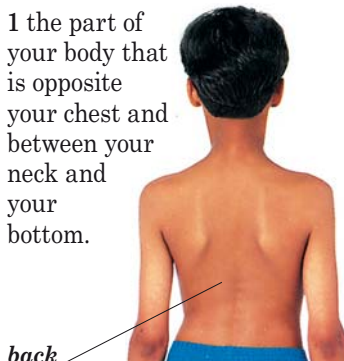
returning.

*I am going to the store. I'll be **back** later.*

back

backs *noun*

1 the part of your body that is opposite your chest and between your neck and your bottom.



back

backpack

backpacks *noun*

a large bag with shoulder straps, often worn by walkers to hold clothes and equipment.



backward

backward *adverb*

moving toward the back.

*I fell **backward** into a prickly bush.*

bacon

bacon *noun*

salted meat from the back or side of a pig.



back of
a clock

bacteria*noun*

very small organisms. Some cause disease, while others help your body.

*Some **bacteria** help break down food in your stomach.*

■ say bak-teer-ee-uh

bad*adjective*

1 wrong.

*Stealing is very **bad**.*

2 serious.

*I have a **bad** earache.*

3 rotten, or faulty.

*The food had gone **bad**.*

■ comparisons **worse** **worst**

badge*badges noun*

a decoration that can be pinned or sewn onto clothes.

*sheriff's **badge***

**badminton***noun*

an indoor game played by two or four people on a court.

Each player uses a racket to hit a shuttlecock over a net (see **sport** on page 197).

**baffle***baffles baffling baffled verb*

to confuse someone or make a person puzzled.

*The quiz completely **baffled** him.*

bag*bags noun*

a container that you can carry things in, usually made of material, plastic, or paper.

baggy*adjective*

fitting loosely.

baggy pants

**bake***bakes baking baked verb*

to cook in an oven or fire.

Pies, cakes, and bread are baked.



*A baker **bakes** bread.*

balance*balances balancing balanced verb*

to keep steady so you do not fall over.

*The tightrope walker **balanced** on the high wire.*

balcony*balconies noun*

a platform for standing on that is attached to the wall of a building above the ground.

**bald***adjective*

without any hair.

*A **bald** head.*

ball*balls noun*

1 a rounded object used to play many games and sports.



*beach **ball***

2 a big, grand party where there is dancing.

*A summer **ball**.*

ballet*ballets noun*

a performance on stage that tells a story in music and dance.

■ say bal-lay or bal-lay



*ballet **dancers***

balloon*balloons noun*

a bag of rubber or other material filled with air or another gas.



*hot-air **balloon***

bamboo*noun*

a tall, tropical grass with hard, hollow stems. Bamboo can be used to make garden poles and furniture.

bamboo poles

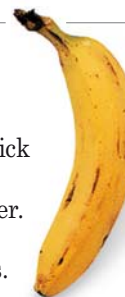
**ban***bans banning banned verb*

to forbid people to do something.

*Smoking is **banned** on public transportation.*

banana*bananas noun*

a tree fruit with a smooth, thick outer peel and a soft, edible center. Bananas grow in hot, damp regions.

**band***bands noun*

1 a group of people who play music together.



2 a strip of material such as fabric, elastic, or metal that holds things together.



*rubber **band***

bandage*bandages noun*

a strip of material that is used to wrap around a wound to keep it clean.



a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

bang

bang

bangs *noun*

a sudden, loud noise.
*The firework went off with a loud **bang**.*

bank

banks *noun*

1 a steep, sloping piece of ground, often on the side of a river.



2 a company that looks after people's money and also lends money.



banner

banners *noun*

a large flag or piece of cloth that has a picture or a message on it.



bar

bars *noun*

1 a long, narrow piece of metal.

2 a counter or a room where drinks or snacks are sold.



barbecue

barbecues *noun*

1 a grill over an open fire that is lit outdoors and used for cooking meat, fish, or vegetables.



2 a party or special meal where food is cooked on a barbecue.

■ say **bar**-bi-kyoo

bare

adjective
without any covering.



bare feet _____

bargain

bargains *noun*

something bought cheaply.
*My shoes were a real **bargain** in the sale.*

bark

noun

the rough wood on the outside of a tree trunk.



bark

barks barking barked *verb*

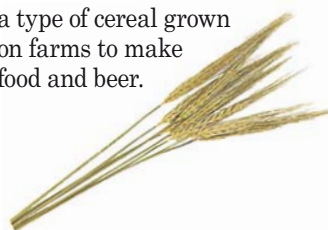
to make a rough, loud noise like a dog.

bark *noun*

barley

noun

a type of cereal grown on farms to make food and beer.



barn

barns *noun*

a large farm building used for storage or for keeping animals in.



barrel

barrels *noun*

a large, rounded, wooden or metal container for storing beer and other liquids.



barrier

barriers *noun*

a structure built to stop someone or something from passing through.
*The police placed a **barrier** across the road.*

base

bases *noun*

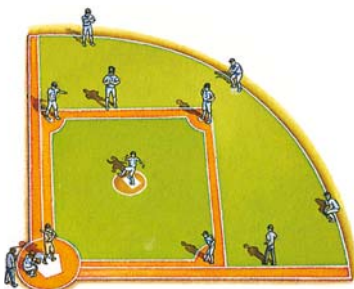
the bottom of something.



baseball

noun

a game for two teams of nine players, which started in the United States. The winning team is the one that scores the most runs (see **sport** on page 197).



basement

basements *noun*

a floor in a building that is partly or completely below ground level.

basin

basins *noun*

a large, bowl-shaped container used for holding water. Basins are often used for washing.

basket

baskets *noun*

a container for carrying things in, usually made of cane, twigs, or straw.



basketball

noun

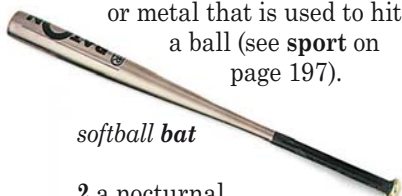
a team game with five players on each side. Points are scored by throwing a ball through a raised hoop called the "basket" (see **sport** on page 197).



bat

bats noun

1 a stick, often made of wood or metal that is used to hit a ball (see **sport** on page 197).



softball bat

2 a nocturnal mammal with wings. Bats live in caves and dark places and eat insects, fruit, or small animals. They rest hanging upside down (see **mammal** on page 124).



long-eared bat

bathtub

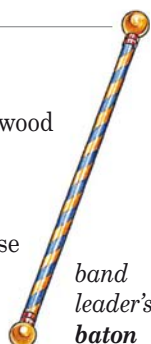
bathtubs noun

a large tub for washing the whole of your body.

baton

batons noun

a thin piece of wood or metal. Conductors of orchestras and band leaders use different types of batons to keep time.



band leader's baton

battery

batteries noun

a closed container of chemicals that makes and stores small amounts of electricity.



watch battery

battle

battles noun

a fight between two armies that are at war.

bawl

bawls bawling bawled verb

to cry very loudly.

bay

bays noun

a deep, inward curve in a coastline or the edge of a lake.



beach

beaches noun

land at the edge of a sea or lake, usually covered in pebbles or sand.

bead

beads noun

a small piece of wood, stone, or glass that can be threaded onto string.



beak

beaks noun

the hard, bony mouth of a bird or dinosaur (see **dinosaur** on page 61).



toucan's beak

beam

beams noun



1 a long, narrow ray of light.

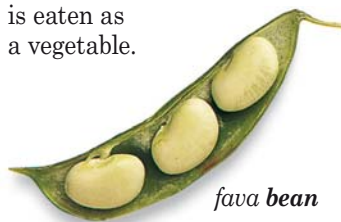


2 a long, strong piece of wood or metal, often used in buildings to hold up the roof.

bean

beans noun

a seed or pod that is eaten as a vegetable.



fava bean

bear

bears noun

a large mammal with thick fur that usually lives in forests. All bears eat meat, but some also eat honey, roots, plant buds, berries, and fruit.



Canadian black bear

bear

bears bearing bore born or borne verb

1 to produce or give birth to. *This plant **bears** red berries.*

2 to carry or support.

*Can that branch **bear** your weight?*

3 to put up with.

*I can't **bear** to think about it.*

beard

beards noun

the hair that grows on the lower part of a man's face if he does not shave.



beat

beats beating beat beaten verb

1 to defeat someone.

*My friend **beat** me at chess.*

2 to hit or stir repeatedly.

*She **beat** the eggs.*

3 to make a repeated movement, or noise.

*My heart is **beating** loudly.*

beat

beats noun

a steady stroke or sound.

*A metronome ticks with a steady **beat**.*



beautiful

adjective

very pleasant to look at.

*What a **beautiful** view!*

■ say byoo-tuh-ful

beaver

beavers noun

a large rodent that gnaws down trees to build dams and island homes, called lodges, in rivers. Beavers eat bark, roots, and twigs.



a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

beckon

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

beckon

beckons beckoning beckoned verb

to make a sign that tells someone to come to you.



become

becomes becoming became verb

to change or grow into.
*A tadpole **becomes** a frog.*

bed

beds noun

1 a piece of furniture that you sleep on.
2 the bottom of a river, lake, or the sea.

bee

bees noun

a flying insect that usually lives in large, well-organized groups. Bees feed on pollen, nectar, and the honey they make from nectar.



beech

beeches noun

a deciduous forest tree with smooth, gray bark and spreading branches (see **tree** on page 223).



beech leaf

beef

beef noun

the meat from a cow or bull.

beehive

beehives noun

a type of box that people keep bees in. They collect the honey that the bees make.



beer

beers noun

an alcoholic drink made from cereal grains.

beetle

beetles noun

an insect with hard, often brightly colored wing cases. Some beetles eat small insects; others eat wood and plants.



jewel beetle

beetroot / beet

beetroots / beets noun

a hard, red root plant with leaves that is eaten as a vegetable (see **vegetable** on page 233).

before

before preposition
earlier.



Before four o'clock.

before

before adverb

in the past.
*I've heard that story **before**.*

beg

begs begging begged verb
to ask for something very strongly.



*The dog **begged** for a piece of meat.*

begin

begins beginning began begun verb

to start something.
*The story **begins** in a castle.*
beginning noun

behave

behaves behaving behaved verb

to act in a particular way in front of other people.
*Our class **behaved** well at the zoo.*
behavior noun

behind

behind preposition
at the back of.



*She stood **behind** her friend.*
behind adverb

being

beings noun

someone or something that exists.

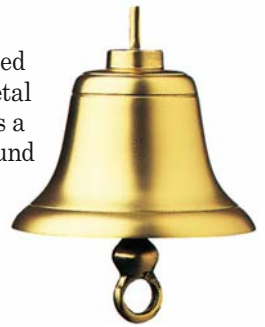
believe

believes believing believed verb
to feel strongly that something is true.

bell

bells noun

a cup-shaped piece of metal that makes a ringing sound when it is struck.



belong

belongs belonging belonged verb

to be someone's possession or property.
*That book **belongs** to me.*

below

below preposition
lower than.



Below her waist.
■ opposite **above**

belt

belts noun

a narrow strip of fabric or leather that you wear around your waist.



bench

benches noun

1 a long, wooden seat.



park bench

2 a worktable.

bend

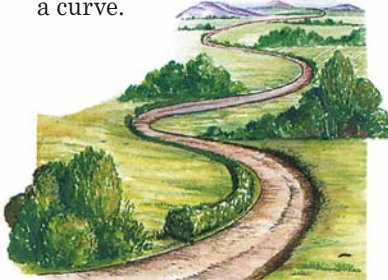
bends bending bent verb
to change something straight into a curved shape.



She **bent** over to touch her toes.

bend

bends noun
a curve.



Bends in the road.

benefit

benefits benefiting benefited verb
to receive help from someone or something.
*The school would **benefit** from having new computers.*
benefit noun

beret

berets noun
a soft, flat hat.



■ say buh-ray

berry

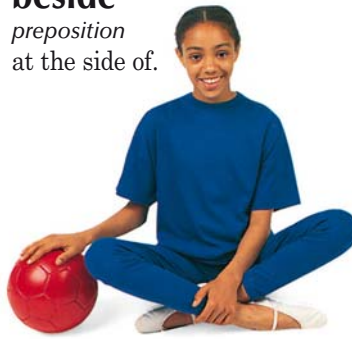
berries noun
a small, round juicy fruit with seeds inside.



blueberries

beside

preposition
at the side of.



The ball is **beside** her.

best

from the adjective good
better than any other.

bet

bets betting bet verb
to believe that something is going to happen.
*I **bet** it's going to rain later.*

better

from the adjective good
1 more able.
*You are good at science but he is **better**.*
2 well again.
*I'm feeling **better**, thanks.*

between

preposition
in the middle of.



Between her knees.

beware

verb
to be careful of something.
***Beware** of the dog.*

beyond

preposition
farther away than.
*The hills lay **beyond** the river.*

bicycle

bicycles noun
a vehicle with two wheels that you ride by turning the pedals with your feet. Bicycle can be shortened to bike.



big

adjective
large in width or size.



The jacket is too **big** for him.

■ comparisons **bigger biggest**

bikini

bikinis noun
a swimming outfit with two pieces, worn by girls and women.



bill

bills noun
1 the hard, bony mouth of a bird.



2 a piece of paper that shows you how much you have to pay for something.
*The waiter brought us the **bill** at the end of our meal.*

3 a plan for a new law that must be voted on by a country's government.
*The new education **bill** will be discussed in Congress today.*

billow

billows billowing billowed verb
to spread out and be blown about in the wind.
*Smoke **billowed** out from the chimneys.*

bin

bins noun
a box or container used for storage.

binoculars

noun
two small telescopes joined together that make things that are far away look closer.



biodegradable

adjective
able to be broken down by bacteria.
*Most paper is **biodegradable**.*
■ say by-oh-dee-gray-duh-bul

bird

bird

birds *noun*

an animal that has warm blood, feathers on its body, and wings (see **skeleton** on page 188).



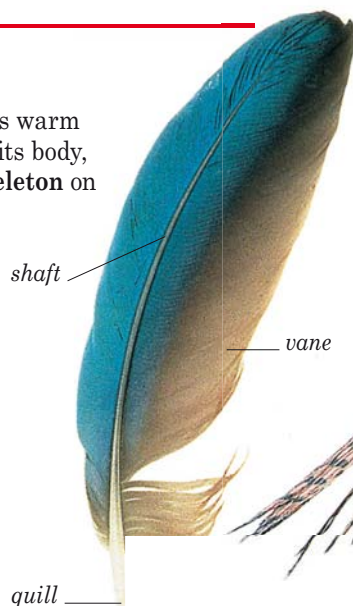
budgerigar



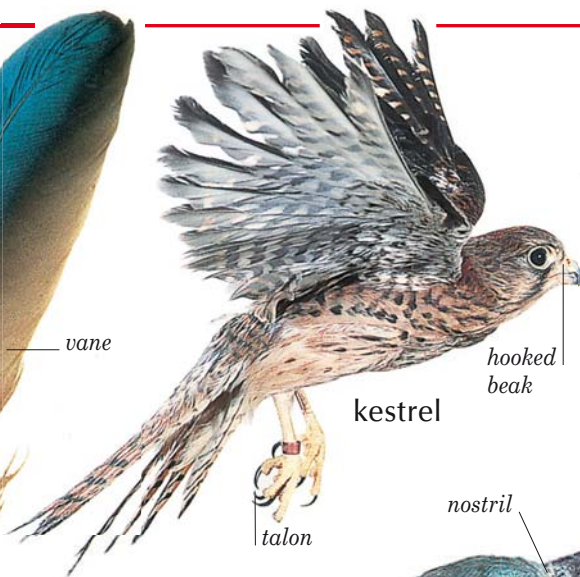
cockatoo



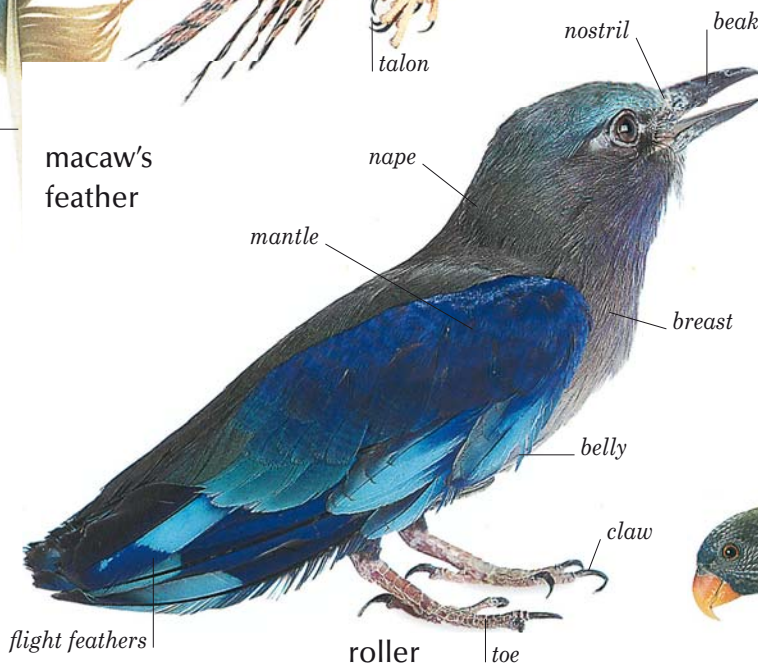
flamingo



macaw's feather



kestrel



roller



song thrush's nest



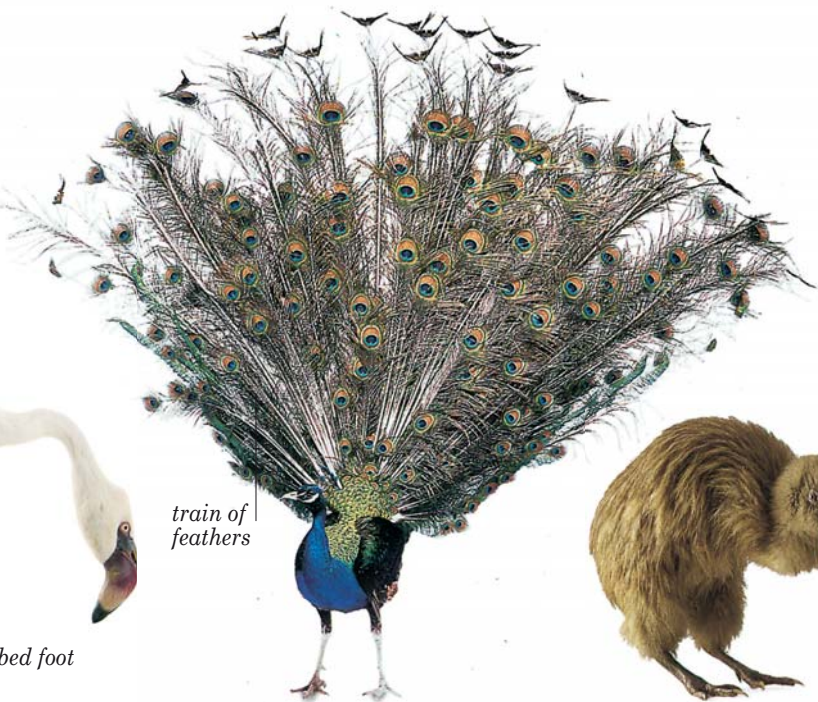
osprey's egg



finch



lorikeet



peacock



kiwi



penguin

birthday**birthdays** *noun*

the anniversary of the day you were born.

birthday cake**birthday cakes** *noun*

a special cake with candles on top that is baked for your birthday.

**birthday card****birthday cards** *noun*

a card that people send to you on your birthday, to congratulate you on being a year older.

birthday party**birthday parties** *noun*

a party to celebrate someone's birthday.

**birthday present****birthday presents** *noun*

a gift that you give to someone on their birthday.

**biscuit****biscuits** *noun*

a type of bread made in small, soft cakes.

■ say bis-kit

bit**bits** *noun*

a small piece of something.
*The mouse nibbled a **bit** of cheese.*

bite**bites biting bit bitten** *verb*

to use your teeth in a cutting action, usually with food.

**bite** *noun***bitter****bitter** *adjective*

having a sour, sharp taste.
*Strong coffee can taste **bitter**.*

black**black** *noun*

1 a color.

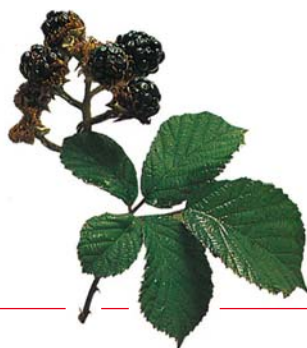


2 very dark.

*A **black** night.*

blackberry**blackberries** *noun*

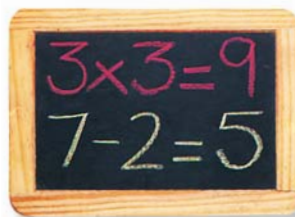
a black or dark purple fruit that grows on prickly stems called brambles.

**blackbird****blackbirds** *noun*

a bird that lives in gardens and fields, and eats insects and seeds. The male has black feathers and the female has brown feathers.

blackboard**blackboards** *noun*

a hard, dark smooth surface for writing on with chalk in classrooms.

**blade****blades** *noun*

1 the flat, sharp, metal part of a knife or a sword.



2 a stem of grass.

**blame****blames blaming blamed** *verb*

to think or say that someone has done something wrong.
*She always **blames** me for letting the toast burn.*

blank**blanks** *noun*

An empty space.

A hen lays ____.

*The last word has been left **blank**.*

blank *adjective*

blanket**blankets** *noun*

a soft covering, usually made of wool that is used to keep people or animals warm.

**blast****blasts** *noun*

a powerful explosion or gust of wind.

*A **blast** of cold air came in through the window.*

blaze**blazes blazing blazed** *verb*

to burn very brightly.



*The fire **blazed** through the old building.*

blaze *noun*

blazer**blazers** *noun*

a jacket that is often worn as part of a uniform.

**bleach****bleach** *noun*

a very powerful chemical that removes color. Bleach can burn your skin.

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

bleed

bleed

bleeds bleeding bled *verb*
to lose blood.
My nose started to bleed when I fell over.

blind

blind *adjective*
unable to see.



Some blind people have guide dogs.

blink

blinks blinking blinked *verb*
to open and shut your eyes quickly.
The bright light made me blink.

blister

blisters *noun*
a bubble of watery liquid that forms under your skin when it has been burnt or rubbed.
Tight shoes give me blisters.

blizzard

blizzards *noun*
a very heavy snowstorm.

blob

blobs *noun*
a small lump of something with no shape.

a blob of face cream



block

blocks *noun*
1 a solid shape, such as a block of wood.
2 a rectangular area surrounded by four streets.



block

blocks blocking blocked *verb*
to be in the way.
The road was blocked by the fallen tree.

blond / blonde

blond / blonde *adjective*
having light-colored hair. Blond is used for boys and men, and blonde is used for girls and women.



blond boy

blonde girl

blood

blood *noun*
the red liquid that flows around our body through veins and arteries. Blood carries nutrients and oxygen to our skin and muscles.

bloom

blooms blooming bloomed *verb*
to produce flowers.
Fruit trees bloom in the spring.

blossom

blossoms *noun*
the flowers on a tree that appear before the fruit.



hawthorn blossom

blot

blots *noun*
a stain on paper, usually made by ink or paint that has been spilled.

blouse

blouses *noun*
a type of shirt, usually worn by girls or women.



blow

blows blowing blew blown *verb*
1 to move in air, or be moved in air.
2 to force air out of your nose or mouth.



He blew up the balloon.

blue

blue *noun*
a color.



bluff

bluffs bluffing bluffed *verb*
to trick someone into believing something.
She pretended to be brave, but she was bluffing.

blunt

blunt *adjective*
having a rounded end or edge.



■ opposite sharp

blur

blurs blurring blurred *verb*
to make something unclear and difficult to see.
The view through the window was blurred by rain.

blush

blushes blushing blushed *verb*
to turn red because you are embarrassed or shy.

board

boards *noun*
a flat piece of wood, or very stiff paper.

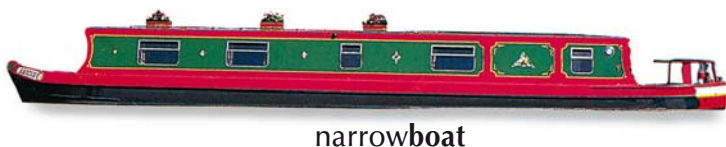
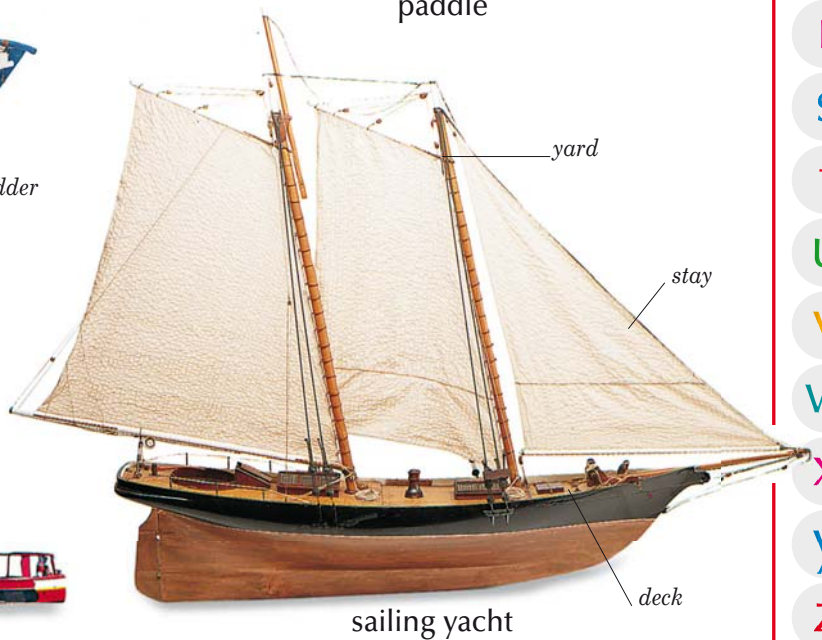
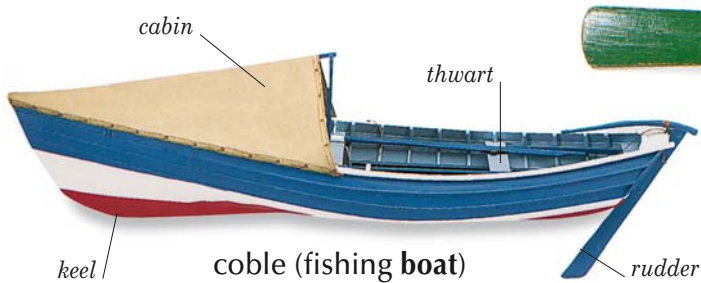
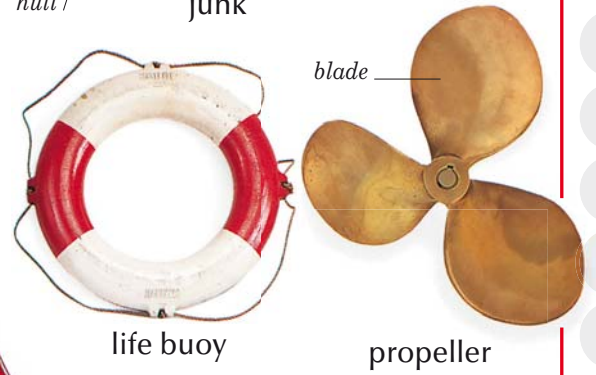
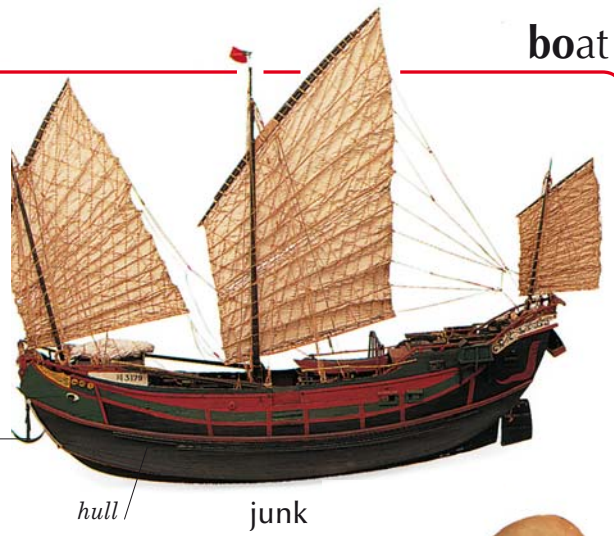
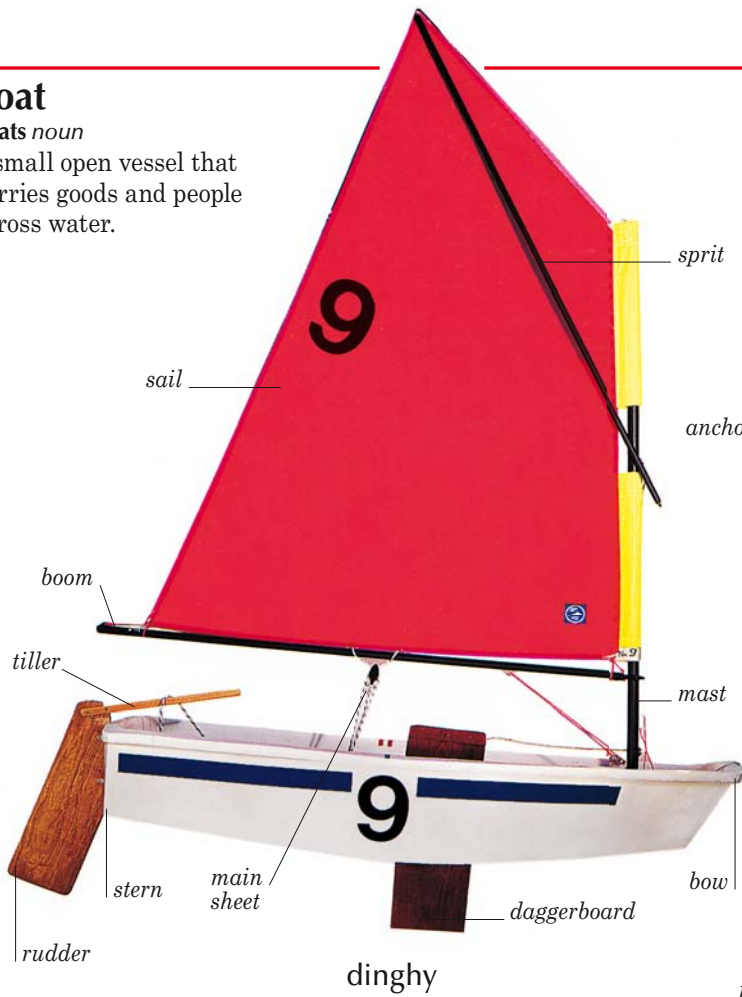
boast

boasts boasting boasted *verb*
to tell people about something in a proud and annoying way.
He boasted about his money.

boat

boats *noun*

a small open vessel that carries goods and people across water.



a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

body

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

body

bodies *noun*
all the physical parts that make up an animal or person.



boil

boils boiling boiled *verb*
to heat a liquid until it starts to bubble and steam rises from it.



bold

adjective
brave and fearless.
The bold knight marched up to the dragon's cave.

bolt

bolts *noun*
1 a metal rod that is used to fasten things together.



2 a sliding metal bar that is used for fastening a door.



bomb

bombs *noun*
an exploding weapon that can cause damage to anything around it.
■ say **bom**

bone

bones *noun*
the hard parts of an animal's or person's body that make up the skeleton.



femur (upper leg bone)
bony *adjective*

bonfire

bonfires *noun*
a large outdoor fire.



book

books *noun*
printed pieces of paper, joined together inside a cover.

boom

booms booming boomed *verb*
to make a deep, loud sound.
His voice boomed out through the loudspeaker.

boomerang

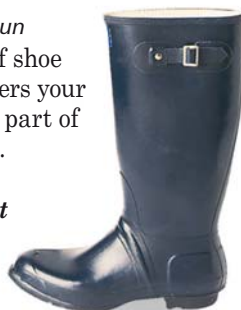
boomerangs *noun*
a curved piece of wood that comes back to you when you throw it. Boomerangs were used in the past as a weapon by Australian Aboriginals.



boot

boots *noun*
a type of shoe that covers your foot and part of your leg.

rain boot



border

borders *noun*
1 the boundary between two countries.



2 a strip around the edge of something.



blue border

bore

bores boring bored *verb*
1 to be very uninteresting.
She bored us for weeks by telling the same joke.
2 to make a round hole in something.
They bored a hole in the ground in search of oil.

bore

from the verb to bear
1 *She bore 10 children.*
2 *Luckily, the bridge bore the truck's weight.*

born

from the verb to bear
I was **born** 10 years ago, so I am 10 years old.

borrow

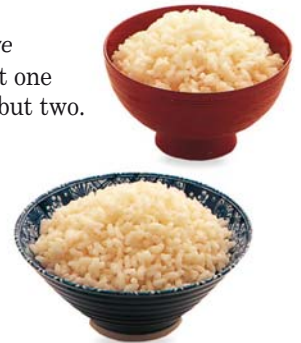
borrows borrowing borrowed *verb*
to take something for a while and then return it.
I borrowed my friend's pen.
■ opposite **lend**

boss

bosses *noun*
the person who is in charge at work.

both

adjective
not just one thing, but two.



Both bowls contain rice.

bother

bothers bothering bothered *verb*
to worry or annoy someone.

bottle

bottles *noun*
a container for liquids, usually made of glass or plastic.



bottom

bottoms *noun*
1 the lowest part of something.



The bottom of the sea.
■ opposite **top**

2 the part of your body that you sit on.



bought

from the verb **to buy**

*I **bought** a present for my friend yesterday.*

■ say **bawt**

bounce

bounces bouncing bounced *verb*
to spring up and down.



bounce *noun*

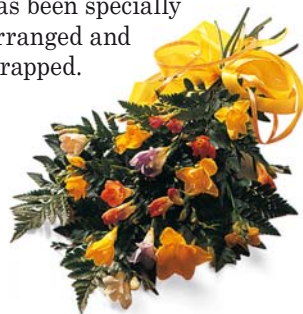
boundary

boundaries *noun*
the edge of a piece of land.

bouquet

bouquets *noun*

a bunch of flowers that has been specially arranged and wrapped.



■ say **bo-kay**

bow

bows bowing bowed *verb*
to bend from the waist as a greeting or a sign of respect.



■ rhymes with **now**

bow

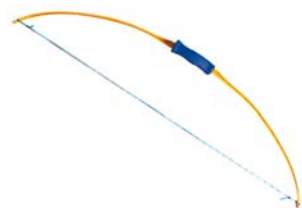
bows *noun*
the front of a ship.
■ rhymes with **now**

bow

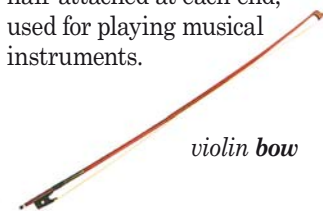
bows *noun*
1 a knot with two loops.



2 a curved piece of wood with a string attached at each end, used for shooting arrows.



3 a wooden stick with horse hair attached at each end, used for playing musical instruments.



violin bow

■ rhymes with **go**

bowl

bowls *noun*
a curved, open container, usually used for food.

**bowl**

bowls bowling bowled *verb*
to roll a ball in ten-pin bowling.

**box**

boxes *noun*
a container to store things in.



cardboard box

boy

boys *noun*
a young male person.

brace

braces *noun*
a piece of wire that is fitted around your teeth to help straighten them.

bracelet

bracelets *noun*
a decorative band or chain that is worn around your wrist. Bracelets are usually made of metal or beads.

**braille**

noun
a type of writing where letters are represented by raised dots. People who are blind read the dots by feeling them with their fingertips.



■ say **brayl**

brain

brains *noun*
the part of your body inside your head that controls how you think and move.

**brake**

brakes *noun*
a part of a vehicle that slows it down or stops it.

brake

brakes braking braked *verb*
to slow down or stop a vehicle by using the brakes.

branch

branches *noun*
the part of a tree that grows out of the trunk.



trunk

branch

brass

noun
a hard, yellow-colored metal made from a mixture of copper and zinc.



brass door knocker

brave

adjective
willing to do something even though you are afraid.
*The **brave** girl dived into the lake to rescue her brother.*

■ comparisons **braver bravest**
bravery *noun*

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

bread

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

bread

noun

a food made from flour and baked in an oven.



break

breaks breaking broke broken *verb*

to damage something so that it cannot be used.



*The cat is always **breaking** things.*



break

breaks *noun*
a period of rest.

breakfast

breakfasts *noun*
the first meal of the day, eaten in the morning.



breathe

breathes breathing breathed *verb*

to take air in and out of your lungs, through your nose or mouth.

breath *noun*

breathless

adjective
having difficulty in breathing.
*Running for the bus made the old man **breathless**.*

breed

breeds breeding bred *verb*
to keep animals so that they produce young.
*She **breeds** racehorses.*

breed

breeds *noun*
a particular type of animal.



*A dalmatian is a **breed** of dog.*

breeze

breezes *noun*
a gentle wind.

bribe

bribes bribing bribed *verb*
to pay someone secretly to do something that they shouldn't do.
*The prisoner **bribed** the guard to set him free.*

brick

bricks *noun*
a block made out of baked clay, used for building things.



bride

brides *noun*
a woman on the day she gets married.



bride

bridge

bridges *noun*

a structure that is built over an obstacle such as a railroad or a river.



brief

adjective
short in time.
*He made a **brief** speech, lasting only five minutes.*

bright

adjective
1 giving off a lot of light.
*A car has **bright** headlights.*
2 clever.
*The **bright** pupil knew all the answers.*
■ comparisons **brighter** **brightest** **brightly** *adverb*

brilliant

adjective
1 very smart or clever.
*The inventor had a **brilliant** idea.*
2 very bright.
*Diamonds are **brilliant**.*

brim

brims *noun*
1 the edge of a hat.



brim

2 the top of a container, such as a glass or a cup.



*Full to the **brim**.*

bring

brings bringing brought *verb*
to take something or someone with you when you go somewhere.
*May I **bring** my friend along?*

bristle

bristles *noun*
stiff hairs, usually on an animal or a brush.



nail-brush

brittle

adjective
easily broken.
*Icicles are very **brittle**.*

broad

adjective
very wide.



*The river was **broad** at its mouth.*

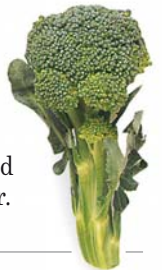
■ comparisons **broader** **broadest**

broadcast

broadcasts broadcasting broadcast *verb*
to send sound or pictures by radio or television.
*The Olympic games are **broadcast** all over the world.*

broccoli

noun
a vegetable with edible green or purple buds.
Broccoli is related to the cauliflower.



brochure

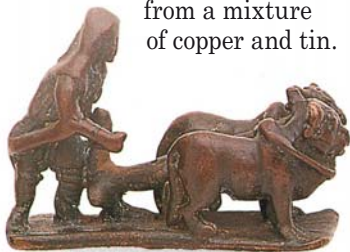
brochures *noun*
a small book that contains information.
■ say bro-shur

broke

from the verb **to break**
I broke my pencil in half.

bronze

noun
 a brown-colored metal made from a mixture of copper and tin.



An ornament made of bronze.

brooch

brooches noun
 a piece of jewelry that is usually pinned onto clothes.
 ■ say **broach**

**broom**

brooms noun
 a stiff, long-handled brush that is used for sweeping.

brother

brothers noun
 a male person who has the same mother and father as someone else.

brought

from the verb **to bring**
I brought my dog with me.
 ■ say **brawt**

brown

noun
 a color.

**brush**

brushes brushing brushed verb
 1 to sweep.
 2 to touch something lightly as you pass by it.
The woman brushed past me in the street.

brush

brushes noun
 a tool with a handle and bristles.



animal brush

bubble

bubbles noun
 a light ball of liquid with air inside.



bubble verb

bucket

buckets noun
 a large container with a handle, usually used for carrying liquids.

**buckle**

buckles noun
 an object for fastening two ends of a belt or strap.

**bud**

buds noun
 a small swelling on a plant, containing young leaves or flowers (see **tree** on page 223).



tree bud

Buddhist

Buddhists noun
 a person who follows the teachings of Buddha, a religious teacher who lived about 2,500 years ago.
 ■ say **boo-dist**

buffalo

buffalo noun
 a large mammal that lives on open plains and eats grass.

bugle

bugles noun
 a brass musical instrument that you blow through to produce sound.

**build**

builds building built verb
 to join things together to make a structure.
The bird built a nest out of twigs.

building

buildings noun
 a structure, usually with walls and a roof, for sheltering people or objects.

bulb

bulbs noun
 1 the rounded glass part of an electric light.



light bulb

2 the rounded part of some plants that grows underground.



daffodil bulb

bulge

bulges bulging bulged verb
 to swell or be lumpy.
Her pockets bulged with food.

bull

bulls noun
 1 a male mammal of the cattle family.
 2 the male of some large animals, such as elephants, whales, and seals.

bulldozer

bulldozers noun
 a machine with a large, metal blade at the front for moving earth and rocks.

**bullet**

bullets noun
 a pointed metal object fired from a gun.

bully

bullies noun
 an unpleasant person who frightens others.
bully verb

bump

bump

bumps bumping bumped *verb*
to knock into something.

bump

bumps *noun*
a rounded shape
on a smooth surface.
*Toads have bumps
on their skin.*
bumpy *adjective*

bunch

bunches *noun*
a group
of things
together.



bunch of carrots

bundle

bundles *noun*
a group of things that are
loosely joined together.



bundle of twigs

bungalow

bungalows *noun*
a small house with all its
rooms on one level.

bunk bed

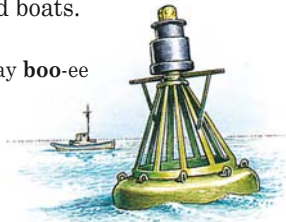
bunk beds *noun*
one of a pair of beds that are
placed one on top of the other.



buoy

buoys *noun*
an object that is tied
to an anchor and floats on
water. Buoys are used as
a warning or guide for ships
and boats.

■ say boo-ee



burglar

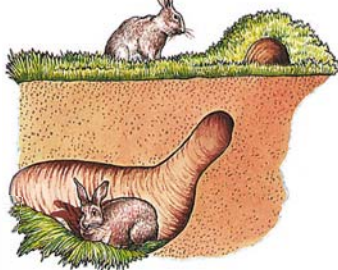
burglars *noun*
a person who steals things
from people's houses.

burn

burns burning burned or burnt *verb*
to damage or destroy by fire.

burrow

burrows *noun*
an animal's underground
home.



rabbit burrow

burst

bursts bursting burst *verb*
to split open.
*The water pipe burst and
flooded the kitchen.*

bury

buries burying buried *verb*
to put something in the
ground and cover it over.
The dog buried its bone.
■ say bare-ee

bus

buses *noun*
a road vehicle for carrying
a large number of passengers.

bush

noun
1 a large round-shaped plant.
Bushes are smaller than trees
and have many branches low
to the ground.



2 the wilderness in Australia,
New Zealand, and Africa.



business

businesses *noun*
1 an organization that sells
products or services.
2 the things that only you
should know about and
look after.

Mind your own business.

■ say biz-nis

busy

adjective
doing lots of things.

■ say biz-ee



butcher

butchers *noun*
a person who prepares and
sells meat.

butter

noun
a soft, yellow food made
from cream.

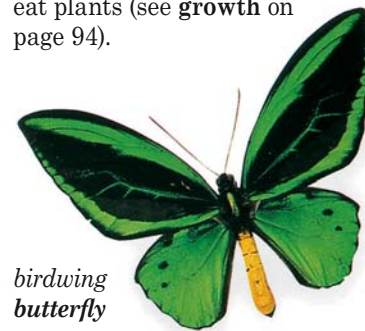
buttercup

buttercups *noun*
a small wildflower
with yellow petals.



butterfly

butterflies *noun*
an insect with wings covered
in very fine, colored scales.
Butterflies begin life as
caterpillars. Most butterflies
eat plants (see **growth** on
page 94).



*birdwing
butterfly*

button

buttons *noun*
1 a small object used
to fasten two
parts of a piece
of clothing
together.



2 a switch to activate
an electronic device.

buy

buys buying bought *verb*
to pay for something.
*I'm going to buy a book
with my allowance.*

buzz

buzzes buzzing buzzed *verb*
to make a low,
humming noise.
The bees buzzed in the hive.

byte

bytes *noun*
a piece of information that a
computer stores in its memory.



C c

cabbage**cabbages** *noun*

a vegetable with a short stem and tightly wrapped layers of broad leaves.

**cabin****cabins** *noun*

1 a small, simple house.



2 a room for passengers or crew on an airplane or ship.

cable**cables** *noun*

1 a very strong rope or chain.



2 a bundle of wires for carrying electrical power or signals, often laid underground.

electric cable

cactus**cacti** or **cactuses** *noun*

a plant that grows in hot deserts. Cacti store water in their stems and have prickly spines that protect them from animals.

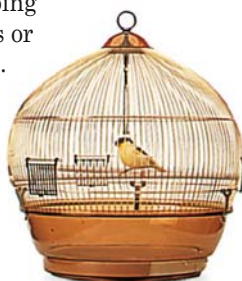
**café****cafés** *noun*

a place where people buy and eat meals, snacks, and drinks.

■ say ka-fay

**cage****cages** *noun*

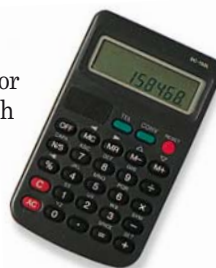
a container with metal bars for keeping animals or birds in.

**cake****cakes** *noun*

a sweet food that is made from flour, sugar, eggs, and butter and baked in an oven.

**calculator****calculators** *noun*

a small electronic machine for doing math quickly.



■ say kal-kyuh-lay-tor

calendar**calendars** *noun*

a chart of all the days, weeks, and months of the year.

**calf****calves** *noun*

1 a young cow or bull.

2 the young of some mammals, such as elephants or whales.

**call****calls** **calling** **called** *verb*

1 to shout out.

They called for help.

2 to give something a name.

I called my dog Spot.

3 to phone or visit somebody.

My cousin called to see me.

calligraphy*noun*

beautiful handwriting, using ink or paint.



■ say ka-lig-ruh-fee

calm*adjective*

1 still and quiet.

The sea was calm after the storm had passed.

2 peaceful.

Yoga makes her feel calm.

■ say kahm

■ comparisons calmer calmest

came*from the verb to come*

He came with us yesterday.



a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

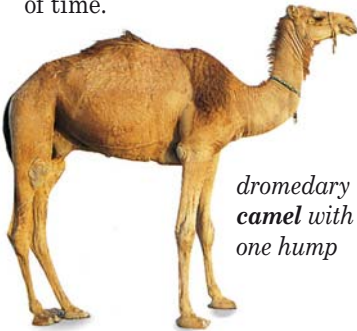
camel

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

camel

camels *noun*

a mammal with one or two humps on its back that lives in hot deserts. Camels store fat in their humps to help them go without water or food for long periods of time.



dromedary camel with one hump

camera

cameras *noun*

a piece of equipment used for taking photographs or for making videos or films.



digital camera

camouflage

camouflages *noun*

a disguise that helps to hide an animal or person.



■ say **kam-uh-flazh**
camouflage *verb*

leaf insect

camp

camps camping camped *verb*

to stay in a tent outdoors.



camping *noun*

campaign

campaigns *noun*

a series of events organized to bring about a goal.
*She led a **campaign** to stop the new highway.*

■ say kam-**pain**

can

can could *verb*

to be able to or to know how to do something.

*She **can** touch her toes.*

■ opposite **cannot** or **can't**

■ always used with another verb

can

cans *noun*

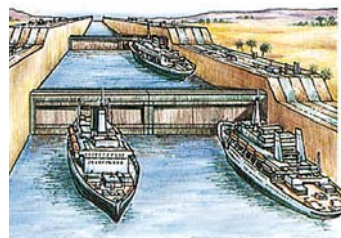
a metal container used for preserving food or drink.



canal

canals *noun*

a water channel that has been built across land for boats and ships to travel on.



canary

canaries *noun*

a yellow bird that is often kept as a pet because it sings. Wild canaries are green.



cancel

cancel *verb*

to stop something that has been planned.

*We **canceled** our trip.*

■ say kan-sul

cancellation *noun*

cancer

cancers *noun*

a serious disease in which harmful cells spread through the body.

■ say kan-ser

candidate

candidates *noun*

someone who seeks or is put forward for a job or honor.

*Presidential **candidate**.*

candle

candles *noun*

a stick of wax with a string called a wick running through it. Candles are burned to give off light.



candy

candies *noun*

food usually made of sugar.



cane

canes *noun*

1 a walking stick.

2 the thick, hollow stem of some plants.



sugar cane

canoe

canoes *noun*

a light, narrow boat. A paddle is used to move the canoe along.



canyon

canyons *noun*

a steep-sided, rocky valley.



capable

adjective

having ability or skill at something.

*They are both **capable** cooks.*

capacity

capacities *noun*

the amount that something will hold.



*These jars have different **capacities**.*

capital

capitals *noun*

1 a city where a country has its government offices.

*Moscow is the **capital** of Russia.*

2 a large letter of the alphabet used to start a sentence or a special name.

capture

captures capturing captured *verb*

to catch and hold on to someone or something.

car

cars *noun*

a vehicle with wheels that is moved by an engine and used to carry people from place to place.



New York City taxicab



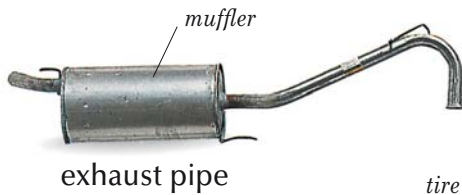
London taxi



jeep



minivan



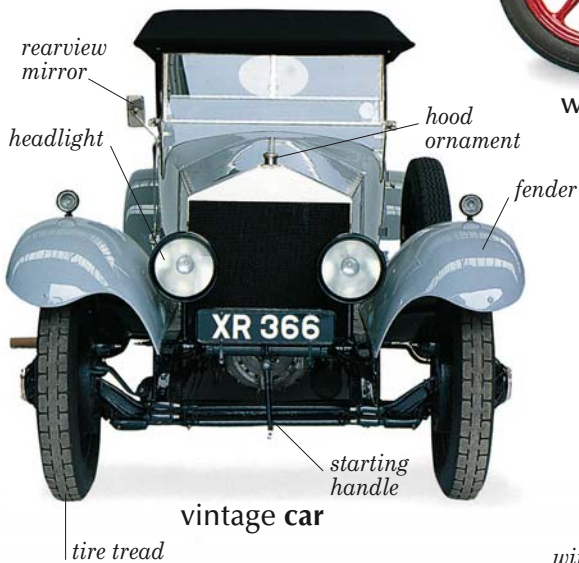
exhaust pipe



wheel



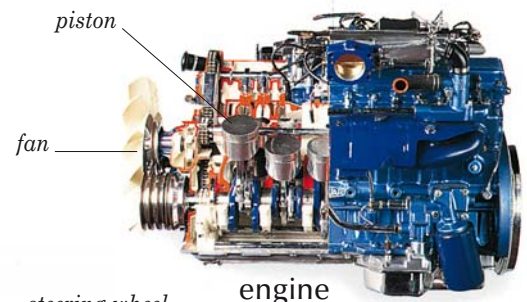
hatchback



vintage car



radiator grill



engine



sports car

caravan

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

caravan

caravans *noun*

a group of people or vehicles traveling together, often for safety when traveling across difficult or dangerous land.



cardboard

noun

a very strong, stiff type of paper used to make boxes.

care

cares caring cared *verb*

1 to be interested.

I care about what you do.

2 to look after someone.

I care for my sick mother.

3 to feel affection for someone.

He cares for his girlfriend.

career

careers *noun*

the jobs someone has during their working life, usually in the same occupation.

She taught in three schools during her career.

careful

adjective

being aware of dangers or problems.



Be careful when you cross the river.

■ opposite **careless**

cargo

cargoes *noun*

all the different goods that a ship or aircraft carries.

A cargo of bananas.

carnival

carnivals *noun*

1 a special event with a street procession, music, and dancing.



2 a traveling fair with rides, games, and shows.

carrot

carrots *noun*

a hard, sweet-tasting root vegetable.



carry

carries carrying

carried *verb*

to hold something while you move it somewhere.



carton

cartons *noun*

a small cardboard container for holding liquid, food, or objects.

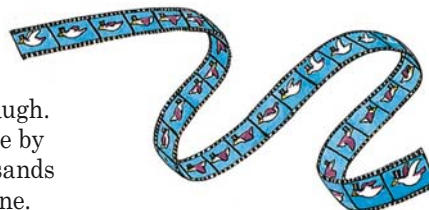


cartoon

cartoons *noun*

1 a funny drawing that makes people laugh.

2 a moving film made by photographing thousands of drawings one by one.



cartridge

cartridges *noun*

a container of ink for use in a pen or computer printer.

carve

carves carving carved *verb*

to cut something into a shape.



case

cases *noun*

1 a container.

2 a particular event or example.

There have been several cases of the flu at school.

cast

casts casting cast *verb*

1 to choose someone for a part in a play or film.

He was cast as the king.

2 to shape something in a mold.

A statue cast in bronze.

castle

castles *noun*

a large house with high stone walls and strong defenses against attacking armies.



cat

cats *noun*

a mammal that is often kept as a pet. Cats eat small animals and are fierce hunters (see **pet** on page 148).



catalog

catalogs *noun*

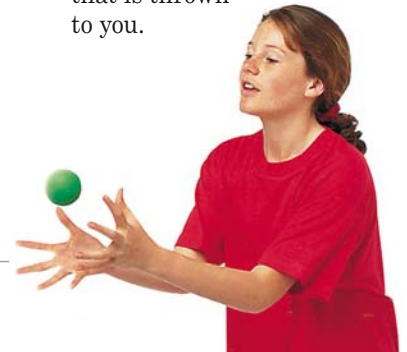
a book that shows you the things you can buy from a shop or a company.

■ say **kat-a-log**

catch

catches catching caught *verb*

1 to get hold of something that is thrown to you.



2 to get on a vehicle.

I catch the bus to work.

3 to get an infection.

I caught the measles from my sister.

caterpillar

caterpillars *noun*

the larva of a butterfly or moth.



cattle

noun

cows, bulls, or oxen.

cauliflower

cauliflowers *noun*

a vegetable with a short stem and a hard center, made of small flowers.



caution

caution *noun*

attention to possible danger. *Drive with **caution**.*

■ say kaw-shun
cautious *adjective*

ceiling

ceilings *noun*

the surface of a room that is above your head.

■ say see-ling

celebrate

celebrates *verb*
celebrated *verb*

to do something enjoyable for a special reason.

*We had a party to **celebrate** my birthday.*

■ say sell-uh-brate
celebration *noun*

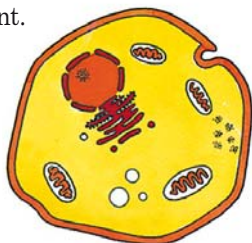
cell

cells *noun*

1 a small room in a prison.



2 the smallest living part of an animal or plant.

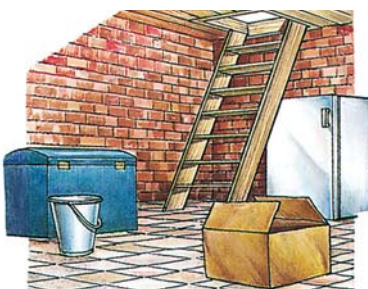


animal cell

cellar

cellars *noun*

an underground room.



cell phone

cell phone *noun*

a handheld mobile telephone that connects to other telephones by radio waves.

*She is speaking on her **cell phone**.*



cement

cement *noun*

a clay powder that becomes hard when mixed with water.

centipede

centipedes *noun*

a tiny, blind animal with many pairs of legs that lives in dark places. They paralyze their prey with a poisonous bite.

■ say sen-tuh-peed



central

central *adjective*

1 in the middle.



*The tomato is in a **central** position.*
2 of most importance.
*The heroine is the **central** character in the story.*

century

centuries *noun*

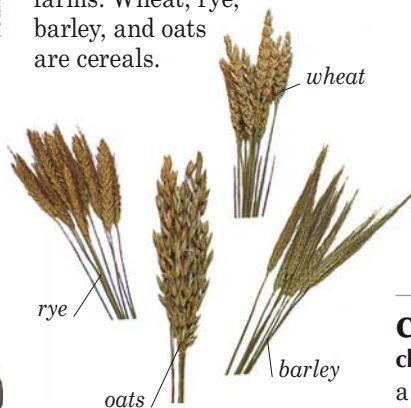
a period of a hundred years. *The building is several **centuries** old.*

■ sen-choo-ree

cereal

cereals *noun*

1 a grain crop grown on farms. Wheat, rye, barley, and oats are cereals.



2 a breakfast food made from the grains of a cereal crop.

■ say sear-ee-ul

breakfast cereal



certain

certain *adjective*

sure, or definite.

*Are you **certain** this is the right train?*

■ opposite uncertain

certificate

certificates *noun*

a piece of paper that proves certain facts.

*She received a **certificate** for passing her math exam.*

chain

chains *noun*

metal loops joined together to make a strong cable.



chair

chairs *noun*

a piece of furniture for sitting on.



chalk

chalks *noun*

a soft, white rock made from the fossils of tiny seashells.



challenge

challenges *verb*
challenged *verb*

to ask someone to try to do something better than you. *He **challenged** her to a race.*

chameleon

chameleons *noun*

a type of lizard that lives in trees in hot regions and eats insects, rodents, and small birds. Chameleons can

change color to match their surroundings.



■ say kuh-mee-lee-on

champion

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

champion

champions *noun*

someone who is the best at a sport.



chance

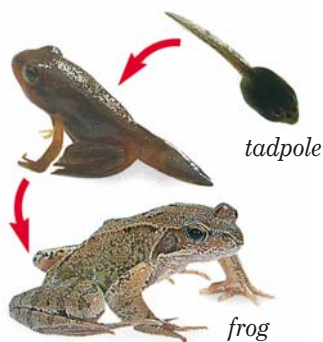
chances *noun*

an opportunity, or possibility.
*He was given the **chance** to study abroad.*

change

changes changing changed *verb*

1 to become different or to make something different.



*Tadpoles **change** into frogs.*
2 to give up something in return for something else.
*He **changed** seats.*
change *noun*

change

noun

small amounts of money.

channel

channels *noun*

1 a passage or track for water to flow along.
2 a television or radio station.
*What's on the other **channel**?*

chaos

noun

complete confusion.

■ say kay-os

chapter

chapters *noun*

a section of a book.

character

characters *noun*

1 what a person is like.
*A miserable **character**.*
2 a person in a play or film.
*He played the **character** of the young king.*

charity

charities *noun*

an organization that gives aid to those who need it.
*The Red Cross is a **charity**.*

chart

charts *noun*

a map or diagram that provides information.



*A pie **chart** showing popular forms of transportation.*

chase

chases chasing chased *verb*

to run after something or somebody.



cheap

adjective

not costing much money.

■ opposite **expensive**

an expensive ring



a cheap ring

50¢

cheat

cheats cheating cheated *verb*

to trick someone, or to be dishonest so that you have an advantage over them.

check

checks checking checked *verb*

to look at something to make sure it is all right.

check *noun*

check

checks *noun*

a pattern of regular squares in different colors, often on cloth or paper.



cheek

cheeks *noun*

the side of your face below your eye.

cheek



cheer

cheers cheering cheered *verb*

to shout out loudly and happily.



cheer *noun*

cheese

cheeses *noun*

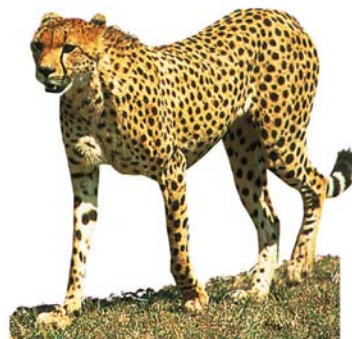
a food made from the thickened parts of milk.



cheetah

cheetahs *noun*

a spotted mammal that belongs to the cat family. Cheetahs live on the dry plains of Africa and prey on other animals. They are extremely fast runners.



chef

chefs *noun*

a person whose job it is to cook and prepare food.

■ say shef



chemical

chemicals *noun*

any substance that can change when joined or mixed with another. Chemicals can be natural or manufactured.

■ say kem-i-kul

cherish

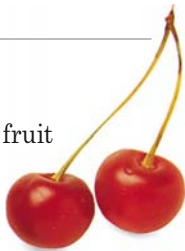
cherishes cherishing cherished verb

to love or value someone or something highly.
*She **cherished** her pet rabbit.*

cherry

cherries noun

a round, soft fruit with a small pit in its center.



chess

noun

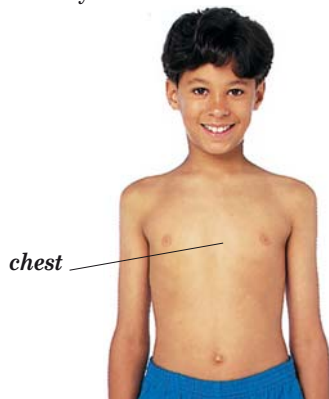
a board game for two people. The winner is the person who takes the other player's king.



chest

chests noun

1 the front of your body below your shoulders and above your stomach.



2 a wooden box with a lid for keeping things in.



chew

chews chewing chewed verb

to use your teeth to break up food.

■ say **choo**

chick

chicks noun

a young bird.



child

children noun

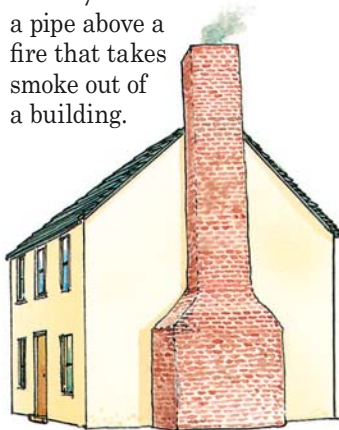
a young person. A child legally becomes an adult at the age of 18.

■ opposite **adult**

chimney

chimneys noun

a pipe above a fire that takes smoke out of a building.



chimpanzee

chimpanzees noun

a mammal that lives in groups in forests in central Africa. Chimpanzees are related to the ape family. Their main diet is fruit and nuts, though sometimes they eat small animals.



chin

chins noun

the part of your face between your mouth and your neck.



china

noun

a type of delicate pottery made from fine, white clay.



chip

chips noun

1 a small piece of something that has broken off something larger.



wood **chips**

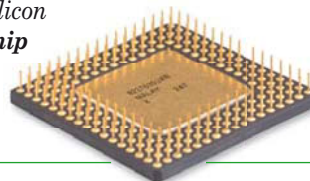
2 a gap or mark on something, showing the place where a small part has broken off.

chip



3 a small piece of material with many tiny electronic circuits printed on it. Chips are used in electronic devices for storing information.

silicon **chip**



chocolate

chocolates noun

a sweet food made from crushed and roasted cocoa beans, milk, and sugar.



choir

choirs noun

a group of singers.

■ say **kwire**



choke

chokes choking choked verb

to stop or almost stop breathing.

*The firefighters almost **choked** in the dense smoke.*

choose

chooses choosing chose chosen verb

to decide that you want one thing and not another.
*I **chose** the blue pants, instead of the red ones.*

choice noun

chop

chops chopping chopped verb

to cut up something with a sharp tool.



a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

chopstick

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

chopstick

chopsticks *noun*

a thin piece of wood or plastic used in pairs for eating food.



chorus

choruses *noun*

lines in a song that are repeated at the end of each verse.

■ say kor-us

Christian

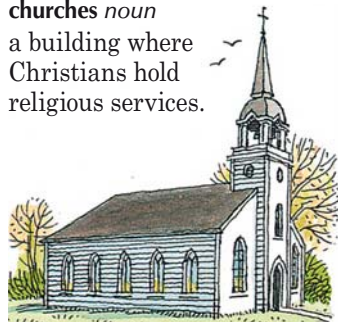
Christians *noun*

a person who believes in and follows the teachings of Jesus Christ and believes that Jesus is the son of God.

church

churches *noun*

a building where Christians hold religious services.



chute

chutes *noun*

a sloping channel for sliding things down.

Water chute.

■ say shoot

cigarette

cigarettes *noun*

a rolled-up piece of paper filled with tobacco that can be lit and smoked. Cigarettes can harm your heart and lungs.

cinder

cinders *noun*

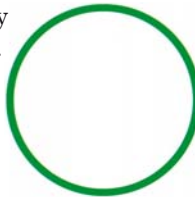
a small piece of partly burned wood or coal.

circle

circles *noun*

a flat, exactly round shape.

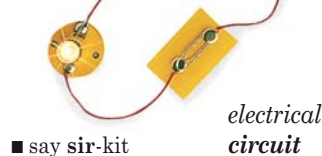
circular *adjective*



circuit

circuits *noun*

1 any completed path or track.
2 the completed path of an electric current.



■ say sir-kit

electrical circuit

circus

circuses *noun*

a show with clowns, jugglers, and acrobats that travels around the country.



citizen

citizens *noun*

a person who lives in, and belongs to, a particular place. *An American citizen.*

city

cities *noun*

a very large, important town. *New York, San Francisco, and Chicago are US cities.*

civilization

civilizations *noun*

a large group of people living in a well-organized way. *The Aztec civilization.*

■ say siv-uh-li-zay-shun

claim

claims claiming claimed *verb*
to say that something is yours.

She claimed first prize in the competition.

clang

clangs clanging clangd *verb*

to make a deep, loud, ringing sound.

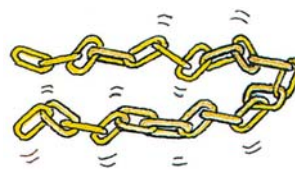
Bells clang.



clank

clanks clanking clanked *verb*

to make a short, metallic sound.



Chains clank.

clap

claps clapping clapped *verb*

to make a short, sharp sound with your hands.

Clap your hands.

clap *noun*



clash

clashes *noun*

a loud, metallic sound.

Cymbals clash.



class

classes *noun*

1 a group of pupils who are taught together.

My class is learning French.

2 a group of people, animals, or things that are similar to each other in some way.

Butterflies belong to the class of insects.

classify

classifies classifying classified *verb*

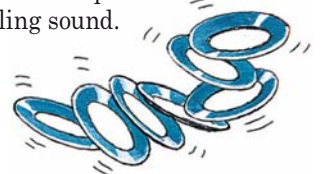
to sort things out into groups of different types.

Books can be classified as fiction or nonfiction.

clatter

clatters clattering clattered *verb*

to make a repeated rattling sound.



The plates clattered to the floor.

claw

claws *noun*

one of the long, curved, pointed nails that many animals and birds have on their feet.

owl's claw



clay

clay *noun*

a soft, fine earth that is soft and sticky when wet and hard when dried or heated. Clay is used to make pots and bricks.



modeling clay

clean

cleans cleaning cleaned *verb*

to remove dirt or stains.



clean

adjective

without any dirt or stains.

Clean silver.

■ comparisons **cleaner**
cleanest



clear

clears clearing cleared verb
to move things that are in the way.

*The walkers **cleared** a path through the bushes.*

clear

adjective

1 easy to see through.

*The water was so **clear** that I could see the fish.*



2 easy to understand.

*A **clear** explanation.*

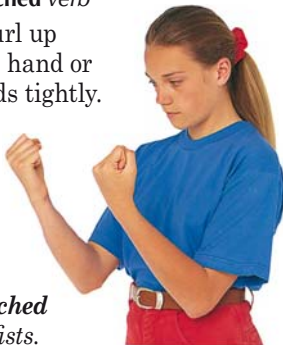
■ comparisons **clearer** **clearest**

clench

clenches clenching clenched verb

to curl up your hand or hands tightly.

*She **clenched** her fists.*



clever

adjective

able to learn and understand things easily.

■ comparisons **cleverer** **cleverest**

click

clicks clicking clicked verb

to make a short, sharp sound with your fingers.

***Clicking** your fingers.*

cliff

cliffs noun

the high, steep side of a mountain or rock.



climate

climates noun

the type of weather that a place has over a long time.

*The **climate** in southern Africa is hot and dry.*

climb

climbs climbing climbed verb

to move upward, using your hands and feet.



climb noun

cling

clings clinging clung verb

to hold onto something very tightly.



***Clinging** upside down.*

clink

clinks clinking linked verb

to make a soft, ringing sound.

*The ice **clinked** in the glass.*

clip

noun

1 a small metal or plastic object to fasten something together.

*A paper **clip**.*

2 a short section of film.

clock

clocks noun

an instrument that shows the time.

clockwise

adverb

moving in the same direction as the hands on a clock.

■ opposite **counterclockwise**



close

closes closing closed verb

to shut something.

■ say kloze

close

adjective

near to something.

***Close** to the house.*

■ say klos

■ comparisons **closer** **closest**

clot

clots noun

a soft lump in a liquid.

*A blood **clot**.*

cloth

noun

woven material that is used to make clothes and other things.

clothes

noun

the things that we wear.

clothing noun

cloud

clouds noun

a mass of tiny drops of water, or pieces of ice, floating high in the air. The water falls as rain, and the ice falls as hail or snow.

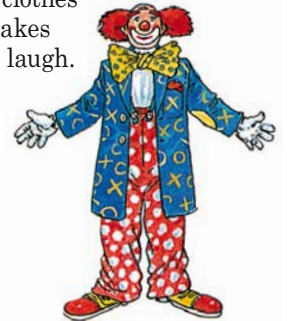


cloudy adjective

clown

clowns noun

a circus performer who wears funny clothes and makes people laugh.



club

clubs noun

1 a group of people who meet together for a purpose, and the place where they meet.

*A drama **club**.*

2 a thick, heavy stick that is used as a weapon.

3 a stick with a shaped head that is used to hit balls in golf (see **sport** on page 197).

clue

clues noun

a piece of information that helps to solve a mystery.



clumsy

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

clumsy

clumsy *adjective*
moving awkwardly, or without skill.



*The big shoes made her walk in a **clumsy** way.*

■ comparisons **clumsier**
clumsiest

coach

coaches *noun*
1 a bus or railroad car.



2 a person who teaches people a special skill.
*A baseball **coach**.*

coach

coaches coaching coached *verb*
to teach somebody how to do something.
*She **coaches** the hockey team every Saturday.*

coal

coal *noun*
a hard, brittle, brown or black rock that is burned as a fuel. Coal is made from fossilized plants that died millions of years ago.



coast

coasts *noun*
the seashore.
coastal *adjective*



coat

coats *noun*
1 an item of clothing you wear over your clothes to keep warm outside.



2 an animal's fur.
3 a layer of paint.

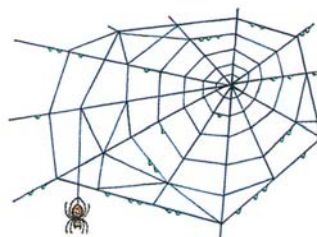
cobra

cobras *noun*
a large, poisonous snake that lives in hot regions. Cobras can flatten the bones of their necks into a hood shape when threatened. They kill their prey with a bite that paralyzes them.



cobweb

cobwebs *noun*
a very fine, sticky net made by spiders to trap flies.



cockatoo

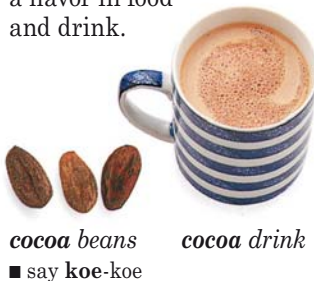
cockatoos *noun*
a parrot with head feathers that it can lift up or flatten. Cockatoos eat fruit, nuts, and plant roots (see **bird** on page 28).

cockpit

cockpits *noun*
the place where a pilot sits in an airplane.

cocoa

cocoa *noun*
a powder made from cocoa beans, the dried seeds of the cacao tree. Cocoa is used to make chocolate and as a flavor in food and drink.



cocoa beans
■ say **koe-koe**

cocoa drink

coconut

coconuts *noun*
the fruit of the coconut palm tree. The hard, outer shell has a layer of sweet, white, edible flesh inside and contains a thin liquid known as coconut milk.



cod

cod *noun*
a large sea fish that lives in shoals close to the ocean floor. Cod use their sharp teeth to eat smaller fish, shellfish, and worms.

code

codes *noun*
1 a set of rules.
*The safety **code**.*
2 a series of signs, symbols, or letters for sending messages secretly or quickly.

● ● ● ■ ■ ■ ● ● ●
*SOS message in Morse **code***

coffee

coffee *noun*
a drink made from the roasted and crushed seeds of the coffee plant. When roasted, the seeds are called beans.



roasted coffee beans

cog

cogs *noun*
1 a wheel with shapes cut out around its edge. Cogs are used together in machines to turn other things around.



2 the tooth-shaped, metal parts around such a wheel.

coil

coils *noun*
something that is twisted around into circles.



coil of metal

coin

coins *noun*
a piece of money made of metal.



cold**cold** *adjective*

having a low temperature.

A cold day.■ opposite **hot****cold****colds** *noun*

an infection that often makes you sneeze and cough and may give you a sore throat.

collapse**collapses collapsing collapsed** *verb*

1 to fall down suddenly.

The tent collapsed.

2 to fold up.

*My umbrella collapses so I can put it in my bag.***collapsible** *adjective***collect****collects collecting collected** *verb*
to bring together.*I collect autographs.***collection** *noun***collide****collides colliding collided** *verb*
to crash into something.*Our cars collided.***collision** *noun***color****colors** *noun*

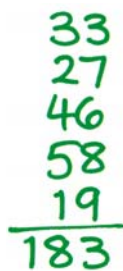
what something looks like when light is shining on it. Yellow, green, red, and blue are the names of some colors.

*fruits of different colors***colorful** *adjective***column****columns** *noun*

1 a tall, vertical, round post that is used as a support or to decorate buildings.



2 a list where things are written underneath each other.

Adding up a column of figures.**comb****combs** *noun*

a piece of wood, metal, or plastic with teeth. A comb is used to arrange hair.

**combine****combines combining combined** *verb*

to bring things together to make something else.

*Blue and yellow paint combine to make green.***combination** *noun***come****comes coming came** *verb*

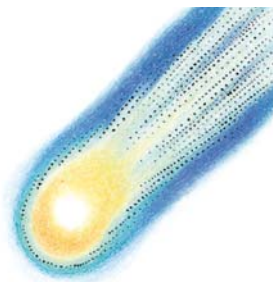
to move toward, or arrive at, one place from another.

*Hurry up! The train is coming.***comedy****comedies** *noun*

a movie, play, or radio or television program that makes you laugh.

comet**comets** *noun*

a huge ball of dust, ice, and gases that travels around the Sun, often followed by a luminous trail of gases.

**comfortable****comfortable** *adjective*

pleasant and easy to sit in or wear.

A comfortable chair.■ opposite **uncomfortable****comic****comics** *noun*

a magazine that contains stories told in pictures.

**command****commands commanding commanded** *verb*

to order someone to do what you want.

*The teacher commanded them to sit down.***command** *noun***common****common** *adjective*

often seen, or normal.

*Seagulls are a common sight along the coast.***common sense****common sense** *noun*

the ability to act sensibly in different situations.

*Common sense stopped us from driving in the fog.***communicate****communicates communicating communicated** *verb*

to talk, write, or send a message to someone else.

*Communicating by telephone.*

■ say kuh-myoo-ni-kate

communication *noun***community****communities** *noun*

a group of people who live together in the same place.

■ say kuh-myoo-ni-tee

commuter**commuters** *noun*

a person who travels a long distance to and from work every day.

commute *verb***compact disc****compact discs** *noun*

a small, flat circle of plastic that can have sound, or sound, words, and pictures, recorded on it. Compact disc is shortened to CD.



a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

company

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

company

noun

1 a group of people who work together to make or sell something.

*A computer **company**.*

2 people or animals with whom you spend time.

*My cat is good **company**.*

compare

compares comparing compared *verb*

to look at several things to see how they are the same and how they are different.

*My teacher **compares** me with my sister all the time.*

comparison *noun*

compass

compasses *noun*

1 an instrument that shows the direction you are facing.

The magnetic compass needle always points north.



magnetic needle

2 a tool with one fixed leg and one movable leg that is used for drawing circles.



competition

competitions *noun*

an event where one person or a team of people try to do better than their opponents.

*Our team came second in the swimming **competition**.*

compete *verb*

complain

complains complaining

complained *verb*

to say that you are not happy about something.

*The passengers **complained** about the late train.*

complete

completes completing

completed *verb*

to finish something.



Completing the jigsaw puzzle.

complete *adjective*

complicated

adjective

hard to understand, or difficult.



a complicated knot

■ opposite **simple**

composer

composers *noun*

a person who writes music.

compose *verb*

compromise

compromises compromising

compromised *verb*

to end an argument by both sides deciding to give up part of what they want.

*They both wanted to ride the bike, but had to **compromise** by taking turns.*

■ say **kom-pro-mize**

compromise *noun*

compulsory

adjective

that which must be done.

*Math is a **compulsory** subject at school.*

computer

computers *noun*

an electronic machine that arranges and stores information digitally, using a set of instructions called a program. Used for communication.



laptop computer

concentrate

concentrates concentrating

concentrated *verb*

to think carefully about something.



Concentrating on a puzzle.

■ say **kon-sen-trate**

concentration *noun*

concert

concerts *noun*

an event where people sing or play music for an audience to listen to.

conclusion

conclusions *noun*

1 the end of something.

*The story's **conclusion** was a happy one.*

2 a decision that is based on all the things you know.

*She came to the **conclusion** that it was a sensible idea.*

conclude *verb*

concrete

noun

a mixture of sand, cement, stones, and water, which is used for building.



concrete paving stones

condition

noun

1 the state that something is in.



Grooming helps to keep a horse in good **condition**.

2 a rule.

*He went out on the **condition** that he was back before dark.*

confident

adjective

believing you can do something, or being sure something will happen.

*I'm **confident** I'll win.*

confidence *noun*

confiscate

confiscates confiscating

confiscated *verb*

to punish by taking something away from someone.

*I had my football **confiscated**.*

confuse

confuses confusing confused
verb

1 to make someone puzzled because of some difficulty in understanding.
*The instructions **confused** me.*
2 to find it difficult to tell one thing from another.
*I always **confuse** the twins.*

congratulate

congratulates congratulating congratulated verb

to say to someone that they have done well.



***Congratulating** the winner.*
congratulations noun

conifer

conifers noun

a tree that has needles instead of leaves. Conifers stay green all year round and have cones instead of flowers.



Scotch pine

connect

connects connecting connected verb

to link up two things.



***Connecting** the digital camera to the computer.*
connection noun

conscience

consciences noun

a feeling inside you that tells you what is right and wrong.
*A guilty **conscience**.*

■ say **kon-shuns**

conscious

adjective

awake and aware of what is happening.

*The man was still **conscious** after the accident.*

■ say **kon-shus**

■ opposite **unconscious**

conservation

noun

the protection and careful use of something. Conservation groups try to protect animals, plants, and the environment.

consider

considers considering considered verb

to think about something carefully.
*She **considered** going out, but decided not to.*

considerate

adjective

thoughtful toward other people.



*He is very **considerate**.*

consonant

consonants noun

any letter of the alphabet that is not a vowel (see **alphabet** on page 16).

constant

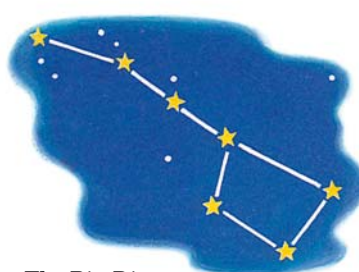
adjective

going on without stopping.
*A **constant** problem.*
constantly adverb

constellation

constellations noun

a group of stars.



The Big Dipper

construct

constructs constructing constructed verb

to build.



***Constructing** a model.*
construction noun

contact

contacts contacting contacted verb

to communicate with someone.
*You can **contact** me by phone while I'm away.*

contact noun

contain

contains containing contained verb

to have something inside.



*The box **contains** tools.*
container noun

content

contents noun

an object inside something, such as a box, bag, or book.

■ say **kon-tent**



lunch box
contents

content

adjective

happy and satisfied.

■ say **kon-tent**

contented adjective

contest

contests noun

a match or competition between people.
*A juggling **contest**.*

continent

continents noun

one of seven very large areas of land that usually includes several countries.



*the **continent** of Africa*

continual

adjective

happening often, or without stopping.

***Continual** noise.*

continually adverb

continue

continues continuing continued verb

to carry on.

*The match **continued** after the rain had stopped.*

continuous adjective

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

contract

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

contract

contracts contracting contracted verb
to shrink or make smaller.
*Your eye pupils **contract** when light is shone on them.*

contradict

contradicts contradicting contradicted verb
to say the opposite of what someone else has said.
*The politicians **contradicted** each other.*
contradiction noun

contribute

contributes contributing contributed verb
to give a part of something.
*We all **contributed** to the meal.*
contribution noun

control

controls controlling controlled verb
to have the power to make something or someone do what you want.



*These toy planes are **controlled** from the ground.*

convenient

convenient adjective
useful, or easy for you.
*A **convenient** time.*
■ say kuhn-veen-nyent
■ opposite **inconvenient**

conversation

conversations noun
talk between two or more people.
*A friendly **conversation**.*



convince

convinces convincing convinced verb
to persuade someone to believe something.
■ say kuhn-vins

cook

cooks cooking cooked verb
to prepare and heat food so that it can be eaten.
cooking noun



cook

cooks noun
someone who prepares food.

cool

cool adjective
slightly cold.



*This box keeps drinks **cool**.*
■ opposite **warm**

cooperate

cooperates cooperating cooperated verb
to work with someone in a helpful way.
*We **cooperated** on a project.*
cooperation noun

copper

copper noun
a red-brown colored metal that turns green when it comes into contact with moist air.



copper ore



copper pipe

copy

copies copying copied verb
to do the same thing as someone else.
***Copy** me! I'll show you how to do it.*
copy noun

coral

corals noun
a hard substance that is made of the skeletons of small sea animals. Coral is found in warm seas.



core

cores noun
the middle part of something.
*An apple **core**.*

cork

cork noun
the soft, springy bark of the cork oak tree, which is used to make mats, tiles, and seals for bottles.



cork oak bark



wine cork

corn

corn noun
a tall plant that grows seeds on large ears. Corn is used as food for people and animals.

corner

corners noun
the place where two lines or surfaces meet at an angle.
*A street **corner**.*

correct

correct adjective
right, with no mistakes.
■ opposite **incorrect**
correction noun

corridor

corridors noun
a long indoor passage with doors leading off it into rooms.



cosmetics

cosmetics noun
the things that people use to change the way their skin or hair looks.



lipstick



eye pencil

cost

costs costing cost verb
to have a price.
*A computer **costs** hundreds of dollars.*
cost noun

costume

costumes *noun*

1 an outfit worn in a particular period of time.

Historical costume.

2 an outfit worn for a special reason.

Theatrical costume.



gauntlets

silk stockings



doublet

ruff

hose

16th-century costume



chemise

corset

petticoat

drawers

crinoline frame

19th-century lingerie



tunic (chiton)

sandals

Ancient Greek costume



mules



petticoat

pantaloons

pumps

19th-century costume



wig

beauty mark

cravat

waistcoat

cuff

breeches

stockings

buckle

18th-century costume



brim

cloche hat



suspenders



handbag



headdress

trimming

pendant

girdle

14th-century costume

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

cotton

A

cotton

noun

1 soft, white hairs that surround the seeds on a cotton plant.
2 thread or cloth woven from cotton plants.

cotton thread



B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

Z

cough

coughs coughing coughed verb
to force air out of your lungs with a sharp noise.

■ say kawf

council

councils noun

a group of people who are chosen to make decisions for an organization or community.

counter

counters noun

a flat surface in a store or bank where you are served.
The cheese counter.

country

countries noun

1 an area of land with its own borders, people, and laws.



China is one of the biggest countries in the world.

2 land outside towns and cities.

courage

noun

being brave when you are in danger or difficulty.

It takes courage to admit that you are wrong.

■ say kur-ij

courageous adjective

course

courses noun

1 the plan of lessons that students must follow in a school or college subject.
Our history course starts on Monday.

2 the ground where many outdoor sports, such as golf and horse-racing, take place.



horse-racing course

court

courts noun

1 the place where it is decided whether people have broken the law and what punishment they should receive.

2 a piece of ground, marked with lines, on which some sports are played.

A badminton court.

cousin

cousins noun

a child of the sister or brother of someone's parent.

cover

covers covering covered verb
to put something over or on something else.



Cover your mouth.

cover noun

cow

cows noun

1 a female mammal that eats grass and is reared on farms to produce milk and beef.



2 the female of some large animals, such as elephants and whales.

coward

coward noun

a person who is easily scared.

crab

crabs noun

a shellfish with 10 legs and a soft body protected by a hard covering. The front pair of legs end in claws, which the crab uses to catch its prey.



coral crab

crack

cracks cracking cracked verb
to become damaged so that it splits, but does not break.
The mirror cracked when he dropped it.

crack noun

cracker

crackers noun

a thin, dry biscuit often eaten with cheese.



crackle

crackles crackling crackled verb
to make sharp, snapping noises.

craft

crafts noun

1 an activity that requires skill.



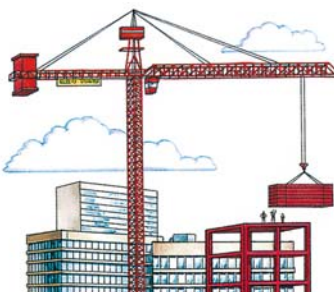
paper craft

2 a boat, airplane, or spaceship.

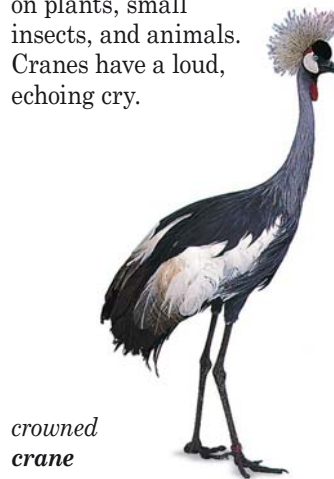
crane

cranes noun

1 a machine that lifts and moves heavy objects.



2 a large bird that lives near marshes and lakes and feeds on plants, small insects, and animals. Cranes have a loud, echoing cry.



crowned crane

crash

crashes crashing crashed verb
to fall or collide with a loud noise.

The tray of china crashed to the floor.

crash noun

crate**crates** *noun*

an open container for storing and carrying things, usually bottles.

crawl

crawls crawling crawled *verb*
to move along on your hands and knees.



Most babies **crawl** before they learn to walk.

crayfish**crayfish** *noun*

a spiny shellfish that looks like a small lobster. Crayfish live under stones during the day and hunt for small fish and insects at night.

**crazy****crazy** *adjective*

foolish or strange.

■ comparisons **crazier craziest**

creak

creaks creaking creaked *verb*
to make a low, squeaking sound.
*The door **creaked** open.*

cream**cream** *noun*

1 the oily part of milk that rises to the top. Cream is often used to make sweets and desserts.

a pitcher of **cream**



2 a yellow-white color.

crease**creases** *noun*

a line or fold, usually made in cloth or paper.



crease *verb*

create**creates creating created** *verb*

to design and make something.
*She **created** a beautiful painting.*

■ say kree-ate

creature**creatures** *noun*

any living thing.

creek**creeks** *noun*

a small, narrow inlet or bay in the coast.

creep

creeps creeping crept *verb*
to walk forward very slowly and quietly.



*The cat **crept** up on the birds.*

crew**crews** *noun*

1 the people who work on a ship or airplane.
2 a team of people who work together in a job.
*The film **crew** was ready to begin shooting.*

cricket**crickets** *noun*

1 a jumping insect that eats plants. Crickets rub their wings together to make a singing sound. They have long back legs for jumping.



2 a team game played with 11 players in each team. The winning team is the one with the most points, called runs. Runs are scored by the person batting (see **sport** on page 197).

**cried***from the verb to cry*

*The baby **cried** all last night.*

crime**crimes** *noun*

an activity that is against the law.

*Murder is a very serious **crime**.*

criminal**criminals** *noun*

a person who takes part in a crime.

**crocodile****crocodiles** *noun*

a reptile that lives on land and in water. Crocodiles are fierce hunters and hunt at night for fish, mammals, and frogs (see **skeleton** on page 188).

crisp**crisp** *adjective*

dry and easily broken into pieces.



crisp cookies

■ comparisons **crisper crispest**

criticize**criticizes criticizing criticized** *verb*

to say what you think is wrong with something.
*He was upset when I **criticized** his painting.*

■ say krit-i-size

criticism *noun*

cross

crosses crossing crossed *verb*
1 to go over something, from one side to another.
***Crossing** the street.*
2 to put one thing across another.



*He **crossed** his fingers.*

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

CROSS

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

cross

crosses *noun*
an object or sign made by two lines crossing each other.



cross

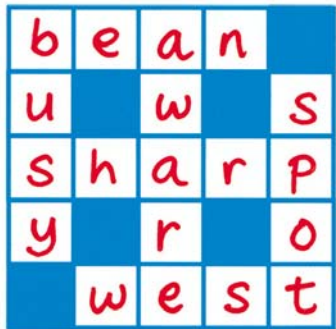
adjective
angry.



*I get **cross** when people litter.*
crossly *adverb*

crossword

crosswords *noun*
a word puzzle with clues. You write down the answers by putting each letter of the answer into a separate square.



crouch

crouches crouching crouched *verb*
to bend down low, with your legs curled underneath you.



crowd

crowds *noun*
a large number of people gathered close together.

crown

crowns *noun*
a circle of precious metals and jewels. Kings and queens wear crowns on their heads on special occasions.



cruel

adjective
unkind and hurtful.

crumb

crumbs *noun*
a very small piece of food, such as bread, cake, or crackers.

crunch

crunches crunching crunched *verb*
to crush or chew something noisily.
*She **crunched** a juicy apple.*

crush

crushes crushing crushed *verb*
to damage something by squeezing it very hard.



Crushing a can.

crust

crusts *noun*
1 a hard covering.



pie crust

2 the thick, hard outer covering of Earth.

crutch

crutches *noun*
a support for someone who has difficulty walking.



cry

cries crying cried *verb*
to have tears falling from your eyes because you are upset or sad.



crystal

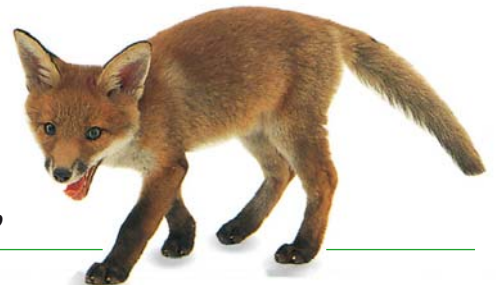
crystals *noun*
a piece of clear quartz with flat sides that has been formed naturally.



■ say kris-tuhl

cub

cubs *noun*
a young mammal, such as a fox, lion, or bear.



fox cub

cube

cubes *noun*
a solid shape with six square sides.



cucumber

cucumbers *noun*
a green vegetable with a crisp, white flesh that grows on vines. Cucumbers are a popular vegetable to use in salads.



cuddle

cuddles cuddling cuddled *verb*
to hug someone in a loving way.



*A mother **cuddling** her daughter.*

culprit

culprits *noun*
a person who has done something wrong.
*The **culprit** had the stolen money in his pocket.*

cunning

adjective
able to trick people.

cup**cups** *noun*

a container used for drinking liquids.

**cure****cures curing cured** *verb*

to make somebody well again after they have been ill.

curious*adjective*

1 eager to find out about things.

*She was **curious** to see what was behind the door.*

2 strange but interesting.

*I saw a very **curious** animal the other day.*

■ say **kyoor**-ee-us

curl**curls** *noun*

a small, curved piece of hair.

*Her hair is a mass of **curls**.*

curly *adjective*

**currency****currencies** *noun*

the money of a country.

*The **currency** of France is the euro.*

current**currents** *noun*

1 a flow of water or air moving in a certain direction.
*The **current** carried the boat out to sea.*

2 the flow of electricity through a wire.

*Switch off the **current** when you change a lightbulb.*

curry**curries** *noun*

1 a hot, spicy dish made of meat, fish, or vegetables, usually served with rice.



*vegetable **curry***

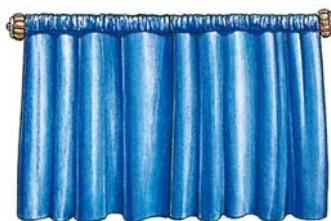
2 a mixture of hot spices used to flavor food.



curry powder

curtain**curtains** *noun*

pieces of material that are hung from a bar and can be pulled across a window or space.

**curtsy****curtsies** *noun*

a formal way for women to greet someone.



■ also spelled **curtsey**

curve**curves** *noun*

a line that bends smoothly.

curve *verb***cushion****cushions** *noun*

a type of pillow used for sitting or leaning on.

**customer****customers** *noun*

a person who buys something from a store or a company.

cut**cuts cutting cut** *verb*

to divide something into parts, using a sharp tool.



Cutting with scissors.

cut**cuts** *noun*

a wound, often made by something sharp.

cutlery*noun*

knives, forks, and spoons.

**cycle**

cycles cycling cycled *verb*
to ride a bicycle.

**cycle****cycles** *noun*

changes that happen regularly in a particular order.

*The life **cycle** of a butterfly.*

cyclone**cyclones** *noun*

a tropical storm with very strong winds.

■ say **sy**-e-clone

cylinder**cylinders** *noun*

a solid or hollow object with circular ends and straight sides (see **shape** on page 182).

■ say **sil**-in-der

cymbal**cymbals** *noun*

a round, hollow, brass musical instrument that makes a loud, clashing sound when hit.



a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

Dd

daffodil

daffodils *noun*

a plant that grows from a bulb and has a large, trumpet-shaped flower at the end of each stem.



dagger

daggers *noun*

a knife with a short, sharp, pointed blade, that is used as a weapon.

daily

adverb

every day.

*Letters are delivered **daily**.*

daily *adjective*

dairy

dairies *noun*

a place where milk and cream are stored and butter and cheese are made.

daisy

daisies *noun*

a common plant with white or pink flowers. Daisies close their petals when it is dark. Some kinds of daisy are wild, while others are grown as garden plants.

dam

dams *noun*

a wall built across a river or stream to hold back the flow of water.



damage

damages damaging damaged

verb

to harm something.



*The collision **damaged** the front of the boat.*

■ say **dam**-ij

damage *noun*

damp

adjective

slightly wet or moist.

*A **damp** towel.*

■ comparisons **damp**er **damp**est

damp *noun*



dance

dances dancing danced *verb*

to move around to music.



dance *noun*

dandelion

dandelions *noun*

a common, wild plant with a thick root and a single yellow flower on each stem.

Fine hairs attached to the seeds mean that the seeds are easily blown away by the wind.



seeds

danger

dangers *noun*

a situation that might be harmful to you.



***Danger**—falling rocks.*

dangerous *adjective*

dare

dares daring dared *verb*

1 to challenge someone to do something frightening to show they are not afraid.
2 to be bold or foolish enough to do something frightening or dangerous.

dark

adjective

1 with little or no light.



*The street was **dark** away from the streetlights.*

dark *noun*

2 with a lot of black in it.

***Dark** blue.*

■ comparisons **darker** **darkest**

■ opposite **light**

dash

dashes dashing dashed *verb*

to run very quickly for a short distance.

*I **dashed** onto the platform, but the train had just left.*

data

noun

facts and figures about something.

■ say **day**-ta

database

databases *noun*

a large amount of information stored in a computer.

date

dates *noun*

1 the day, month, and year.

2 a sweet, sticky fruit with a pit in the middle.



daughter

daughters *noun*

a person's female child.

■ say daw-ter

dawdle

dawdles dawdling dawdled *verb*
to move or do things slowly.



Stop **dawdling**!

dawn

dawns *noun*

the early part of the day
when it starts to
become light.



■ opposite dusk

day

days *noun*

1 the part of the day when it
is light.

■ opposite night

2 a period of 24 hours,
starting and ending
at midnight.

dazed

dazed *adjective*

not able to
think clearly.

He has
a **dazed**
look in
his eyes.

■ say day-zd



dazzle

dazzles dazzling dazzled *verb*
to shine a bright light into
someone's eyes so that they
find it difficult to see.

dazzling *adjective*

dead

adjective

no longer living.



dead leaves

■ opposite alive

dead

noun

a time when everything is
still and quiet.

The **dead** of night.

deadly

adjective

able to kill.



A scorpion's sting is **deadly**.

deaf

adjective

not able to hear well or not
able to hear at all.

deafness *noun*

dear

adjective

1 loved very much.

A **dear** friend.

2 highly respected.

Dear Sir.

■ comparisons dearer dearest

debt

debts *noun*

money or a favor that you
owe to someone.

■ say det

decade

decades *noun*

a period of 10 years.

The **decade** of 1920 to 1929.

decay

decays decaying decayed *verb*
to rot away.

Your teeth will **decay** if you
don't take care of them.

decay *noun*

deceive

deceives deceiving deceived
verb

to trick a person into
thinking something is
true when it isn't.

deceit *noun*

decibel

decibels *noun*

a unit of measurement that
shows how loud a sound is.

■ say des-si-bell

decide

decides deciding decided *verb*
to make up your mind.



He couldn't **decide** what to eat.

decision *noun*

deciduous

adjective

losing leaves every year.



■ opposite evergreen

■ say de-sid-yoo-us

decimal

adjective

counting numbers and parts
of numbers in tens.

3.752

A **decimal** number.

decimal *noun*

deck

decks *noun*

one of the floors of a ship.



declare

declares declaring declared *verb*
to say something to everyone.

The judges **declared** the
winner at the end
of the competition.

decline

declines declining declined *verb*
to decrease or get worse.

His health **declined** steadily.

decline *noun*

decorate

decorates decorating decorated
verb

to make something look
better by painting it or by
adding extra things to it.



Decorating a room for
a party.

decoration *noun*

decrease

decrease

decreases decreasing decreased verb

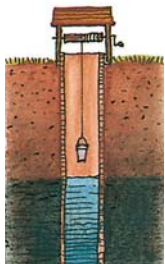
to become smaller.

*The number of whales in the world is **decreasing**.*

■ opposite **increase**

deep

adjective
going down a long way from the surface.



*A **deep** well.*

■ comparisons **deeper deepest**

deer

noun

a mammal with hooves that eats grass and leaves. A male deer is called a stag and has large, branching horns called antlers. A female deer is called a doe.



stag

defeat

defeats defeating defeated verb

to win a game or a battle against someone.

*She **defeated** her brother at chess.*

defend

defends defending defended verb

to protect or guard.

*Birds stay with their eggs to **defend** them from attackers.*

defense noun

define

defines defining defined verb

to describe accurately what something means.

definition noun

definite

adjective

certain and clear.

*Are you **definite** about that?*

definitely adverb

degree

degrees noun

1 a unit used to measure temperature and angles.

The symbol for a degree is °.

2 a certificate awarded by a college or university.

delay

delays delaying delayed verb

to take place later than expected.

*The airplane's departure was **delayed** for seven hours.*

delay noun

delete

deletes deleting deleted verb

to remove something.

Paris in the spring

*word **deleted***

deliberately

adverb

on purpose.

*He **deliberately** pushed me.*

deliberate adjective

delicate

adjective

easily broken or damaged.



***Delicate** butterfly wings.*

delicious

adjective

tasting very nice.

*The ice cream was **delicious**.*

delighted

adjective

very pleased.



*He was **delighted** with his birthday present.*

deliver

delivers delivering delivered verb

verb

to bring something to someone.



*They **delivered** the new sofa this morning.*

delivery noun

demand

demands demanding demanded verb

verb

to ask someone for something firmly, not expecting them to refuse.

*She **demanded** to know the truth.*

demand noun

demolish

demolishes demolishing demolished verb

verb

to destroy something.



*They started **demolishing** the house yesterday.*

demonstrate

demonstrates demonstrating demonstrated verb

1 to show someone how to do something.

*He **demonstrated** the new food mixer.*

2 to take part in a public rally or meeting to show that you feel very strongly about something.

*The marchers **demonstrated** against the new highway.*

demonstration noun

denim

noun

a type of strong, cotton cloth that is often dyed blue.



dense

adjective

thick.

*A **dense** fog.*

dent

dents noun

a hollow left in the surface of something after it has been hit or pressed.

*The car had a **dent** in its hood.*

dent verb

dentist

dentists noun

a person who examines and repairs your teeth.



depart

departs departing departed verb
to leave.



The boat **departs** for the island every hour.

departure noun

depend

depends depending depended verb

to need or rely on someone or something.

*I'm **depending** on you to be there on time.*

describe

describes describing described verb

to say or write what something or someone is like.

***Describe** your house to me.*

description noun

desert

deserts deserting deserted verb
to leave without permission, not planning to return.

*He **deserted** the army.*

■ say de-zert

desert

deserts noun

a large, dry, sandy or stony area of land, with few plants.

■ say dez-ert

**deserve**

deserves deserving deserved verb

to have earned some reward because of something you have done.

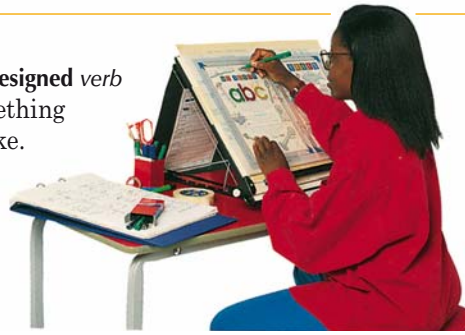
*He **deserved** a rest after working so hard.*

design

designs designing designed verb
to plan what something is going to look like.

Designing a book.

design noun

**desire**

desires noun
a strong wish.
desire verb

desk

desks noun
a table that you use for working on, often with drawers in it.

**destination**

destinations noun
the place someone or something is going to.



*The plane's **destination** is Australia.*

destroy

destroys destroying destroyed verb

to ruin something completely.

*The fire **destroyed** the hut.*

destruction noun

detail

details noun
a small part of something.
*The news report gave few **details** of the robbery.*
detailed adjective

detective

detectives noun
a person who investigates crimes.

detergent

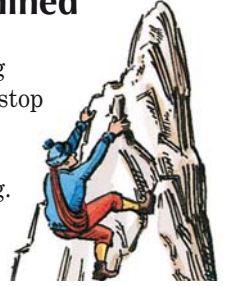
detergents noun
a soapy powder or liquid that is used for cleaning things such as clothes or dishes.

■ say de-ter-jent

bottle of **detergent**

**determined**

adjective
not letting anything stop you from doing something.



*He was **determined** to reach the top of the mountain.*

determination noun

develop

develops developing developed verb

to grow and become more complete.

*The bud **developed** into a beautiful flower.*

development noun

device

devices noun
a machine or tool invented for a special purpose.



*A corkscrew is a **device** for pulling corks out of bottles.*

dew

noun
small drops of water that form on cool surfaces outside during the night.



diagonal

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

diagonal

adjective
sloping at an angle from one edge to another.

diagonal stripes



diagram

diagrams noun
a drawing or plan that shows or explains something.



A **diagram** of the inside of a volcano.

dial

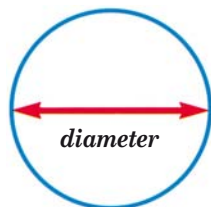
dials noun
the face of a measuring device that has numbers on it.



dial

diameter

diameters noun
the width of a circle, measured by a straight line.



diary

diaries noun
a book in which you write down your thoughts and daily events (see **time** on page 216).

dice

noun
cubes with a different number of dots, from one to six, on each side. Dice are used in indoor games. A single cube is called a die.



dictionary

dictionaries noun
a book that contains an alphabetical list of words with their meanings.

die

dies dying died verb
to stop living.
death noun

diet

diets noun
the food that you usually eat.



Fruit and vegetables are part of a healthy **diet**.

different

adjective
not like something else.



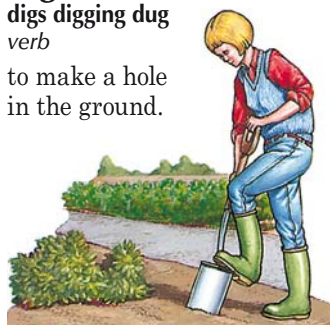
Two **different** shells.
■ opposite **same**
difference noun

difficult

adjective
hard to do.
It was difficult to cut the string with blunt scissors.
■ opposite **easy**

dig

digs digging dug verb
to make a hole in the ground.



digest

digests digesting digested verb
to break food down so that the body can use it.
■ say **die-jest**
digestion noun

digit

digits noun
1 a number from zero to nine, shown as a figure rather than written in words.
2 a finger or toe.



digital

adjective
1 showing number information in figures.
2 storing information using the digits zero and one.



digital camera

dilute

dilutes diluting diluted verb
to make thinner or weaker, often by adding water.
dilution noun



dim

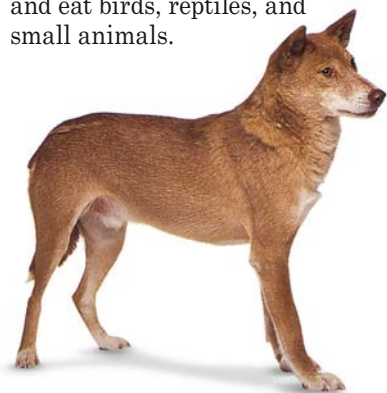
adjective
not bright.
A dim lightbulb.
■ comparisons **dimmer dimmest**

dinghy

dinghies noun
a small, open sailing boat (see **boat** on page 31).
■ say **ding-ee**

dingo

dingoes noun
a wild dog that lives in Australia. Dingoes hunt alone or in small packs and eat birds, reptiles, and small animals.



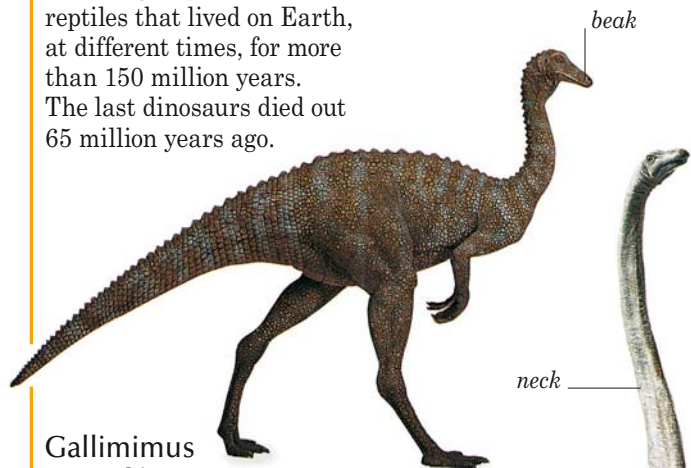
dinner

dinners noun
the main meal of the day.

dinosaur

dinosaurs *noun*

one of a group of land reptiles that lived on Earth, at different times, for more than 150 million years. The last dinosaurs died out 65 million years ago.



Gallimimus

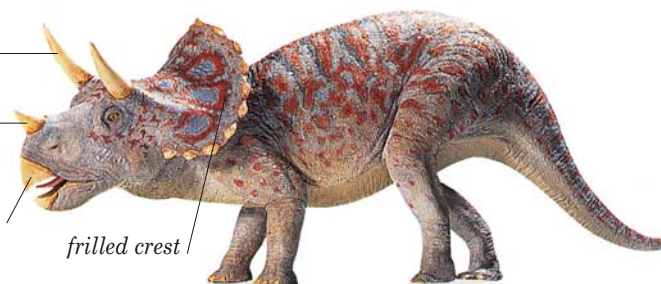
■ say gal-i-meem-us

beak

brow horn
nose horn

beak

frilled crest



Triceratops

■ say try-ser-a-tops



plates

tail spikes

Stegosaurus

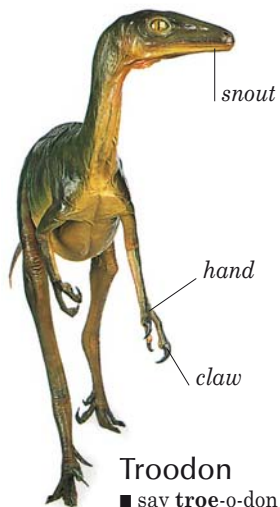
■ say steg-uh-sor-rus

neck



Barosaurus

■ say bar-oh-soh-rus



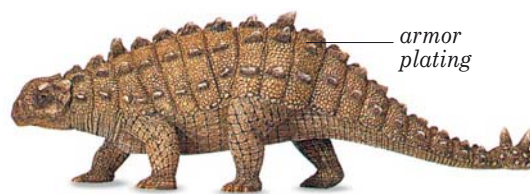
snout

hand

claw

Troodon

■ say troe-o-don



armor plating

Euoplocephalus

■ say yoo-oh-plo-sef-al-us



tail

claw

Deinonychus

■ say die-non-i-kus



Heterodontosaurus

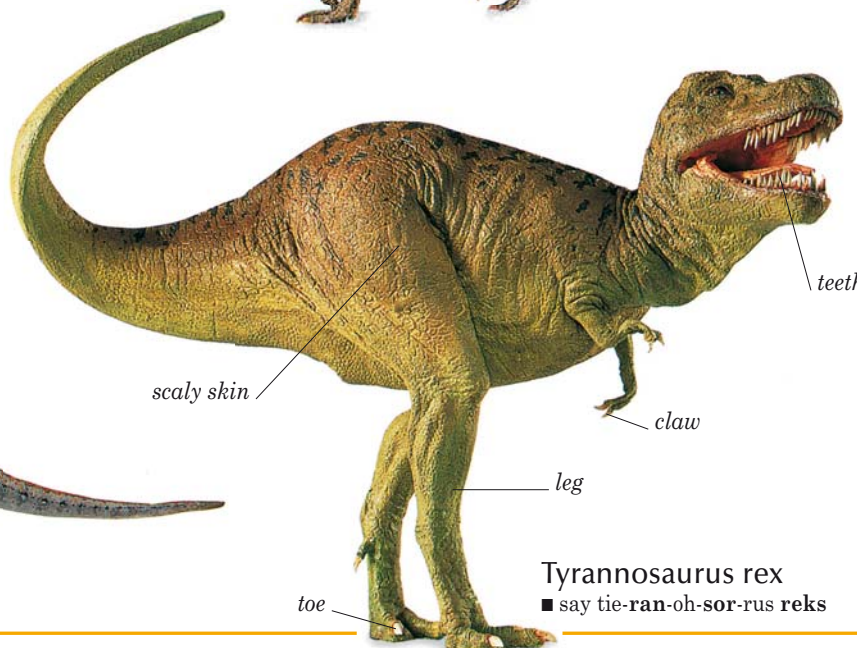
■ say het-er-oh-dont-oh-sor-rus

crest

padded toes

Corythosaurus

■ say koh-rith-oh-sor-rus



teeth

scaly skin

claw

leg

toe

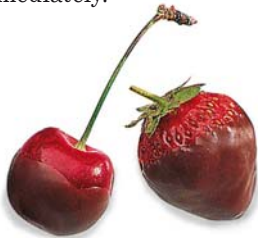
Tyrannosaurus rex

■ say tie-ran-oh-sor-rus reks

dip

dip

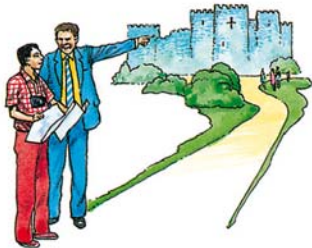
dips dipping dipped verb
1 to put something into a liquid or a soft substance and then take it out again immediately.



Fruit **dipped** in chocolate.
2 to slope downward.
The road **dips** slightly here.

direct

directs directing directed verb
1 to show or tell someone how to get to a particular place.



He **directed** the tourist to the castle.

direction noun

2 to be in charge of the making of a play or a movie.



Directing a movie.

direct

direct adjective
going the shortest way.
A **direct** route.

directory

directories noun
a book that contains information about people and organizations, usually listed in alphabetical order.
A telephone **directory**.

dirty

dirty adjective
not clean.



■ comparisons **dirtier dirtiest**
■ opposite **clean**

disabled

disabled adjective
not having a limb, or being without power or strength, especially of movement, in part of your body because of injury or disease.

disability noun

disagree

disagrees disagreeing disagreed verb

to think differently from someone about something.
We **always disagree**.

■ opposite **agree**
disagreement noun

disappear

disappears disappearing disappeared verb
to go out of sight.



The rabbit **disappeared** into its burrow.

■ opposite **appear**
disappearance noun

disappoint

disappoints disappointing disappointed verb

to make someone sad by not doing something they expected.
*I **disappointed** my friends by not going to the game with them.*
disappointed adjective

disaster

disasters noun
a terrible event that may cause damage and suffering.



*Floods are natural **disasters**.*

■ say di-zas-tur
disastrous adjective

disc

discs noun
an object for recording sound.
A compact **disc**.

discover

discovers discovering discovered verb
to find or find out.



The pirates **discovered** a chest of buried treasure on the island.

discuss

discusses discussing discussed verb
to talk about something with someone else.
We **discussed** where to go for our vacation.
discussion noun

disease

diseases noun
an illness.
*Measles is an infectious **disease**.*

disgraceful

disgraceful adjective
so bad that the person involved should be ashamed.
*Do this work again—it's **disgraceful**!*

disguise

disguises noun
an outfit that you wear to hide who you really are.



■ say dis-gize
disguise verb

disgusting

disgusting adjective
very unpleasant.
*There was a **disgusting** smell coming from the drains.*

dish

dishes noun
1 a plate or bowl that is used to hold food.



A **dish** for serving vegetables.

2 one part of a meal.



*The main **dish**.*

dishonest

adjective
telling lies or stealing.
■ opposite **honest**

disinfectant

disinfectants *noun*
a chemical that is used for killing germs.
disinfect *verb*

dislike

dislikes disliking disliked *verb*
to think someone or something is not very nice.



She **disliked** the smell of the perfume.

■ opposite **like**

disobey

disobeys disobeying disobeyed *verb*

to refuse to do something that someone tells you to do.
You **mustn't disobey** orders.

■ opposite **obey**
disobedient *adjective*

disperse

verb
to scatter widely.
The dandelion seeds were **dispersed** by the wind.
dispersal *noun*

display

displays displaying displayed *verb*
to put something in a place where people can look at it.

Displaying paintings.

disposable

adjective
for throwing away after use.

dissolve

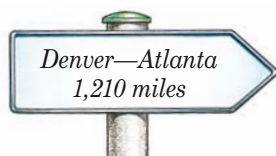
dissolves dissolving dissolved *verb*
to mix something with water or another liquid so it becomes part of the liquid.



A tablet **dissolving** in water.

distance

distances *noun*
the space measured between two places.



The signpost shows the **distance** between Denver and Atlanta.

distinguish

distinguishes distinguishing distinguished *verb*
to be able to tell the difference between things.
Can you **distinguish** between the twins?

■ say di-sting-gwish

distract

distracts distracting distracted *verb*
to take someone's attention away from what they are doing.
The noise outside **distracted** her from her work.



distribute

distributes distributing distributed *verb*
to give something out.



The teacher **distributed** the books to the children.

district

districts *noun*
an area in a town, city, county, or country, which is sometimes marked out for a particular purpose.
School district.

disturb

disturbs disturbing disturbed *verb*
to interrupt the peace and quiet of a place or person.



The noise of the drill **disturbed** her.
disturbance *noun*

ditch

ditches *noun*
a long channel that drains away water.



dive

dives diving dived *verb*
to jump headfirst into water.



diver

divers *noun*
a person who swims beneath the water, often taking an air supply to breathe with.



scuba diver

divide

divides dividing divided *verb*
1 to split something up into parts.



The cheese is **divided** into eight portions.

2 to separate a number into equal parts.

$$8 \div 2 = 4$$

Eight **divided** by two equals four.
division *noun*

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

divorce

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

divorce

divorces divorcing divorced *verb*

to end a marriage legally.

divorce *noun*

dock

docks *noun*

1 a place where ships load and unload cargo.

dock *verb*



2 the place in a courtroom where the person on trial stands or sits.

doctor

doctors *noun*

a person who is trained to treat sick or injured people.



dodge

dodges dodging dodged *verb*

to avoid being hit by something by moving out of the way very quickly.

*She **dodged** the ball coming toward her.*

dog

dogs *noun*

a mammal that is often kept as a pet. Dogs mainly eat meat and can be trained to perform certain tasks, such as herding sheep. Dogs are related to wolves and foxes (see **pet** on page 148).

doll

dolls *noun*

a toy that is made to look like a human being.



dolphin

dolphins *noun*

a fish-eating sea mammal. Dolphins breathe air, so they must swim to the surface often. They are friendly animals and are known for their intelligence. Dolphins are a type of small whale.



■ say doll-fin



collie **dog**

domino

dominoes *noun*

a small, flat piece of wood or plastic with dots marked on it. Dominoes are used in a table game, which is also called dominoes.



donation

donations *noun*

a gift, usually of money, that is made to a charity or another organization.

*He made a large **donation**.*

donkey

donkeys *noun*

a member of the horse family that has long ears and a soft, furry coat. Donkeys eat grass and in some countries are used for carrying people and goods.



door

doors *noun*

a piece of wood, glass, or metal that opens and shuts to provide a way into a room, cupboard, building, or vehicle.



dot

dots *noun*

a very small, round spot. *Ladybugs have **dots** on them.*

double

doubles *noun*

adjective
twice as much.



*A **double** six.*

■ say dub-ul

doubtful

doubtful *adjective*

not sure, or unlikely. *He was **doubtful** about his chances of winning.*

■ say dout-ful

doubt *verb*

dough

dough *noun*

a mixture of flour and either milk or water that is used to make bread or cakes.

■ say doh

doughnut

doughnuts *noun*

a sweet, round cake made from dough, which is fried in fat and covered in sugar.



■ say doh-nut

dove

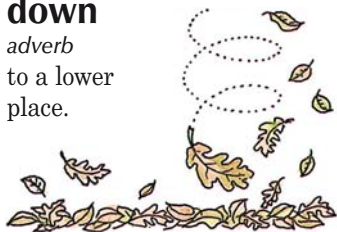
doves *noun*

a bird that is a member of the pigeon family. Doves are often used as a symbol of peace.



down

adverb
to a lower place.



The leaves floated **down**.

■ opposite **up**

downcast

adjective
sad and upset.
He looked **downcast**.

**downhill**

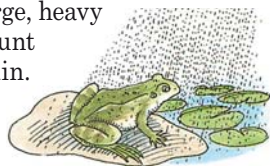
adjective
sloping down.



downhill skiing

downpour

downpours noun
a large, heavy amount of rain.

**downstairs**

adverb
to a lower floor.

He ran **downstairs** to answer the phone.

**downstairs**

adjective
on a lower floor than the one you are on.



A noisy **downstairs** party.

doze

dozes dozing dozed verb
to sleep lightly for a short time.
She **dozed** in the chair.

dozen

dozens noun
12 of something.



A **dozen** candles.

drag

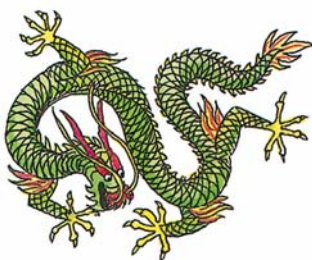
drags dragging dragged verb
to pull something along the ground.



He **dragged** his schoolbag behind him.

dragon

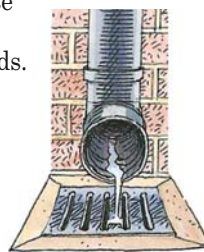
dragons noun
a fierce, imaginary animal in myths and fairy tales, that breathes fire and has a large, scaly body and wings.

**dragonfly**

dragonflies noun
a long, thin insect with two pairs of wings, often found near ponds and rivers. Dragonflies feed on small flying insects, which they catch with their legs while flying.

**drain**

drains noun
a pipe or channel that takes away waste water and other liquids.

**drain**

drains draining drained verb
to flow away slowly.
The water **drained** away.

drama

dramas noun
1 a play.
My favorite **drama** is Shakespeare's Hamlet.
2 plays, or the theater in general.
3 an exciting or frightening event.
There was **drama** today when the school caught fire.

draw

draws drawing drew drawn verb
1 to make a picture or diagram with a pencil or crayon.



2 to move together by pulling.
He **drew** the curtains.

drawer

drawers noun
a box-shaped container that slides in and out of a piece of furniture. Drawers are used to store things in.



A chest of **drawers**.

dream

dreams dreaming dreamed or dreamt verb
1 to have thoughts and pictures going through your mind while you are asleep.



I **dreamed** that I was petting a lion.

2 to hope for something.
She **dreamed** of traveling around the world.

dream noun

drench

drenches drenching drenched verb
to soak with water.
The rain **drenched** her.

dress

dressess dressing dressed verb
to put on clothes.

My little sister can **dress** herself.
■ opposite **undress**



dress

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

dress

dresses *noun*

a piece of clothing that has a top joined to a skirt.



dried

from the verb to dry

He **dried** his clothes outside.

dried

adjective

with water or liquid removed.

dried

apricots



drift

drifts drifting drifted *verb*

1 to move slowly without control.

The boat **drifted** along.

2 to be carried along by water or air.

drift

drifts *noun*

a pile of snow or sand made by the wind.

drill

drills drilling drilled *verb*

to bore a hole in something using a drill.



electric
drill

drill

drills *noun*

1 a tool used to make holes.

2 a practice.

Fire **drill**.

drink

drinks drinking drank drunk *verb*

to swallow liquid.



drink *noun*

drip

drips dripping dripped *verb*

to fall slowly, drop by drop.

Water **dripped** from the faucet.



drip *noun*

dripping *adjective*

drive

drives driving drove driven *verb*

to make a car, train, or other vehicle move.

They **drove** along the country roads.

drive *noun*

drizzle

drizzles drizzling drizzled *verb*

to rain in small, fine drops, like a mist.

drizzle *noun*

droop

droops drooping drooped *verb*

to hang down in a weak or tired way.



The tulip **drooped** over the edge of the vase.

■ rhymes with **hoop**

drop

drops *noun*

1 a small amount of liquid.



— a **drop** of ink

2 a long way down.

It was a big **drop** from the bridge to the river below.

drop

drops dropping dropped *verb*

to let something fall.



He **dropped** his sunglasses.

drought

droughts *noun*

a period of time when there is not enough rain.



Many crops died during the **drought**.

■ say **drout**

drown

drowns drowning drowned *verb*

to die because you have gone under water and have not been able to breathe.

drowsy

adjective

sleepy.

drug

drugs *noun*

1 a chemical substance used as a medicine to treat people who are sick or in pain.

2 an illegal chemical substance that people take to make them feel different. Taking this kind of drug is dangerous and can kill you.

drum

drums *noun*

a hollow musical instrument that has a covering across one or both ends. You hit the drum with sticks, special wire brushes, or your hands to make different sounds.



Japanese **drum**

drum

drums **drumming** **drummed** *verb*
to tap or hit continuously,
or to play a drum.



duet

duets *noun*
a piece of music to be played
or sung by two people.



A violin **duet**.

■ say doo-et

dug

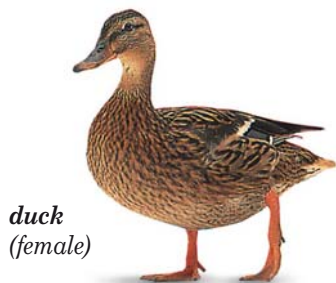
from the verb to dig
Our dog **dug** up part of
the lawn this morning.

dry

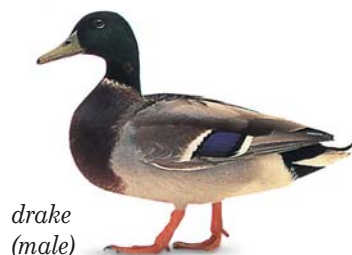
adjective
not wet.
*They came in from the rain
and changed into **dry** clothes.*
■ comparisons **drier** **driest**
■ opposite **wet**
dry *verb*

duck

ducks *noun*
a water bird that has oily,
waterproof feathers and
webbed feet for swimming.
Ducks eat fish, small plants,
and small animals. Male
ducks are called drakes.



duck
(female)



drake
(male)

dummy

dummies *noun*
a model of a
person's body,
often used for
making or
displaying
clothes.



dressmaker's
dummy

dump

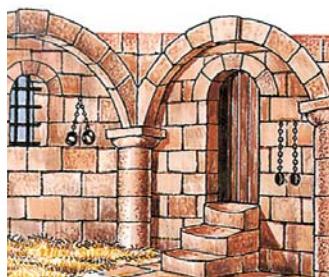
dumps **dumping** **dumped** *verb*
to put something down
or throw it away carelessly.
*They **dumped** the shopping
bags on the floor.*

dune

dunes *noun*
a hill of sand, near the sea
or in a desert, that is made
by the wind.

dungeon

dungeons *noun*
an underground prison cell
in an old building, such as
a castle.



■ say dun-jun

duplicate

duplicates *noun*
an exact copy.



One key is
a **duplicate**
of the other.
■ say doo-pli-kat

during

preposition
1 at some time in.
*I fell asleep **during** the movie.*
2 the whole time of.
***During** the summer months
we go swimming in the sea.*

dusk

noun
the time of evening when
it starts to get dark.
■ opposite **dawn**

dust

noun
tiny pieces of dirt that
float in the air and settle
on surfaces.
dusty *adjective*

duty

duties *noun*
things that you ought to do
or feel you should do.
*It is the guard's **duty** to make
sure the doors are locked.*

dvd

noun
a plastic disc that contains
digital recordings of sounds
and images (see **abbreviations**
on page 246).

dye

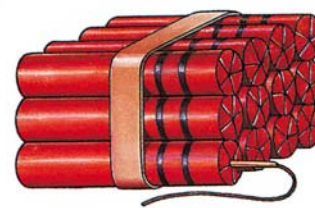
dyes **dyeing** **dyed** *verb*
to change the color of
something by soaking
it in colored liquids.



*These balls of yarn have been
died different colors.*
dye *noun*

dynamite

noun
a powerful substance that
explodes when it is burned.



dynasty

dynasties *noun*
a series of rulers from
the same family.
■ say die-nu-stee

dyslexia

noun
a learning difficulty that
can affect reading, writing,
or spelling.
■ say dis-**lek**-see-uh
dyslexic *adjective*

E e

each

adjective

every single one.

They **each** received a present.

eager

adjective

wanting to do or have something very much.

The riders were **eager** to start the race.

eagerly adverb

eagle

noun

a large bird of prey that lives in mountainous areas. Eagles eat animals and birds and have good eyesight for spotting prey a long way off.



golden eagle

early

adverb

1 near the beginning.

The hero dies **early** in the film.

2 before the expected time.

He arrived **early** for the show.

■ comparisons **earlier earliest**

■ opposite **late**

earn

earns earning earned verb

to get something because you have worked for it or deserve it.

They **earned** some extra money by washing cars.

earring

earrings noun

a piece of jewelry that can be attached to, or hung from, the earlobe (see **jewelry** on page 112).



ear

ears noun

1 the part of your body that you hear with.



ear

earlobe

2 the top of a cereal stalk where the seeds grow.



ear of wheat

Earth

noun

the planet that we live on.



earth

noun

1 the surface of the land or ground.

2 the material that plants grow in.

earthquake

earthquakes noun

a violent shaking of the ground, because of movement from within the Earth.

east

noun

one of the four main compass directions. East is the direction in which the Sun rises.



eastern adjective

easy

adjective

simple, not difficult.

■ comparisons **easier easiest**

■ opposite **difficult**

eat

eats eating ate eaten verb

to take in food through your mouth.



echo

echoes noun

a sound that bounces off a surface and repeats itself.

My voice **echoed** in the cave.

■ say **eh-ko**

echo verb

eclipse

eclipses noun

1 a time when the Moon comes between the Earth and the Sun, hiding the Sun's light.



An **eclipse** of the Sun.

2 a time when the Earth comes between the Sun and the Moon, hiding the Moon's light.

An **eclipse** of the Moon.

ecology

noun

the study of how animals, plants, and humans affect one another and how they live in their environment.

■ say ee-kol-o-jee

edge

edges noun

the border of something.



Flowers lined the path's **edge**.

edible

adjective

safe to eat.

Are these mushrooms **edible**?

educate**educates educating educated**
verb

to teach someone so that they learn and understand things.

education noun**eel****eels** noun

a long, thin fish that lives in rivers and the sea. Eels eat tiny sea plants, animals called plankton and other fish.



ribbon eel

effect**effects** noun

the result of an action or event on another person or thing.

*Seeing the crash on the news had a bad effect on me.***effort****efforts** noun

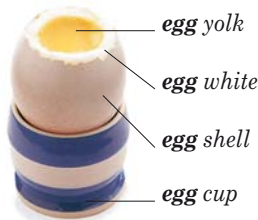
the energy you need to do something.

*It took a lot of effort to lift the suitcase.***egg****eggs** noun

a rounded object that is produced by some female animals. Eggs contain the animal's babies, which hatch when developed.



crow's egg



hen's egg

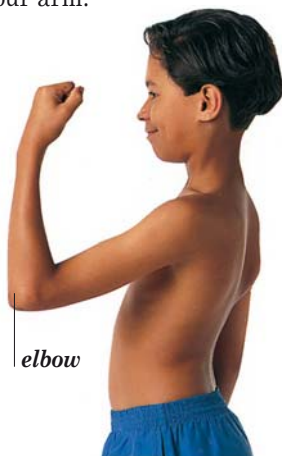
elastic

noun

a stretchy fabric.

*Suspenders made of elastic.***elbow****elbows** noun

the joint in the middle of your arm.



elbow

elderly

adjective

rather old.

elect**elects electing elected** verb

to choose someone to do something by voting for them.

election**elections** nounthe time when people vote for someone to be in charge.
*Council elections.***electric**adjective
powered by electricity.**electric razor****electricity**

noun

a form of energy that is used for heating and lighting, and for making machines work. Electricity is produced at a power plant and carried along cables and wires.

electrical adjective**elephant****elephants** noun

a huge mammal that lives in southern Asia and Africa. Elephants eat tree bark, roots, leaves, grass, and other plants. They use their trunks like hands to pick up or hold their food.



African elephant

elevator**elevators** noun

a large box or cage that carries people and goods between the floors of a building.

email

noun

messages sent electronically between computers.

embarrass**embarrasses embarrassing****embarrassed** verb

to make someone feel ashamed or shy.

*It embarrasses me to have to speak in public.***embarrassment** noun**emergency****emergencies** noun

a sudden, dangerous event.

*Helicopters are sometimes used in emergencies.*

■ say ee-mer-jen-see

emigrate**emigrates emigrating emigrated** verb

to leave your own country to go to live in another.

*My best friend is emigrating from Ireland to New Zealand.***emigration** noun**emotion****emotions** nouna strong feeling people have.
*Love and hate are emotions.***employ****employs employing employed** verb

to pay somebody to do a job.

*I employ six people in my office.***empty**

adjective

having nothing inside.



an empty bottle

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

emu

emu

emus *noun*

a large bird that lives on the hot, grassy plains of Australia and eats leaves and insects. Emus can't fly, but they can run very fast.



■ say ee-mew

encourage

encourages encouraging encouraged *verb*

to help someone feel happy and confident about what they are doing.



Cheerleaders **encourage** their team.

■ say en-kur-rij

encyclopedia

encyclopedias *noun*

a book, or set of books, that contains facts and information about lots of different things.

■ say en-sy-kluh-pee-dee-uh

end

ends ending ended *verb*
to finish.

The movie **ends** at 8:30 p.m.

end

ends *noun*

the place where something finishes.

There is an eraser at the **end** of this pencil.



endangered

adjective

in danger of becoming extinct.



Turtles are **endangered** animals.

enemy

enemies *noun*

1 a person who dislikes you or would like to harm you.

2 the opposing country or army during a time of war.

energy

noun

1 the strength that makes a person or animal lively and active.



She has lots of **energy**.
energetic *adjective*

2 the power or ability of something to make something else work.



Wind **energy**.

engine

engines *noun*

a machine that uses fuel to make something move.



jet **engine**

engineer

engineers *noun*

a person who is trained to design, build, or repair things such as machines, buildings, or bridges.

enjoy

enjoys enjoying enjoyed *verb*
to like doing something.

enormous

adjective

very large.



An **enormous** umbrella.

enough

adjective

as much as is needed.

Do you have **enough** money?

enough *noun*

enter

enters entering entered *verb*

1 to go into a place.



The train **entered** the tunnel.

entrance *noun*

2 to take part in.

She **entered** the diving competition with her friends.

3 to write down, as for keeping a record.

I **entered** my name at the top of the test paper.

entertain

entertains entertaining entertained *verb*

to amuse people or provide a pleasant way to pass the time.



The juggler **entertained** the children all afternoon.

entertainment *noun*

enthusiastic

adjective

very interested in something.

He is an **enthusiastic** skier.

■ say en-thoo-zee-as-tik

enthusiasm *noun*

entire

adjective

whole.

The **entire** class came to my party.

entirely *adverb*

envelope

envelopes *noun*

a folded paper container for letters or cards.



environment

environments *noun*

the surroundings in which a person, plant, or animal lives.

*A city **environment** is often noisy and polluted.*

environmental *adjective*

■ say en-vy-run-munt

envy

envies envying envied *verb*

to feel unhappy because you want something that someone else has.

*I **envy** her long vacations.*

envious *adjective*

envy *noun*

episode

episodes *noun*

one part of a television or radio series.

*The first **episode** was so exciting that he couldn't wait to see the next one.*

equal

adjective
the same.



Equal in length.

■ say ee-kwul

equator

noun

an imaginary line around the middle of the Earth that divides the northern half of the world from the southern half. The equator is drawn onto maps and globes.

■ say ee-kway-tor



equator

equipment

noun

the things that you need for a job or an activity.



snorkeling
equipment

error

errors *noun*

a mistake.

*She failed the exam because her paper was full of **errors**.*

erupt

erupts erupting erupted *verb*
to explode suddenly.



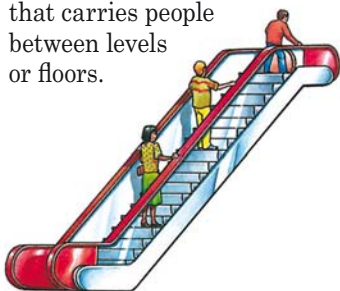
*The volcano **erupted**.*

eruption *noun*

escalator

escalators *noun*

a moving staircase that carries people between levels or floors.



escape

escapes escaping escaped *verb*

to run away from somewhere or someone.



*The tiger **escaped** from his cage.*

establish

establishes establishing established *verb*

to organize or set up.

*They **established** a camp at the foot of the mountain.*

estimate

estimates estimating estimated *verb*

to make a thoughtful guess about something.

*We **estimated** that the journey would take 10 hours.*

estimate *noun*

evaporate

evaporates evaporating evaporated *verb*

to dry up gradually, changing from a liquid to a gas.

*The water slowly **evaporated**.*

evaporation *noun*

even

adjective

1 flat or level.



*Smooth and **even** grass.*

■ opposite **uneven**

2 a number that can be divided by two.

■ opposite **odd**

evening

evenings *noun*

the end of the day when the Sun sets and it grows dark.

event

events *noun*

something important that happens or is organized.



*The fireworks display is a big **event** each year.*

eventually

adverb

in the end or finally.

*After arguing for hours we **eventually** reached an agreement.*

evergreen

adjective

having green leaves all year round.

pine tree



pine branch

■ opposite **deciduous**

every

adjective

all, or each one.

◆ *We couldn't use the parking lot since **every** space was full.*

◆ ***Everybody** in the family loves chocolate.*

◆ *We can't take **everyone** with us, since there are only four places on the bus.*

◆ ***Everything** in the house was stolen.*

◆ *There were daffodils **everywhere** they looked.*

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

evidence

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

evidence

noun

proof that something has happened.



The detectives looked for **evidence** at the scene of the crime.

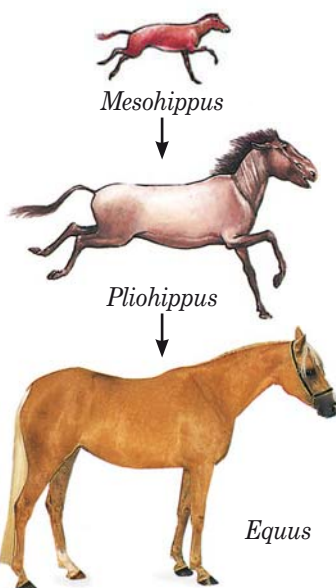
evil

adjective
wicked.

evolution

noun

the gradual development of animals and plants over a very long time.



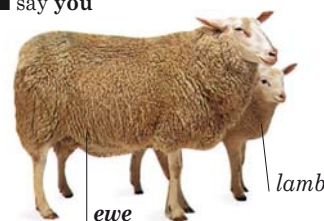
Evolution of the horse.

ewe

ewes noun

a female sheep.

■ say you



exact

adjective

accurate or precise.



She pointed to the **exact** place on the map.

■ say egg-zact

■ opposite **approximate**

exactly *adverb*

exaggerate

exaggerates exaggerating

exaggerated verb

to say more about something than is really true.



She **exaggerated** the size of her catch.

■ say ig-za-jur-rate

exaggeration *noun*

exam

exams noun

an important test to find out how much you know about something. Exam is short for examination.

examine

examines examining examined

verb

to look at an object closely and carefully.



■ say ig-zam-in

example

examples noun

something that is typical of other similar things, or how a rule works.

Can you think of an **example** of a plant that has blue flowers?

excellent

adjective

extremely good.

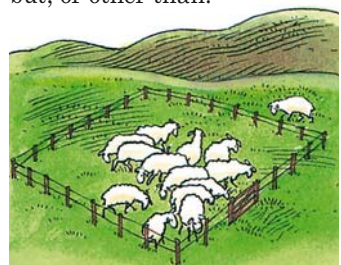


The **excellent** flower arrangement won first prize.

except

preposition

but, or other than.



All the sheep were in the pen **except** one.

exception *noun*

exciting

adjective

thrilling.



The roller coaster ride was very **exciting**.

excitement *noun*

excuse

excuses noun

a reason you give for not doing what you should have done.



He had a good **excuse** for not washing the dishes.

■ say ik-skyoos

excuse *verb*

exercise

exercises noun

1 activities or training that you do to become fit or to stay fit.



exercise *verb*

2 a piece of work that practices a skill or a person's knowledge of something.

A **math exercise**.

exhausted

adjective

extremely tired.



She was **exhausted** after her long run.

exhaustion *noun*

exhibition

exhibitions *noun*

an event where things are displayed for people to look at.



A sculpture **exhibition**.

■ say ek-suh-bish-un

exist

exists existing existed *verb*
to be or to live.

*Dinosaurs **existed** long before humans.*

existence *noun*

exit

exits *noun*

a way out of a building.



We left by the nearest fire **exit**.

expand

expands expanding expanded *verb*

to become larger.

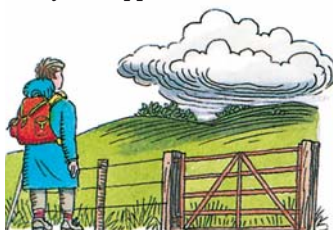
*Water **expands** as it freezes.*

■ opposite **contract**

expansion *noun*

expect

expects expecting expected *verb*
to think that something is likely to happen.



He was **expecting** rain.

expedition

expeditions *noun*

an adventurous journey that is made for a special reason, such as exploring.



They set off on an **expedition** to cross the Antarctic.

expensive

adjective

costing a lot of money.

■ opposite **cheap**



experience

experiences *noun*

1 an important event that you remember for a long time.

*Traveling around the world was a fantastic **experience**.*

experience *verb*

2 knowledge or skill gained from doing something for a long time.

*She has years of **experience**.*

■ say ik-speer-ree-ens

experienced *adjective*

experiment

experiments *noun*

a test that you do in order to find out something.



expert

experts *noun*

a person who knows a lot about a subject.

*The space shuttle was designed by **experts**.*

expert *adjective*

explain

explains explaining explained *verb*

to help someone to understand something.

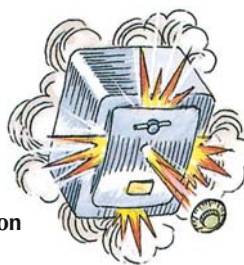
*Our teacher **explained** how rainbows occur.*

explanation *noun*

explode

explodes exploding exploded *verb*

to burst apart suddenly, often into many pieces.



explosion *noun*

explore

explores exploring explored *verb*
to look around somewhere carefully for the first time.

*After we arrived on the island, we set off to **explore**.*

exploration *noun*

extinct

adjective

no longer existing.



The dodo is an **extinct** bird.

extra

adjective

more than is usual.



An **extra** scoop of ice cream.

extra *adverb*

extraordinary

adjective

very unusual.

*What an **extraordinary** car. It must be 30 feet long!*

extreme

adjective

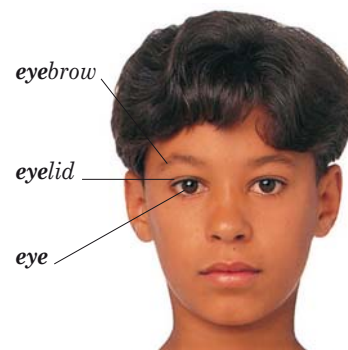
very great, or much more than usual.

*He was in **extreme** danger.*

eye

eyes *noun*

the part of the body that you see with.



a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

Ff

fable

fables *noun*

a story, often with animal characters, that tries to teach us in an amusing way.

fabric

fabrics *noun*
cloth.

façade

façades *noun*
the front of a building.



■ say fa-sod

face

faces *noun*

the front of your head, where your nose, eyes, and mouth are.



fact

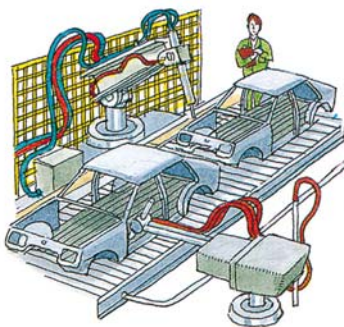
facts *noun*

a piece of information that is known to be true.

factory

factories *noun*

a building where people make things using machines.



fade

fades fading faded *verb*
1 to lose color or strength.



*The photograph was old and had **faded**.*

2 to disappear slowly.

*The music **faded** away.*

fail

fails failing failed *verb*
to be unsuccessful at doing something.

*He **failed** his driving test.*

failure *noun*

faint

adjective

not very strong.

*She heard a **faint** noise coming from the cupboard.*

faint

faints fainting fainted *verb*
to become unconscious for a short time.



*He **fainted** in the heat.*

faint *noun*

fair

adjective

1 light in color.



Fair hair.

■ opposite **dark**

2 done in a way that is right and honest.

*Everyone gets a **fair** share.*

■ opposite **unfair**

3 dry and sunny.

Fair weather.

■ comparisons **fairer fairest**

fair

fairs *noun*

an outdoor event with stalls, competitions, games, and other entertainments.



fairy

fairies *noun*

a small, imaginary creature from stories. Fairies often have magical powers.



faith

noun

a strong feeling of trust in someone or something.

*I have **faith** in my doctor.*

faithful

adjective

trustworthy or reliable.

*A **faithful** friend.*

fake

adjective

imitation, not real.



fake jewels

fake *noun*

falcon

falcons *noun*

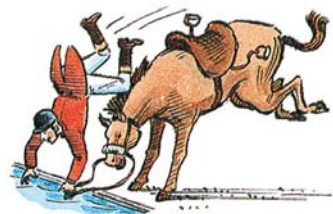
a bird with a sharp beak and claws that is related to the eagle. Falcons are good hunters and can fly very fast. They eat birds, reptiles, and small mammals.



■ say fal-kun

fall

falls falling fell fallen *verb*
to drop from a higher place to a lower place.



*She was thrown from the horse and **fell** into the water.*

fall *noun*

fall

falls *noun*
another name for autumn.

false

adjective
not real or true.
*He wore a **false** beard.*

**familiar**

adjective
well-known to you.
*I saw a **familiar** face in the crowd.*
■ opposite **unfamiliar**

family

families *noun*
1 a group of people who are closely related to each other.
*I come from a large **family** of five brothers and sisters.*
2 a group of animals or plants that are related to each other.



*These butterflies belong to the same **family**.*

famine

famines *noun*
a time when there is not enough to eat, usually because of a drought or a war.

famous

adjective
well-known to many people.



*A **famous** movie star.*

fan

fans *noun*
1 a device that moves air around to make you feel cooler.



electric fan

2 a person who is very interested and enthusiastic about something.



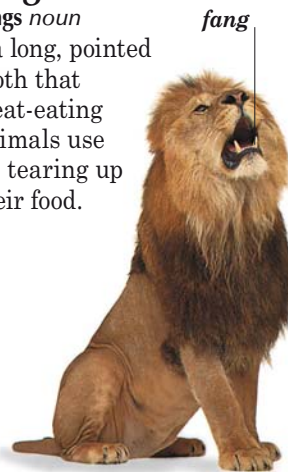
*They played to their **fans**.*

fanatic

fanatics *noun*
someone who believes in something so strongly that it controls their life.
*A football **fanatic**.*

fang

fangs *noun*
1 a long, pointed tooth that meat-eating animals use for tearing up their food.



2 a snake's long, sharp tooth that has poison in it.

fantastic

adjective
1 difficult to believe.
*A **fantastic** tale about giants.*
2 very pleasing or wonderful.
*We had a **fantastic** vacation.*

fantasy

fantasies *noun*
something that is imaginary and not real.

far

adverb
1 to or from a long way away.
*Have you come **far**?*
2 how distant something is.



*She walked along a path **far** from the city.*

■ comparisons **farther farthest**
■ opposite **near**

fare

fares *noun*
the money that you must pay to travel on a bus, train, or airplane.
*What is the **fare** to Glasgow?*

farm

farms *noun*
a place where crops are grown or animals are reared for food.



*sheep **farm***
farm *verb*

fascinate

fascinates fascinating fascinated *verb*

to interest someone so much that they think of nothing else.
*Dinosaurs **fascinate** me.*
■ say **fas-uh-nate**
fascination *noun*

fashion

fashions *noun*
a way of dressing that people like and want to copy at a particular time.

*Long, straight dresses were the **fashion** in the 1920s.*
fashionable *adjective*

**fast**

adjective
at great speed.
■ comparisons **faster fastest**
■ opposite **slow**
fast *adverb*

fast

adverb
firmly held.



*Stuck **fast** in the mud.*

fast

fast

fasts fasting fasted *verb*
to go without food for
a special reason.
*Muslims fast during
the festival of Ramadan.*
fast *noun*

fasten

fastens fastening fastened *verb*
to join something together so
that it holds.



Fastening her collar.

fat

fats *noun*
1 the oily substance that
is stored under the skin
and in the cells of animals
and people.
2 an oily, solid substance that
is used in cooking. Lard, oil,
butter, and margarine are
all fats.



margarine

fat

fat *adjective*
having a lot of fat or flesh.



■ comparisons **fatter fattest**

fatal

fatal *adjective*
resulting in death.
Fatal *injuries.*
■ say fay-tuhl
fatally *adverb*

father

fathers *noun*
a male
parent.



fault

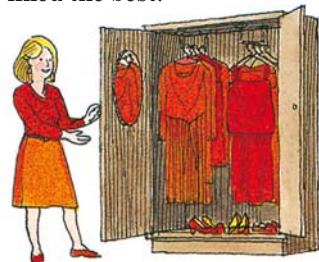
faults *noun*
1 something that is wrong.
A fault in the computer.
2 a mistake that someone
has made.
It was my fault we were late.
3 a split in the Earth's crust.
*The San Andreas Fault is
in California.*
■ say fall-t

favor

favors *noun*
a kind and helpful action.
Will you do me a favor?

favorite

favorite *adjective*
liked the best.



Red is her favorite color.
favorite *noun*

fawn

fawns *noun*
a young deer.



fax

faxes *noun*
a picture or message, that
is recorded electronically on
a fax machine. A fax is sent
by telephone lines to another
fax machine, where it is
printed out.
fax *verb*

fear

fears *noun*
the feeling of being afraid.
He had a fear of spiders.
fear *verb*

feather

feathers *noun*
part of the soft,
light covering
that a bird
has on its
body (see
bird on
page 28).



fee

fees *noun*
money that you pay to
a person or organization
for a service.

feed

feeds feeding
fed *verb*
1 to give
someone or
something food.



feel

feels feeling felt *verb*
1 to experience an emotion.
I feel happy today.
2 to experience
something
through
touch.



feeling
noun

fell

from the verb to fall
I fell off my bike last week.

female

female *adjective*
belonging to the sex that can
give birth to babies, or
produce eggs or seeds.
■ opposite **male**
female *noun*

feminine

feminine *adjective*
of or like women or girls.
■ say fem-in-nin
■ opposite **masculine**

fence

fences *noun*
a barrier that separates one
piece of land from another.



2 to eat food.



*Caterpillars
feed on leaves.*

fern**ferns** *noun*

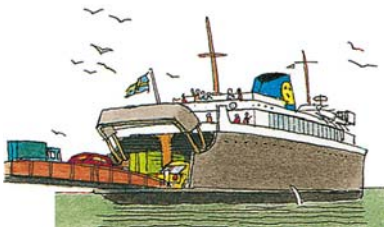
a type of plant that has feathery leaves and doesn't produce flowers (see **plant** on page 151).

**ferocious****adjective**

fierce, dangerous, and cruel.
ferociously *adverb*

ferry**ferries** *noun*

a boat or ship that regularly sails a short distance between two places, carrying vehicles, passengers, or cargo.

**fertile****adjective**

where something grows well.
Fertile *farmland.*

festival**festivals** *noun*

a celebration or special event, often with music, dancing, and plays.



A dance **festival**.

fetch

fetches fetching fetched *verb*
to go and get something and bring it back.



The dog **fetches** the stick.

fever**fevers** *noun*

an illness when your body temperature is very high and your pulse is fast.

few**adjective**

not many, or a small number of something.



There are a **few** pencils in the jar.

■ opposite **many**

fiancé / fiancée**fiancés / fiancées** *noun*

someone who is engaged to be married.

■ say fee-**on**-say

■ a **fiancé** is a man and a **fiancée** is a woman

fiber**fibers** *noun*

a fine thread of something.



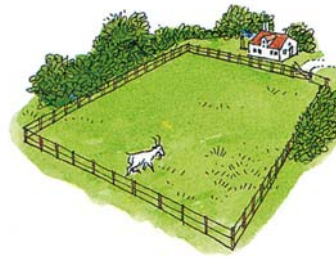
rope **fiber**

fiction**noun**

a story or poem that has been made up and is not about real events.
*I read a lot of crime **fiction**.*
■ opposite **nonfiction**

field**fields** *noun*

an area of land where grass grows, crops are grown, or animals graze.

**fierce****adjective**

violent or dangerous.



A **fierce** dog.

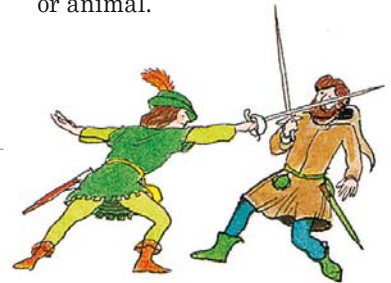
■ comparisons **fiercer fiercest**
fiercely *adverb*

fig**figs** *noun*

a small, soft fruit with a tough skin and sweet flesh, which is full of tiny seeds. Figs can be eaten fresh or dried.

**fight****fights fighting fought** *verb*

to struggle against a person or animal.



Fighting with swords.
fight *noun*

figure**figures** *noun*

1 a symbol that represents a written number.



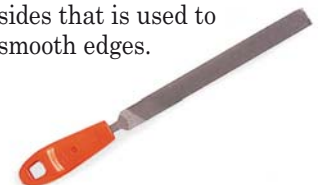
2 the shape of the human body.
*He saw a shadowy **figure** walking through the mist.*
■ say fig-yuhr

file**files** *noun*

1 a folder for keeping paper and other pieces of information together.



2 a metal tool with rough sides that is used to smooth edges.



3 a line of people, animals, or vehicles.



The ducklings walked in single **file**.

fill

fill

fills filling filled verb
to put as much of something into a container as it can hold.



film

films filming filmed verb
to use a movie or video camera to take moving pictures of something.



film

films noun
1 a series of moving pictures shown on a screen.
We went to see a film at the movie theater.
2 a long, thin piece of special plastic that is used in cameras for taking photographs.



3 a thin layer of something.
A film of oil.

filter

filters noun
a device that only allows some things, such as water or air, to pass through it.



fin

fins noun
1 the part of a fish that sticks out from its body and helps it to swim and keep its balance (see **fish** on page 79).
2 a device that helps vehicles keep steady while going fast (see **universe** on page 229).



Bluebird racing car

final

adjective
last in a series.
This is the final call for the flight to Paris.
finally adverb

find

finds finding found verb
to discover something.



He found the key under the mat.

fine

fines noun
money you have to pay as a punishment.
A parking fine.

fine

adjective
1 all right.
I feel fine.
2 dry and sunny.
Fine weather.
3 very thin or delicate.
The pen has a fine tip.

4 having many small parts.
Fine sand.

5 very good.
Fine food.

■ comparisons **finer finest**



finger

fingers noun
one of the separate parts at the end of your hand.



fingerprint

fingerprints noun
the mark that your finger or thumb makes when it touches something.



finish

finishes finishing finished verb
to come to the end of something.



She finished the race ahead of him.

fire

fires noun
the heat, light, and flames of something burning.



fire alarm

fire alarms noun
a bell that rings to warn people of a fire.

fire engine

fire engines noun
the vehicle that firefighters travel in to get to a fire.

fire extinguisher

fire extinguishers noun
a device filled with water, powder, or chemicals that is used for putting out fires.



firefighter

firefighters noun
someone whose job is to put out fires and rescue people in danger.



firework

fireworks noun
a device that burns or explodes when lit, creating a colorful display.

firm

adjective
1 solid.
A firm mattress.
2 fixed so it cannot move.
3 determined and definite.
A firm decision.
firmly adverb

fish**fish** or **fishes** *noun*

a cold-blooded animal that lives in the water, breathes through gills, and is usually covered in scales. Most fish have streamlined shapes. Fish eat other water animals and plants (see **skeleton** on page 188).

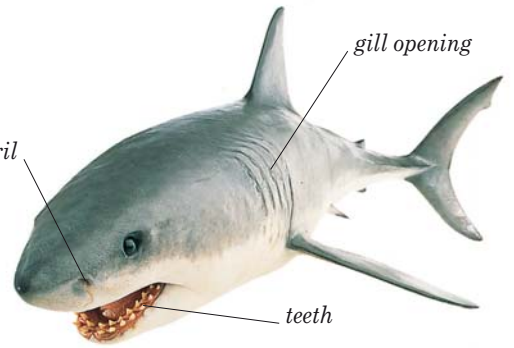


barbel

clown loach



freshwater angelfish

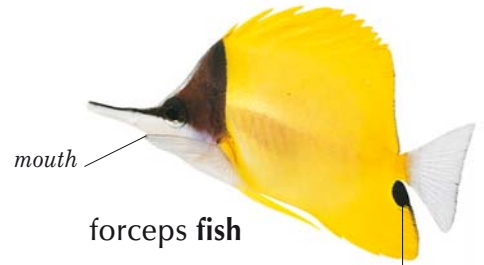


nostril

gill opening

teeth

great white shark



mouth

forceps fish

false eyespot

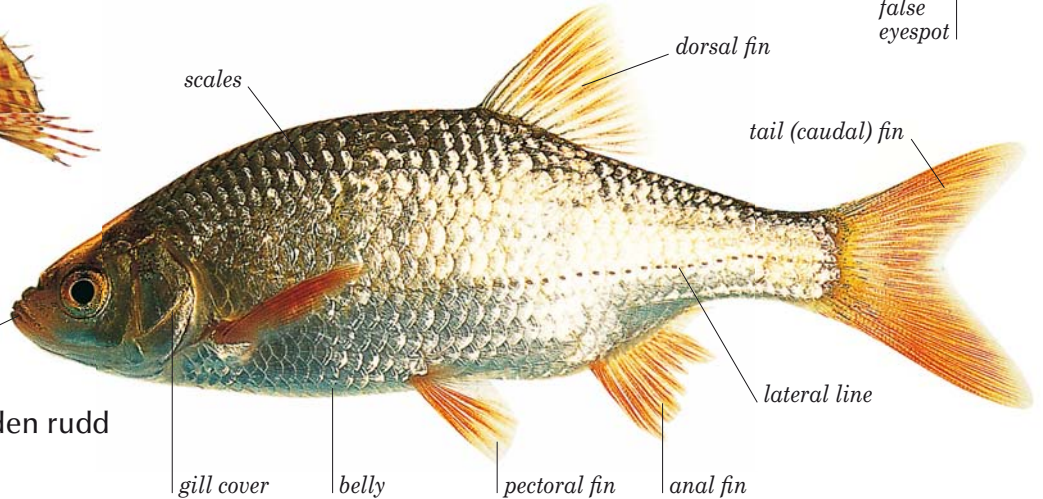


spines

lionfish

lips

golden rudd



scales

dorsal fin

tail (caudal) fin

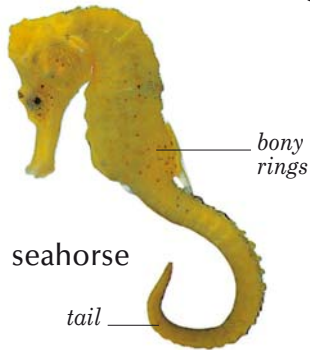
lateral line

anal fin

pectoral fin

belly

gill cover



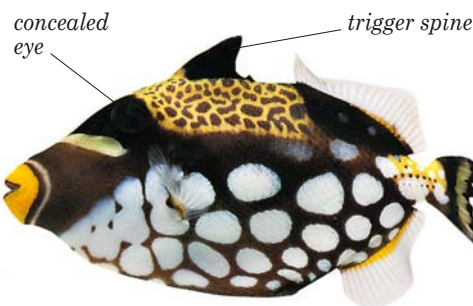
bony rings

seahorse

tail



mandarin fish



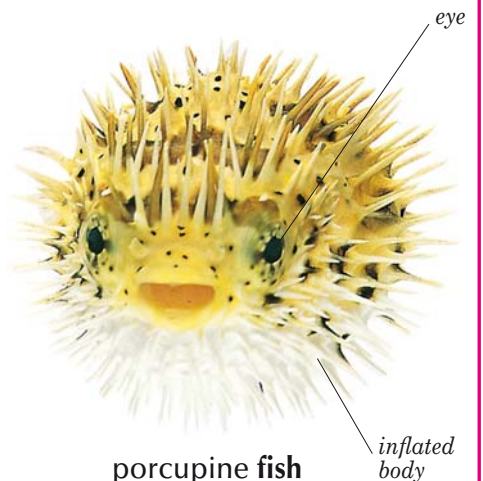
concealed eye

trigger spine

clown triggerfish



clownfish



eye

inflated body

porcupine fish

fish

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

fish

fishes fishing fished *verb*
to try to catch fish.
fishing *noun*

fist

fists *noun*
the shape your hand makes when you curl up your fingers and thumb tightly.



fit

fits fitting fit or fitted *verb*
1 to be the right size or shape.



*She checked to see if the skirt **fit** her.*

2 to put something in place.
*I **fitted** a lock to the door.*

fit

adjective
healthy.
■ comparisons **fitter fittest**

fix

fixes fixing fixed *verb*
1 to mend something.



Fixing a car engine.
2 to make something secure.
*They **fixed** the shelf to the wall.*

fizzy

adjective
full of bubbles.



*A **fizzy** drink.*
fizz *verb*

flag

flags *noun*
a piece of cloth with a design that represents a country or an organization. Flags are often flown from flagpoles.



flagpole

*United Nations **flag***

flake

flakes *noun*
a small, thin piece of something.



flakes of pastry
flake *verb*

flame

flames *noun*
a bright point of burning gas in a fire.



flammable

adjective
catching fire easily.
■ opposite **nonflammable**

flap

flaps flapping flapped *verb*
1 to hang or swing loosely.
*The laundry **flapped** in the wind.*
2 to move up and down.
*Birds **flap** their wings in order to fly.*

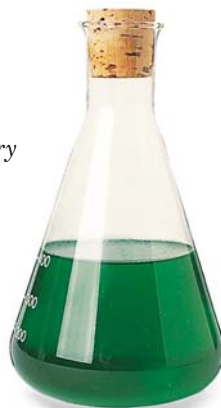


flash

flashes *noun*
1 a sudden, bright light.
*A **flash** of lightning.*
flash *verb*
2 a short period of time.
*It was all over in a **flash**.*

flask

flasks *noun*
a container for liquids that usually has a narrow top and a tight-fitting lid.



laboratory
flask

flat

adjective
1 level or even.
*A **flat** roof.*
2 without air inside it.



*A **flat** beach ball.*

flatten

flattens flattening flattened *verb*
to make something flat.
*The car ran over the can, **flattening** it.*

flavor

flavors *noun*
the taste of food or drink.



*This dessert has an orange **flavor**.*

flea

fleas *noun*
a very small, jumping insect without wings that sucks the blood of humans and animals.



flew

from the verb to fly
*He **flew** to France yesterday.*

flexible

adjective
easy to bend.



*A **flexible** ruler.*

flick

flicks flicking flicked *verb*
to touch or hit something
in a quick, light way.



*The horse **flicked** the flies away with its tail.*

flick *noun*

flight

flight *noun*
1 the action of flying.



*A parakeet in **flight**.*
2 a journey through the air.

■ say **flite**

fling

flings flinging flung *verb*
to throw something suddenly
and forcefully.
*He **flung** his shoes into the corner.*

float

floats floating floated *verb*
to rest on the surface of
water or another liquid
without sinking.



floating *adjective*

flock

flocks *noun*
a group of birds, or animals
such as sheep or goats.
*A **flock** of geese.*

flood

floods flooding flooded *verb*
to cover an area that is
normally dry with a large
amount of water.
*The river burst its banks,
flooding the town.*
flood *noun*

floodlight

floodlights *noun*
a large, bright lamp
that is used at night to
light up an open area,
usually outside.



floodlit *adjective*

floor

floors *noun*
1 a surface that you walk
on inside a building.
*A marble **floor**.*
2 a level of a building.
*I live on the sixth **floor** of this apartment building.*

florist

florists *noun*
a person who sells and
arranges flowers.

**flour**

flour *noun*
a powder made by crushing
grain such as wheat. Flour is
used in baked goods such as
bread and cakes.

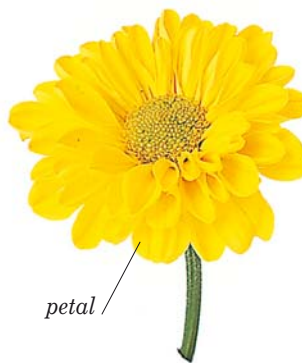
■ say **flower**

**flow**

flows flowing flowed *verb*
to move along steadily.
*A steady **flow** of traffic.*

flower

flowers *noun*
the part of a plant that
contains the seeds. Flowers
often have colorful petals
(see **plant** on page 151).

**flu**

flu *noun*
an infectious illness, caused
by a virus, that often affects
the nose and throat. Flu is
short for "influenza."

fluff

fluff *noun*
soft fibers or threads
from a material.
fluffy *adjective*

**fluid**

fluids *noun*
a substance that flows.
Gases and liquids are fluids.

fluorescent

fluorescent *adjective*
giving off light.

*His **fluorescent** top made him visible in the dark.*

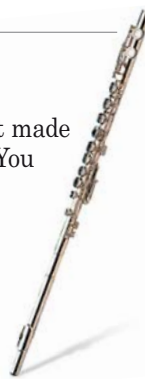
■ say **floo-res-sent**

**flush**

flushes flushing flushed *verb*
1 to become red in the face.
*She **flushed** with anger when her friend shouted at her.*
2 to clean with a sudden and quick flow of water.
*He **flushed** the dirty water away.*

flute

flutes *noun*
a wind instrument made
of wood or metal. You
play it by covering
holes with your
fingers or special
pads and blowing
across a hole at
one end.

**flutter**

flutters fluttering fluttered *verb*
to move or flap quickly.



*The butterflies **fluttered** around the bush.*

fly

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

fly

flies *noun*

a flying insect with two wings and six legs. Most flies feed on rotting plants and animals. There are many different kinds of fly.



bluebottle *fly*

fly

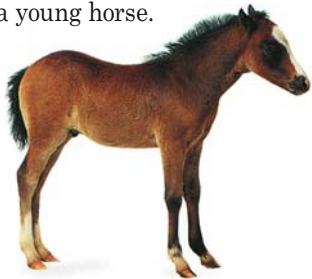
flies flying flew *verb*

to travel through the air.

foal

foals *noun*

a young horse.



foam

foam *noun*

lots of very small air bubbles. Foam can be liquid or solid.

shaving foam



focus

focuses focusing focused *verb*

to adjust something to make a clearer and sharper image. *He focused his camera on the flower.*

focus *noun*

fog

fog *noun*

a thick cloud of tiny water droplets and dust that hangs in the air, close to the ground.

foggy *adjective*

fold

folds folding folded *verb*

to bend one part of something over another.



fold *noun*

follow

follows following followed *verb*

to go behind or after someone or something.

The dog followed him all the way home.

food

food *noun*

all the things that humans and animals eat to help them live and grow.

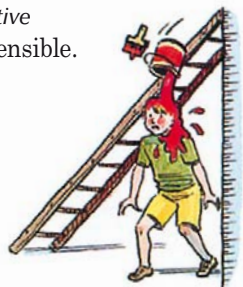


Pasta is an Italian food.

foolish

foolish *adjective*

not sensible.



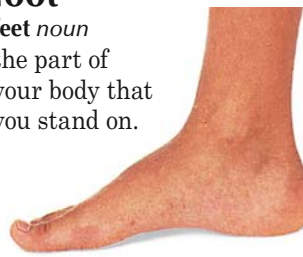
He was foolish to walk under the ladder.

foolishly *adverb*

foot

feet *noun*

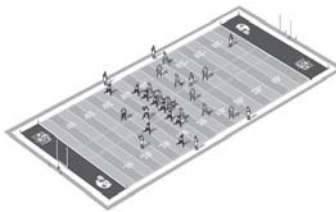
the part of your body that you stand on.



football

football *noun*

1 a game for two teams of 11 players. Points are scored by carrying the ball over the other team's goal line, or kicking it through the other team's goalposts.



2 an oval-shaped ball that is used in football games.



a football

footprint

footprints *noun*

the mark left by a foot or shoe.



footstep

footsteps *noun*

the sound of someone walking.

I heard footsteps behind me.

forbid

forbids forbidding forbade

forbidden *verb*

to tell a person that they must not do something.

I forbid you to drive.

■ opposite **allow**

forbidden *adjective*

force

forces forcing forced *verb*

1 to make a person do something.

I was forced to make a choice.

2 to push strongly.

They forced the safe open.

force

forces *noun*

1 a power.



The force of the wind blew her hat off.

2 a group of people who together have power.

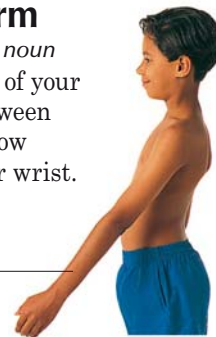
The armed forces.

forearm

forearms *noun*

the part of your arm between your elbow and your wrist.

forearm



forecast

forecasts forecasting forecast

verb

to predict that something will happen in the future.



Forecasting the weather.

forecast *noun*

forehead**foreheads** *noun*

the part of your face above your eyes and below your hair.

forehead**foreign****foreign** *adjective*

belonging to another country.
Foreign languages.

■ say **for-in****foreigner** *noun***forest****forests** *noun*

a very large area of trees.

**forget****forgets forgetting forgot forgotten** *verb*

to not remember something.

I forgot my sister's birthday.

■ opposite **remember****forgive****forgives forgiving forgave forgiven** *verb*

to stop blaming or being angry with someone for something they said or did.

I forgave my brother for losing my favorite CD.

forgiveness *noun***fork****forks** *noun*

1 a tool with two or more narrow spikes that is used for lifting things.

*table fork***form****forms** *noun*

1 the shape or the type of something.

Trains are a form of transportation.

2 a printed piece of paper with spaces in which you write information.

I filled in the form.

formula**formulas** or **formulae** *noun*

1 a type of recipe or code that shows chemists what chemicals are made of.



chemical formula for water

2 instructions or a recipe for making or doing something.

fortnight**fortnight** *noun*

a period of time lasting two weeks.

fortnightly *adjective***fortnightly** *adverb***fortune****fortune** *noun*

1 luck.

He had the good fortune to be rescued from the wreck.

■ opposite **misfortune**

2 a lot of money.



She won a fortune.

forward**forward** *adverb*

moving toward the front.

He fell forward onto his hands.

fossil**fossils** *noun*

the remains or print of a plant or animal that died many years ago. Fossils are found preserved in rocks.

fossilized *adjective***foster****fosters fostering fostered** *verb*

to give a home for a period of time to a child who comes from another family.

They have fostered three children in the past two years.

fought*from the verb to fight*

The team fought back, but in the end they lost the game.

■ say **fawt****found***from the verb to find*

She found her wallet this morning.

fountain**fountains** *noun*

a statue or structure that sprays water up into the air.

**fox****foxes** *noun*

a mammal that belongs to the dog family and lives in the countryside and in towns. Foxes eat small animals, birds, and scraps from garbage cans.

**fraction****fractions** *noun*

1 a number that is part of a whole number.

$$\frac{1}{3}$$

One-third is a fraction.

2 a very small part of something.

You can fly there in a fraction of the time it takes to drive.

fracture**fractures fracturing fractured** *verb*

to break.

fracture

The X-ray showed where the bone had fractured.
fracture *noun*

fragile**fragile** *adjective*

delicate and easily broken.



fragile coral
■ say **fraj-uhl**

frame

frame

frames *noun*

a structure that surrounds the edge of something, holding it in place.



A picture **frame**.

frantic

frantic *adjective*

very upset and excited, because of fear, worry, or pain.

*The **frantic** animal tried to escape from its cage.*

frantically *adverb*

freckle

freckles *noun*

a small, light brown spot on the skin.



freckle

free

free *adjective*

1 costing no money.

*Please accept this **free** gift.*

2 not restricted by rules or limits.

*Do you have any **free** time this week?*

free *adverb*

free *verb*

freedom

freedom *noun*

being free.

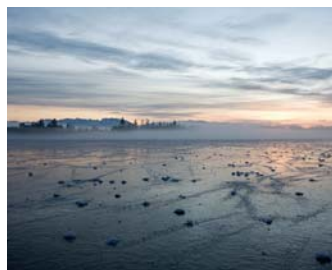
*The **freedom** to do as you like.*

freeze

freezes freezing froze frozen

verb

to reach such a low, cold temperature that a liquid becomes a solid.



The lake **froze** in winter.

freezer

freezers *noun*

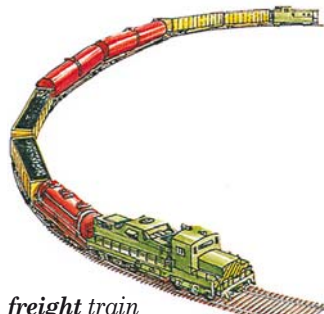
a machine that freezes food so that it can be stored for a long time without spoiling.

freight

freight *noun*

goods that are carried by road, rail, sea, or air.

■ rhymes with **mate**



freight train

frequent

frequent *adjective*

happening often.

*There is a **frequent** train service to the city.*

■ say **free**-kwent

frequently *adverb*

fresh

fresh *adjective*

new, not stale or preserved.



fresh parsley

friend

friends *noun*

someone whom you like and who likes you.

friendly *adjective*

frighten

frightens frightening frightened

verb

to make someone feel afraid.

*She was always trying to **frighten** her brother.*

frightening *adjective*

fringe

fringes *noun*

a border made up of loose, hanging pieces of material or thread.



fringe

frog

frogs *noun*

an amphibian with no tail that lives in or near water.

Frogs eat spiders, worms, small fish, and insects. They begin life as fishlike tadpoles.



front

fronts *noun*

the part of something that faces forward.

front of a truck



frontier

frontiers *noun*

the border between two regions or countries, especially if one of them is wild and unknown.

■ say fron-**tee**-er

frost

frosts *noun*

tiny ice crystals that form on surfaces outside in very cold weather.

frosty *adjective*

frown

frowns frowning frowned *verb*

to pull your eyebrows together and wrinkle your forehead to show that you are not happy about something.



frozen

frozen *adjective*

preserved by being kept very cold.

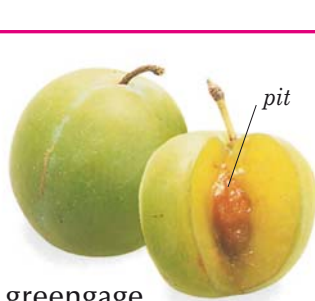


frozen peas

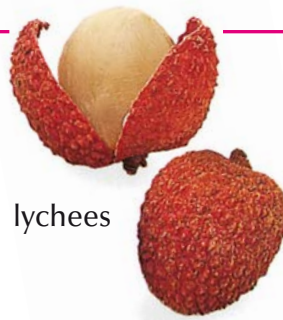
fruit**fruits** *noun*

the part of a plant
that contains
the seeds. Many
fruits are edible.

■ rhymes with **boot**



greengage
plums



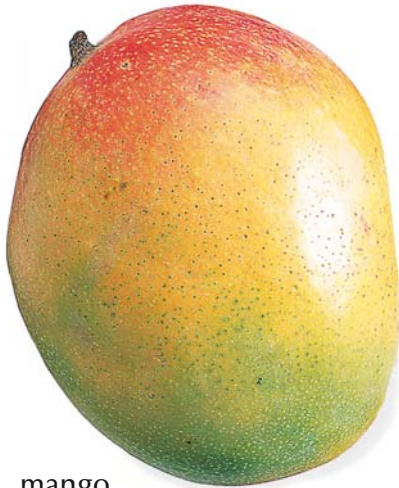
lychees



black currants



passion fruit



mango



red currants



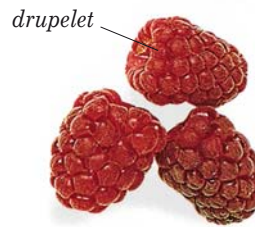
star fruit
(side view)



(end view)



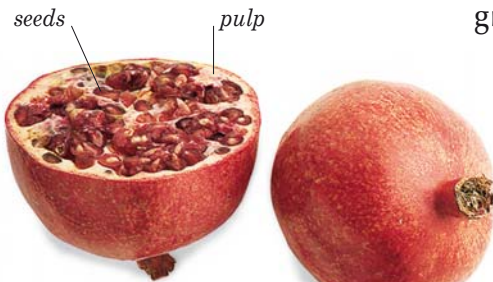
green olives



red raspberries



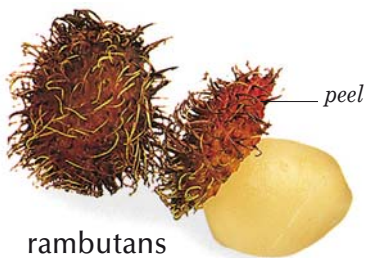
kiwi fruit



pomegranates



segment
mandarin oranges



rambutans



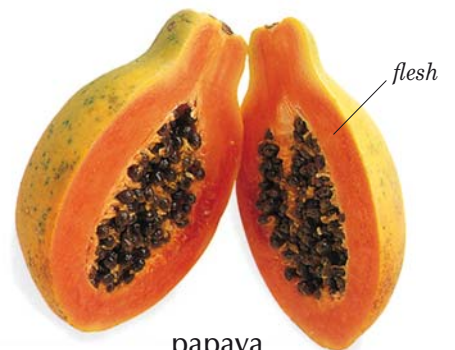
tomatoes



ugli fruit



pineapple



papaya

frustrate

frustrate

frustrates frustrating frustrated verb

to upset someone by keeping them from doing something they want to do.

*It was **frustrating** that the last tickets for the concert had already been sold.*

frustration noun

fry

fries frying fried verb

to cook something in hot oil.



frying pan

fuel

fuels noun

something that is burned to give heat or power.

*Wood, coal, and gasoline are types of **fuel**.*

full

adjective

without space for any more.



*This box is **full** of beads.*

fumes

noun

smoke or gas that is often strong-smelling and unpleasant. Some fumes are poisonous.

*Exhaust **fumes**.*

fun

noun

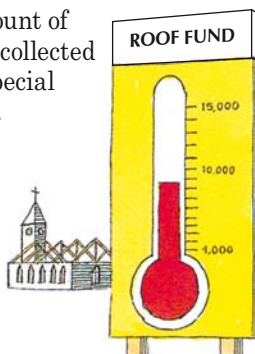
an enjoyable activity.

*The treasure hunt was lots of **fun**.*

fund

funds noun

an amount of money collected for a special reason.



*The church has started a **fund** to repair the roof.*

funeral

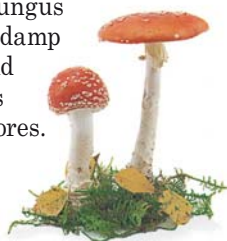
funerals noun

a formal occasion during which the body of someone who has died is buried or burned.

fungus

fungi or funguses noun

a plant with no flowers or leaves. Fungus grows in damp places and has seeds called spores.



fly agaric

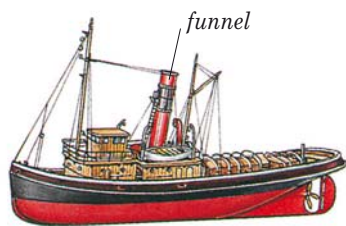
funnel

funnels noun

1 a tube that is wide at one end and narrow at the other. Funnels are used for pouring liquids through small openings.



2 the smokestack on a ship.



funny

adjective

1 making you laugh or smile.



2 strange or odd.

*What's that **funny** noise?*

■ comparisons **funnier funniest**

fur

noun

the soft, hairy covering that some animals have on their bodies.



furry adjective

furious

adjective

very angry. *She was **furious** to discover that her wallet was missing.*

■ say **fyoor-ee-us**

furnace

furnaces noun

a device in which fuel is burned to heat buildings, or to melt metals.

■ say **fur-nis**



steel-making furnace

furniture

noun

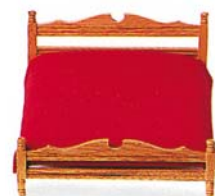
chairs, beds, cupboards, and other movable things that you have in the place where you live or work.



cupboard



armchair

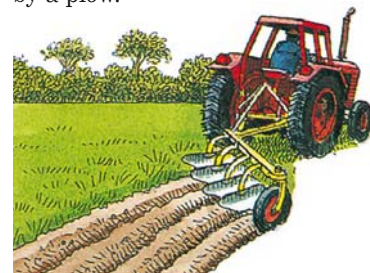


double bed

furrow

furrows noun

a groove in the ground made by a plow.



fuse

fuses noun

a safety device for electrical machines that stops the current from flowing if it is too strong.

fuss

fusses fussing fussed verb

to be more anxious than is necessary about something. *Don't **fuss** with my hair!*

fussy adjective

future

noun

the time that is to come.

*In the **future**, people might travel to Mars.*

■ opposite **past**

Gg

gadget

gadgets *noun*

a small, useful tool.

■ say ga-jit

galaxy

galaxies *noun*

a large group of stars.

The Milky Way is a galaxy.

gale

gales *noun*

a strong wind.

gallop

gallops galloping galloped *verb*

to move in the way that a horse does when it runs as fast as it can.



gamble

gambles gambling gambled *verb*

to bet money on the result of a race, game, or competition.

game

games *noun*

an activity that you play for fun, or a sport. Many games have rules and a scoring system.



bowling pins

gang

gangs *noun*

a group of people who do things together.

A gang of road workers.

gangster

gangsters *noun*

someone who belongs to a group of criminals.

gap

gaps *noun*

a space between two things.



A gap in the hedge.

gape

gapes gaping gaped *verb*

to stare at something with your mouth open.

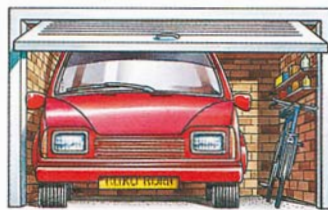
They gaped at the acrobat on the tightrope.



garage

garages *noun*

1 a place where cars and other vehicles are stored.



2 a place where cars and other vehicles are repaired.

■ say guh-razh

garbage

noun

things that have been thrown away.

■ say gar-bij

garden

gardens *noun*

a piece of ground where fruit, flowers, vegetables, and other plants are grown.



The garden looked beautiful in the summer.

garlic

noun

a plant with an onion-shaped bulb, made up of sections called cloves. Garlic is used in cooking to add flavor to food.



garlic
cloves



string of garlic

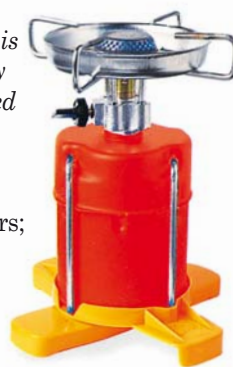
gas

gases *noun*

1 a substance that is not a liquid or a solid.

This stove is powered by a gas called butane.

2 the fuel used in cars; short for "gasoline."



gash

gashes *noun*

a long, deep cut.

gasp

gasps gasping gasped *verb*

to struggle to breathe, taking in air in short, quick breaths.

He rose to the surface of the water, gasping for air.

gasp *noun*

gate

gates *noun*

a type of outside door that is fitted into walls or fences.



gather

gathers gathering gathered *verb*

to collect together.



Gathering leaves.

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

gave

gave

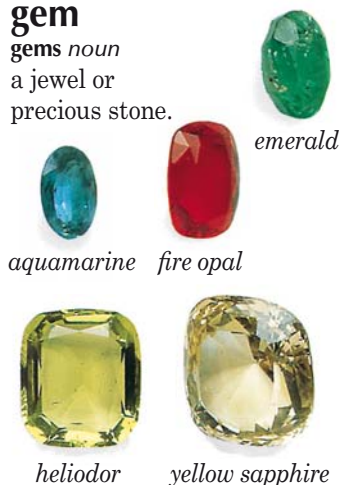
from the verb **to give**
She **gave** me a kite for
my birthday last week.

gaze

gazes gazing gazed verb
to stare at something
for a long time.
He **gazed** out of the window.

gem

gems noun
a jewel or
precious stone.



general

adjective
1 usual, or true of
most people.
The **general** opinion is that
exercise is good for you.
2 having to do with the main
parts, but not the details.
The newspaper reported the
general points of the
president's speech.
generally adverb

generation

generations noun
all the people who
are in approximately
the same age group.
There is usually
a period of about
30 years between
one generation
and the next.

Three
different
generations.



child



parent



grandparent

generous

adjective
kind and ready to give.
It was **generous** of him
to lend us the car.
generously adverb

genius

geniuses noun
a person who is
extremely intelligent.
Many people think that
Albert Einstein was a **genius**.
■ say jee-n-yus

gentle

adjective
kind and
careful.



Be **gentle** with the kitten.
■ comparisons **gentler gentlest**
gently adverb

genuine

adjective
real, or not imitation.
A **genuine** leather bag.
■ say jen-yoo-in

geography

noun
the study of the Earth's
surface and its inhabitants.
■ say jee-og-ra-fee

geometry

noun
the study of shapes, surfaces,
and angles.
■ say jee-om-e-tree

germ

germs noun
a tiny plant or animal that
can cause illness.

germinate

germinates
germinating
germinated verb
to start to grow.

a seed **germinating**



gesture

gestures noun
a sign that
you make
with your
hands
or body.



ghost

ghosts noun
the spirit of
a dead person.



■ say goest
ghostly adjective

giant

giants noun
a huge, imaginary person
from fairy tales
or legends.



giant

adjective
very large.

gift

gifts noun
a present.



gigantic

adjective
huge or enormous.
A **gigantic** house with
20 bedrooms.
■ say jie-gan-tik

giggle

giggles giggling giggled verb
to laugh in a nervous
or silly way.



gill**gills** *noun*

the organ that a fish uses to breathe (see **fish** on page 79).

gimmick**gimmicks** *noun*

a way of making people aware of something or somebody.

*Free gifts are often given away as a **gimmick** to draw attention to a new product.*

ginger**ginger** *noun*

a spicy root that is used to add flavor to food.



ground
ginger



root **ginger**

giraffe**giraffes** *noun*

a very tall mammal that lives on dry plains in Africa. Giraffes eat leaves on trees, which they can reach with their long necks.

**girl****girls** *noun*

a young female person.

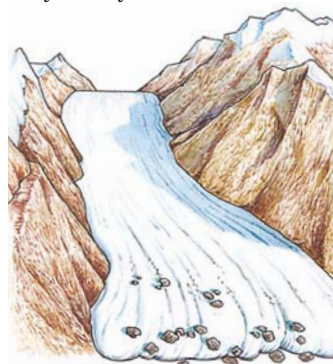
give**gives giving gave given** *verb*

to let somebody have something.

*He **gave** her a book as a prize.*

**glacier****glaciers** *noun*

a huge river of ice that moves very slowly.

**glad****glad** *adjective*

pleased and happy.

*I am **glad** to be back home.*

gladiator**gladiators** *noun*

a man who was trained to fight as entertainment for spectators in ancient Rome.

**glance**

glances glancing glanced *verb*
to take a quick look at something.

*She **glanced** at the clock to see if it was time to go out.*

gland**glands** *noun*

one of the parts of your body that makes the chemicals your body needs.

***Glands** near your eyes make tears.*

glare**glares glaring glared** *verb*

1 to look at someone in an angry way.

2 to shine very brightly.

*The sun **glared** down.*

glare *noun***glass****glass** *noun*

1 a transparent, fragile substance that is used to make things such as windows and bottles.

*stained
glass*



2 a container that is used to drink from.

*wine**glass***

glasses**glasses** *noun*

a pair of lenses in frames. People wear glasses to help them see better.

**gleam**

gleams gleaming gleamed *verb*
to shine or glow.

**glider****gliders** *noun*

a very light aircraft with no motor that flies using air currents.

**glimpse**

glimpses glimpsing glimpsed *verb*

to see something or someone for just a few moments.

*He **glimpsed** his friend in the crowd.*

glitter

glitters glittering glittered *verb*
to shine with a bright, sparkling light.



a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

globe

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

globe

globes *noun*

the world, or a model of the world.



gloomy

adjective

dull and dark.

A gloomy winter day.

glossy

adjective

shiny.

Glossy paper.

■ comparisons **glossier glossiest**

glove

gloves *noun*

a piece of clothing that you wear on your hands.



glow

glows glowing glowed *verb*

to give off a steady light.



*The fire **glowed** brightly in the dark.*

glue

glues *noun*

a substance that is used to stick things together.



glue *verb*

gnat

gnats *noun*

a small, biting insect with wings and long, fine legs.

*A mosquito is a type of **gnat**.*

■ say **nat**

gnaw

gnaws gnawing gnawed *verb*

to chew something.



*The mouse **gnawed** the wood.*

■ say **naw**

goal

goals *noun*

1 the target that you have to aim the ball at in some games.

*An ice hockey **goal**.*

2 a point scored for sending a ball into a net.



*She scored a **goal** in the last minute of the game.*

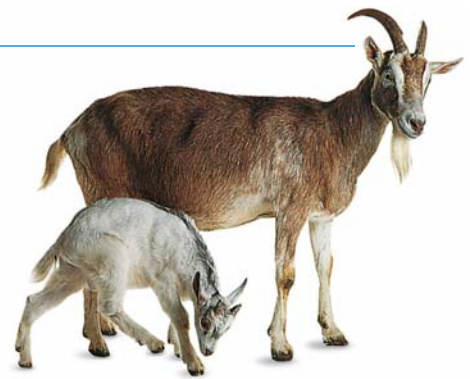
3 an aim or an ambition.

*My **goal** in life is to become a doctor.*

goat

goats *noun*

a mammal with horns from the same animal group as sheep. Goats eat grass and other plants and are often kept on farms for their milk. A baby goat is called a kid.



gobble

gobbles gobbling gobbled *verb*

to eat something quickly and in a greedy way.

God

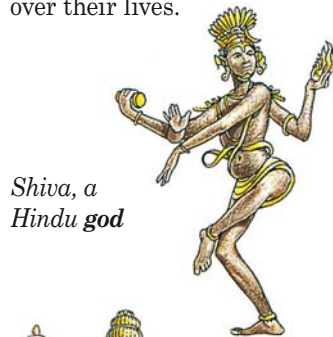
noun

the being that Christians, Jews, and Muslims worship and believe made the world.

god

gods *noun*

a being that people worship and believe has power over their lives.



Shiva, a Hindu god



Vishnu, a Hindu god

goggles

noun

special glasses worn to protect the eyes.



swimming goggles

gold

noun

a soft, bright, yellow metal that is very valuable.



gold ore



gold ring

goldfish

noun

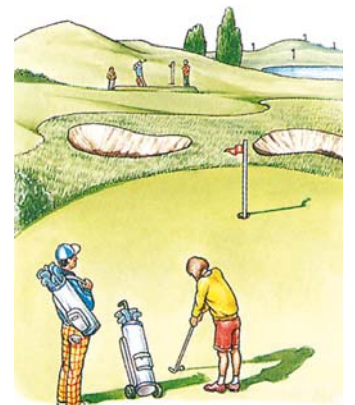
an orange fish that is often kept in aquariums and ponds as a pet.



golf

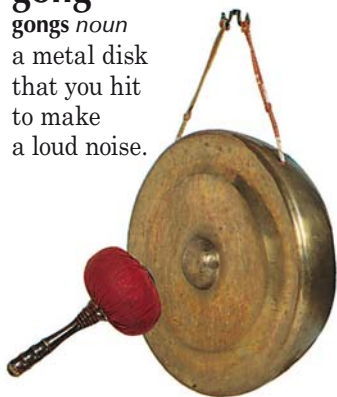
noun

a game played on a grass course, with a ball, and sticks called clubs. Players hit the ball into holes around the course. The player who completes the course in the fewest shots is the winner.



gong

gongs *noun*
a metal disk that you hit to make a loud noise.

**good**

adjective
1 pleasant or of high quality.
*That was a **good** movie!*
2 useful.
*This knife is **good** for cutting.*
3 kind or well-behaved.
*A **good** child.*
4 skillful.
*She's very **good** at math.*
■ comparisons **better best**

good-bye

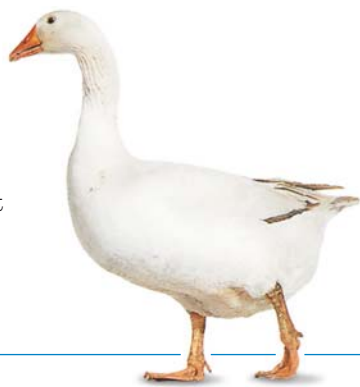
interjection
a word that you say when someone leaves.

**goods**

noun
things that can be bought and sold.

goose

geese *noun*
a large bird that lives on or near water. Geese eat grasses and grain. A male goose is called a gander. Some types of geese are kept by farmers for their eggs, meat, and feathers.

**gorge**

gorges *noun*
a deep, narrow valley.

**gorgeous**

adjective
very nice to look at or taste.
*The long, sandy beach looked **gorgeous** in the photograph.*
■ say **gor-jus**

gorilla

gorillas *noun*
a large mammal covered in dark hair that lives in rain forests in Africa. Gorillas eat fruits, nuts, and leaves. They are the largest and strongest apes in the world.

baby gorilla

**gossip**

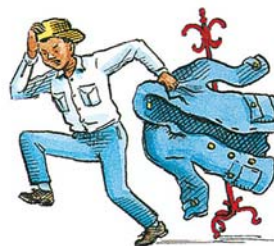
gossips **gossiping** **gossiped** *verb*
to talk about someone or something without always knowing whether what you say is true or not.
*People often **gossip** about movie stars.*

government

governments *noun*
a group of people who run a country.
■ say **guv-ern-ment**
govern *verb*

grab

grabs **grabbing** **grabbed** *verb*
to take hold of something in a quick, rough way.



*He **grabbed** his coat and ran to the station.*

graceful

adjective
moving in a beautiful way.



*Ballet dancers are very **graceful**.
gracefully *adverb**

grade

grades *noun*
1 a year at school
2 a mark to show how well you have done in your schoolwork.
grade *verb*

graffiti

noun
writing and drawing on walls in public places.



■ say **gruh-fee-tee**

grain

grains *noun*
1 a seed of a cereal crop such as wheat or barley, or a quantity of these seeds.



barley grains

2 a small, hard piece of something.
*Sand is made up of many tiny **grains**.*
3 the pattern in wood.



different wood grains

grammar

noun
the rules for writing and speaking a language.

grand

adjective
large and impressive.
*The **grand** house had a huge, iron gate.*
■ comparisons **grand** **grander** **grandest**

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

grandchild

grandchild

grandchildren *noun*

a son or daughter's child.
A grandchild can be a granddaughter or a grandson.

grandfather

grandfathers *noun*

the father of a parent.
A grandfather can also be called granddad or grandpa.

grandmother

grandmothers *noun*

the mother of a parent.
A grandmother can also be called grandma or granny.



grape

grapes *noun*

a small, round fruit with a smooth green or black skin and soft, juicy flesh.
Grapes can be used to make wine.



bunch of grapes

grapefruit

grapefruit or grapefruits *noun*

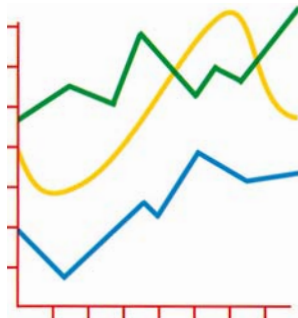
a large, round, juicy fruit with a thick skin and a sour taste.



graph

graphs *noun*

a diagram that shows how amounts and numbers of things compare with each other.



■ say graf

grasp

grasps grasping grasped *verb*

1 to take hold of something firmly.



2 to understand something.
They couldn't grasp how the computer worked.

grass

grasses *noun*

a plant with long, thin, green leaves. Grass is an important food for many animals.



grasshopper

grasshoppers *noun*

a jumping insect that feeds on plants. Grasshoppers have two sets of wings and strong back legs.



grateful

grateful *adjective*

feeling thankful to someone because they have done something for you.

She was grateful for one of his sandwiches.
gratefully *adverb*



grave

graves *noun*

a hole in the ground in which a dead body is buried.

grave

grave *adjective*

very serious and important.

gravel

gravel *noun*

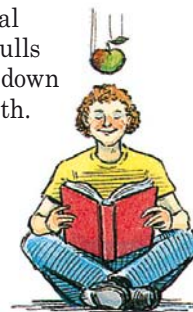
a mixture of tiny pieces of stone, used for covering paths and roads.



gravity

gravity *noun*

1 the natural force that pulls everything down toward Earth.



Apples fall downward rather than upward because of gravity.

2 seriousness.

A criminal's punishment depends on the gravity of a crime.

■ say grav-it-ee

gray

gray *noun*

a color that is a mixture of black and white.

graze

grazes grazing grazed *verb*

1 to move around eating grass and plants, in the way that cattle and other animals do.



grazing antelopes

2 to touch lightly in passing.
Her skirt grazed the flowers on the path.

grease

grease *noun*

a soft, thick oil or fat.

greasy *adjective*

great

great *adjective*

1 very big.

The great trees grew over the road.



2 important or powerful.

A great leader.

■ say grayt

■ comparisons greater greatest

greedy

greedy *adjective*

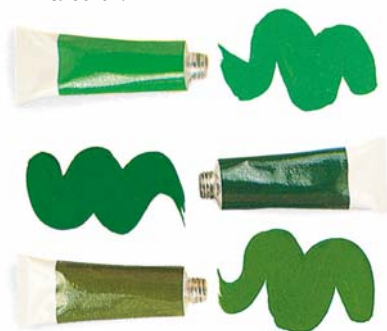
wanting much more of something than you need.

A greedy person.

■ comparisons greedier greediest

green

noun
a color.

**greenhouse**

greenhouses noun
a building made mainly of glass, used for growing plants.

**greet**

greet *greeting* *greeted verb*
to welcome someone.

greeting

greetings noun
an action, or words, used when meeting someone.



*When we arrived, she gave us a traditional Indian **greeting**.*

grief

noun
great unhappiness.

grill

grills noun
a set of metal bars for cooking food on.
grill verb

**grin**

grins grinning grinned verb
to have a big smile.



grin noun

grind

grinds grinding ground verb
to crush something into a powder by rubbing it.



Grinding spices.

grip

grips gripping gripped verb
to hold on to something very firmly.
*She **gripped** her briefcase.*

groan

groans groaning groaned verb
to make a long, deep sound because you are unhappy or in pain.

groceries

noun
food, cleaning supplies, and other things that you buy regularly to use at home.

■ say *grow-sir-reez*

**groom**

grooms grooming groomed verb
to make an animal clean by brushing it.

**group**

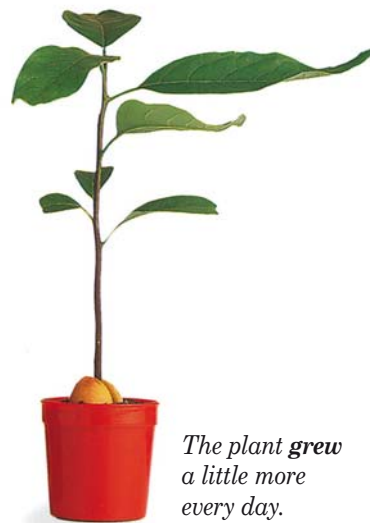
groups noun
people, animals, or things that are connected in some way.



*A **group** of schoolchildren.*

grow

grows growing grew grown verb
1 to become bigger.



*The plant **grew** a little more every day.*

2 to become something gradually.
***Growing** older.*

groove

grooves noun
a long, fine line that is cut into a flat surface.

grotesque

adjective
ugly and strange.
■ say *grow-tesk*

ground

noun
1 the surface of the Earth.



*You could see the **ground** from the top of the tower.*
2 a piece of land around a building.
*Hospital **grounds**.*

growl

grows growling growled verb
to make a long, low, angry sound deep down in the throat.
*The dog **growled** every time I came near.*

growth

growth

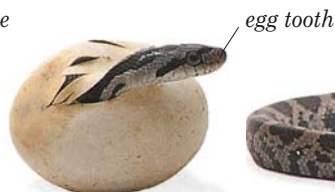
noun

the way in which things change as they become older and bigger. The growth of animals and plants happens in many different ways.

Snake



egg



hatchling

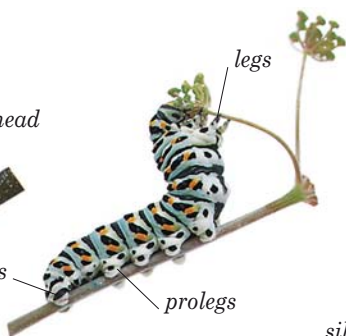


adult rat snake

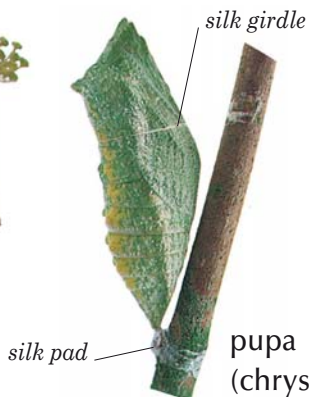
Butterfly



egg



larva (caterpillar)

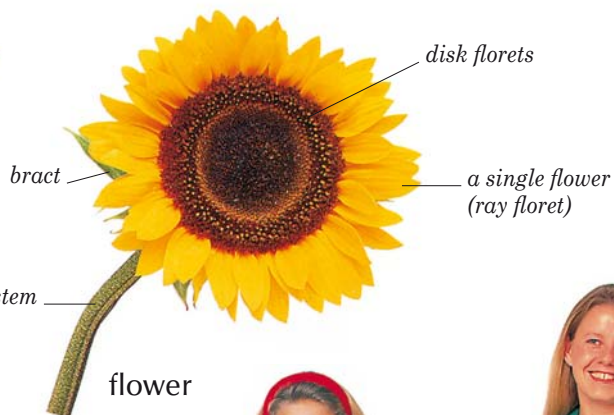
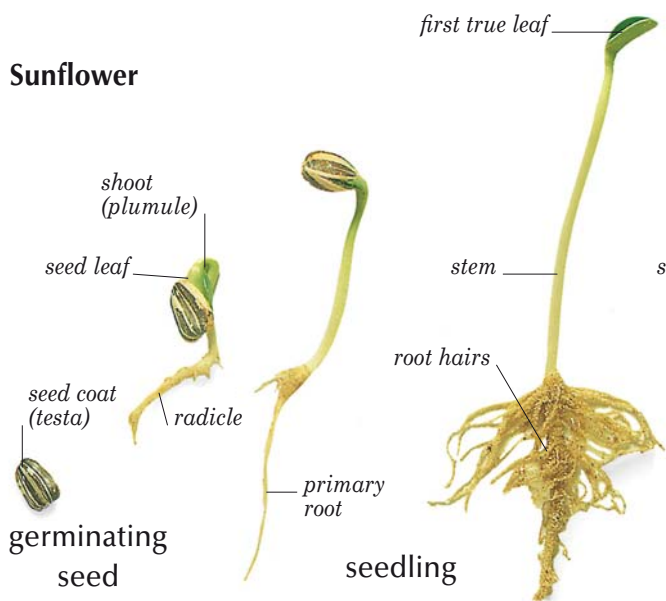


pupa (chrysalis)



imago (adult)

Sunflower



Human being



baby



toddler



child



teenager



adult

grub**grubs** *noun*

the larva of a newly hatched insect before it becomes an adult. A grub looks like a thick, soft worm.

grumble**grumbles** *grumbling* **grumbled** *verb*

to complain in an angry way, usually in a quiet voice.

grunt

grunts *grunting* **grunted** *verb*
to make a short sound like the noise a pig makes.

**guarantee****guarantees** *noun*

1 a promise from a company that if one of their products breaks or goes wrong they will fix or replace it.

*A one-year **guarantee**.*

2 a promise that something will happen.

■ say ga-run-tee

guard

guards *guarding* **guarded** *verb*
to watch over something to keep it safe.

*The building was **guarded** at night.*

■ say gard

guard**guards** *noun*

1 someone who watches over and protects something or someone.



security
guard

guess

guesses *guessing* **guessed** *verb*
to suggest an answer to a question, without being sure it is the right one.



*She had to **guess** what she was holding.*

guess *noun*

guest**guests** *noun*

someone who stays at a house or a hotel.

■ rhymes with best

guide**guides** *noun*

1 someone whose job is to show people around places.

*The **guide** took us around the museum.*

2 a book with maps and information about a place.

guide *verb*

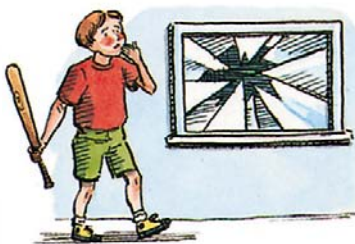
2 something that prevents damage or injury.



face
guard

guilty**adjective**

having done something wrong.



guilt *noun*

guitar**guitars** *noun*

a musical instrument with six or twelve strings. You pull the strings with your fingers to make different sounds.

*electric
guitar*

**gulp****gulps** *gulping* **gulped** *verb*

to swallow something fast or in large amounts.

*He **gulped** the drink quickly.*

gum**gums** *noun*

1 the firm part inside your mouth around your teeth.

2 a sticky substance that is usually made from plants.

*Chewing **gum**.*

gun**guns** *noun*

a weapon that shoots bullets.



18th-century **gun**

gurgle

gurgles *gurgling* **gurgled** *verb*
to make small bubbling sounds in the throat.
*The baby **gurgled** when his mother tickled him.*

gust**gusts** *noun*

a sudden, strong rush of wind.

*A **gust** of wind blew off his hat.*

gym**gyms** *noun*

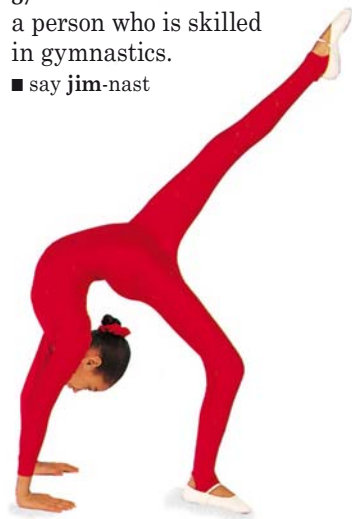
a large room or building where people can play sports or exercise, often using special equipment. Gym is short for "gymnasium."

■ say jim

**gymnast****gymnasts** *noun*

a person who is skilled in gymnastics.

■ say jim-nast

**gymnastics***noun*

a sport in which people perform exercises that develop physical strength and ability.

■ say jim-nass-ticks

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Hh

habit

habits *noun*

1 something that you usually do without thinking.



Biting your nails is a bad **habit**.

2 a type of clothing worn by monks and nuns.



monk's **habit**

habitat

habitats *noun*

the natural place where an animal, bird, or plant lives and grows.

hail

hail *noun*

frozen rain that falls in small, hard balls.



hair

hair *noun*

1 thin strands that grow on the skin of animals and people.
2 a mass of thin strands that covers your head.



braided **hair**

hairy *adjective*

hairbrush

hairbrushes *noun*
a brush for hair.



haircut

haircuts *noun*

a style in which hair is cut.
*Have you seen his new **haircut**?*

hairdresser

hairdressers *noun*

someone whose job it is to cut hair.



half

halves *noun*

one of two equal parts of something.



halve *verb*

hall

halls *noun*

1 a corridor or small room at the entrance of a house.
2 a large, open room in a building, used for meetings or other group activities.

halt

halts halting halted *verb*

to stop walking or moving forward.

■ say **hawlt**

ham

ham *noun*

meat from the leg of a pig that has been preserved with salt or smoke.

hamburger

hamburgers *noun*

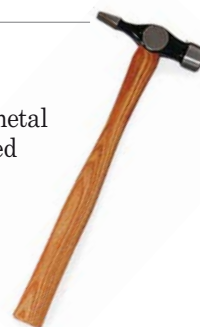
a flat piece of chopped beef, grilled and served in a roll.

hammer

hammers *noun*

a tool with a metal end that is used to knock nails into wood and for shaping metals.

hammer *verb*



hammock

hammocks *noun*

a bed made of cloth or net hung by rope and fastened at two ends.



hand

hands *noun*

the part of your body at the end of your arm that has four fingers and one thumb.



hand

hands handing handed *verb*

to give something to someone with your hand.

***Hand** the hammer to me.*

handkerchief

handkerchiefs *noun*

a small piece of cloth or paper used for blowing your nose.



handle

handles *noun*

a part of something that is designed to be grasped or held by the hand.



door **handle**

handle

handles handling handled *verb*

to touch or hold something.

*Please **handle** that vase carefully!*

handlebar

handlebars *noun*

a bar at the front of a bicycle that you turn to steer (see **transportation** on page 221).

handsome

adjective

attractive and pleasant to look at.

A **handsome** man.

handstand

handstands *noun*

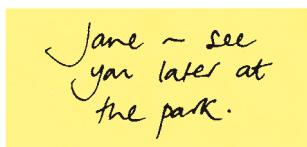
an upside-down position, standing on your hands, with your legs in the air.



handwriting

noun

writing done by hand, not typed or printed.



hang

hangs hanging hung *verb*

to support something from above.



Hanging up her clothes.

hangar

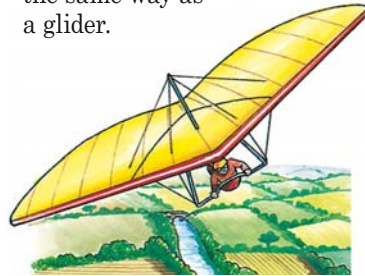
hangars *noun*

a very large building where aircraft are stored.

hang glider

hang gliders *noun*

a huge kite that a person can hang from. The hang glider rides on currents of air in the same way as a glider.



happen

happens happening happened *verb*

to take place.

What **happened** to your car?

happy

adjective

pleased and content.

He felt **happy** on his birthday.

■ comparisons **happier happiest**

happiness *noun*

harbor

harbors *noun*

a sheltered place where ships can anchor and unload safely.



hard

adjective

1 solid and firm to touch.

Hard ground.

2 difficult to understand or do.

These puzzles are **hard**.

■ comparisons **harder hardest**

hard *adverb*

hare

hares *noun*

a furry, plant-eating mammal that belongs to the same animal group as rabbits. Hares can run fast and have very good hearing. Males are called jacks and females are called jills.



harm

harms harming harmed *verb*

to damage or injure

something or someone.

harmful

adjective

able to damage or injure someone or something.

■ opposite **harmless**

harmony

harmonies *noun*

a collection of musical notes played or sung together to make a pleasant sound.

They sang in perfect **harmony**.

harp

harps *noun*

a musical instrument that has a large frame with strings stretched across it. Harps are played by pulling the strings with your fingers.



frame harp

harvest

harvests harvesting harvested *verb*

to gather a crop, such as fruit or wheat, when it is ready to be used or eaten.

combine harvester



Harvesting wheat.

harvest *noun*

hat

hats *noun*

something that is worn on the head.



hatch

hatches hatching

hatched *verb*

to be born by coming out of an egg.



hate

hates hating hated *verb*

to dislike something or someone very much.

hatred *noun*

haul

hauls hauling hauled *verb*

to pull with force.



Hauling a boat.

haunted

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

haunted

adjective

having ghosts or other spirits in it.

A **haunted** house.

hawk

hawks noun

one of a group of birds that hunt animals for food.

Falcons, buzzards, and vultures are all hawks.



long-legged buzzard

hay

noun

grass that has been cut and dried to be fed to animals. Hay is often stored in large heaps called haystacks.



Hay is often hung in a net for horses to eat.

hazard

hazards noun

a risk or dangerous obstacle.



*Icy pavements are a **hazard** to pedestrians in winter.*

hazardous *adjective*

head

heads noun

1 the part of your body that contains your brain, and is where your ears, eyes, nose, and mouth are.



2 a leader of a group.
*She is the **head** of a large company.*

headache

headaches noun

a pain in your head.

headlight

headlights noun

a light at the front of a vehicle, used when driving at night.

headlight



headline

headlines noun

the title of a report in a newspaper.

*Have you seen the **headlines** today?*

headphones

noun

a device worn over the ears that is used for listening to the radio or to recorded music.



healthy

adjective

well and strong.

■ say **hell**-thee

■ comparisons **healthier**

healthiest

health *noun*

heap

heaps noun

a collection of things lying on top of each other.



*She left her clothes in a **heap** on the chair.*

hear

hears hearing heard verb

1 to notice a sound.

*Did you **hear** that bird?*

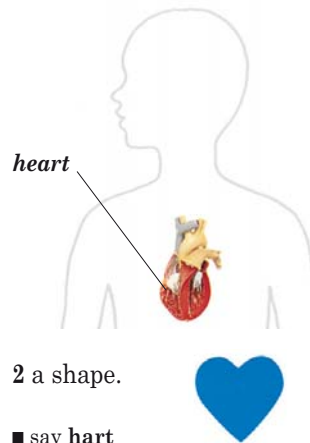
2 to listen to.

*I'd like to **hear** you play the piano.*

heart

hearts noun

1 the organ in your chest that pumps blood around your body.



2 a shape.

■ say **hart**

heat

heats heating heated verb

to make or become warmer.

*We **heated** some water.*

heat *noun*

heave

heaves heaving heaved verb

to lift, pull, or throw something with a lot of effort.



*He **heaved** the sack onto the back of the truck.*

heavy

adjective

weighing

a large

amount.

a **heavy**

stone

a **light**

feather

■ say **hev**-ee

■ comparisons **heavier** **heaviest**

■ opposite **light**

hedge

hedgies noun

a line of bushes grown so that they make a boundary between two places.

hedgehog

hedgehogs noun

a small, nocturnal mammal covered in spines. Hedgehogs hunt for insects and small animals. They roll into a ball when they feel threatened.



heel

heels *noun*

1 the back part of your foot.



2 the higher back part of a shoe.



helmet

helmets *noun*

a strong hat, worn to protect the head.



cycling
helmet

height

heights *noun*

the measurement of how tall or high someone or something is.



He measured his **height**.

■ say hite

held

from the verb **to hold**

*I **held** a snake when we went to the zoo yesterday.*

help

helps helping helped *verb*

to make something easier or better for someone.

help *noun*

helpless

adjective

unable to take care of yourself.

*A baby is completely **helpless**.*

hemisphere

hemispheres *noun*

one half of the world.

northern hemisphere



southern hemisphere

herb

herbs *noun*

a plant that is used fresh or dried to flavor food or to make medicines.
*Two different types of **herb**.*

herbal adjective



rosemary



oregano

herd

herds *noun*

a group of large, grazing animals.



*A **herd** of bison.*

here

adverb

in this place.

*Is there a doctor **here**?*

hero / heroine

heroes / heroines *noun*

1 a very brave person.

2 the main character in a story, movie, or play.

■ **hero** is male and **heroine** is female

hesitate

hesitates hesitating

hesitated *verb*

to pause because you are not sure what to do.



*He **hesitated** before jumping into the icy pool.*

hesitation *noun*

hexagon

hexagons *noun*

a shape with six sides (see shape on page 182).

hieroglyphics

hibernate

hibernates hibernating

hibernated *verb*

to go to sleep for the winter.



*A fieldmouse **hibernating**.*

■ say hie-ber-nate

hibernation *noun*

hiccup

hiccups *noun*

a sudden movement in your chest that causes a quick breath and a short gulp.

■ also spelled **hiccough**
hiccup *verb*

hide

hides hiding hid hidden *verb*

to put yourself or something out of sight.



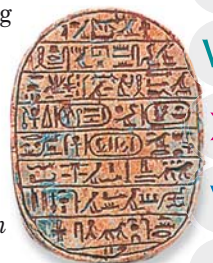
hieroglyphics

noun

a type of writing that uses pictures to represent sounds, words, and letters.

*ancient Egyptian
hieroglyphics*

■ say hie-roh-gli-fiks



a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

high

high

adjective
tall or a long way up.



High above the ground.

- say hye
- comparisons **higher highest**

highway

highways *noun*
a main road.

hijack

hijacks *noun*
a crime in which a vehicle or an aircraft is seized by force, and people are held prisoner.
hijack *verb*

hill

hills *noun*
an area of high ground.
hilly *adjective*



Hindu

Hindus *noun*
a follower of Hinduism (cultural and religious beliefs and practices that originated in India centuries ago).

hinge

hinges *noun*
a metal device that holds doors and gates in place, allowing them to open and close.



hint

hints hinting hinted *verb*
to suggest something in a vague way.
He hinted that he knew about my secret.

hip

hips *noun*
a joint at the top of each of your legs, between your waist and your thigh.

hip



hippopotamus

hippopotamuses or **hippopotami** *noun*

a large mammal that lives in Africa. Hippopotamuses spend most of the time in lakes or rivers and eat water plants.

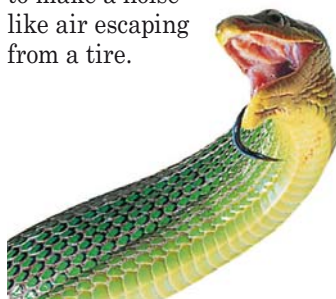


hire

hires hiring hired *verb*
to pay money so you can use someone's services.
They hired two girls to help clean the yard.

hiss

hisses hissing hissed *verb*
to make a noise like air escaping from a tire.



Snakes hiss.
hiss *noun*

history

noun
the study of things that have happened to people in the past.
We are studying the history of the United States.
historical *adjective*

hit

hits hitting hit *verb*
to come into contact with someone or something in a forceful way.



The tennis player hit the ball over the net.

hit

hits *noun*
a success.
The song was a big hit.

hoax

hoaxes *noun*
an unpleasant trick or a joke where a person tries to make someone believe something that isn't really true.
A hoax phone call.
■ say hoeks

hobble

hobbles hobbling hobbled *verb*
to walk with difficulty and pain.

hobby

hobbies *noun*
an activity that you do for enjoyment in your spare time.



Stamp collecting is a popular hobby.

hold

holds holding held *verb*
1 to have or keep something in a certain position.



Holding a cup and saucer.
2 to contain.



This container holds kitchen utensils.

hold

holds *noun*
a place inside a ship or an aircraft where cargo is stored.
The cars were driven into the ferry's hold.

hole

holes *noun*

a hollow place or gap.

holiday

holidays *noun*

a period of time off from school or work, often to celebrate a special event.

hollow

adjective

with a space inside.



*The mouse ran through the **hollow** pipe.*

home

homes *noun*

the place where a person or an animal lives or comes from.

honest

adjective

truthful or able to be trusted.

■ say **on**-nist

■ opposite **dishonest**

honesty *noun*

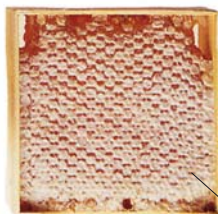
honey

noun

a sweet, sticky food, made by bees from the nectar of flowers.

■ say **hun**-ee

*jar of **honey***



honeycomb

hood

hoods *noun*

1 a part of a coat, jacket, or sweatshirt that covers your head.

2 the metal engine covering on the front of a car.



hoof

hoofs or **hooves** *noun*

the hard, nail-like part of the foot of a horse, deer, or similar animal.

*horse's **hoof***



hook

hooks *noun*

a curved metal object used for hanging things on or for catching things.

clothes

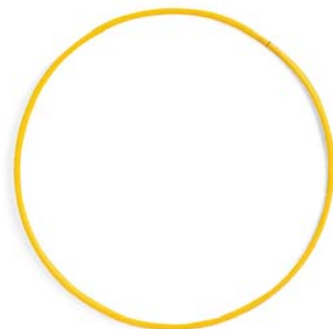
hook



hoop

hoops *noun*

a round strip of plastic, wood, or metal.



hoot

hoots **hooting** **hooted** *verb*

1 to make a sound like the noise an owl makes.

2 to blow a horn or whistle.

hoot *noun*

hop

hops **hopping**

hopped *verb*

to jump on one leg.

hop *noun*

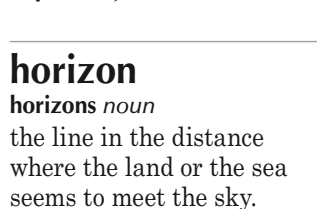
hope

hopes **hoping** **hoped** *verb*

to want something to happen, and think that it might.

*I **hope** I'll make the team.*

hopeful *adjective*



horizon

horizons *noun*

the line in the distance where the land or the sea seems to meet the sky.



■ say hor-ize-on

horizontal

adjective

parallel to the ground.

*A tabletop is **horizontal**.*

■ opposite **vertical**

horizontally *adverb*

horn

horns *noun*

1 a tough, pointed, bony part on the head of some animals.

*goat's **horn***



2 a brass wind instrument that you play by holding down valves with your fingers and blowing through the narrow end of the tube.

*French **horn***



3 a device that is used to make a warning signal.



*old-fashioned car **horn***

horoscope

horoscopes *noun*

a prediction of what might happen to you in the future, made from the position of the stars and your date of birth.

horrible

adjective

very unpleasant or frightening.

horribly *adverb*

horror

noun

a feeling of shock and fear.

*They watched in **horror** as the house burned down.*

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

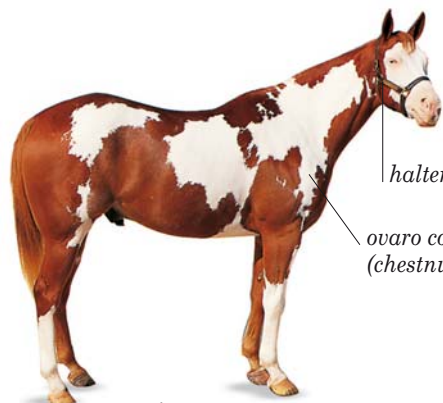
z

horse

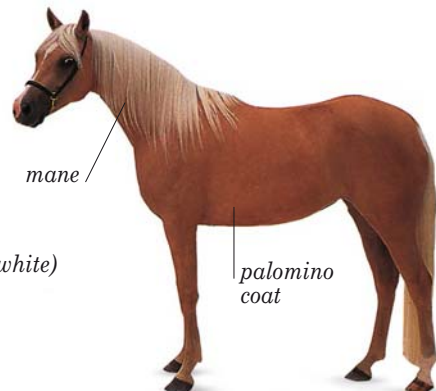
horse

horses *noun*

a large, plant-eating mammal that is often used for riding and pulling equipment. There are many different breeds of horse, and their coats can be a variety of colors.



pinto



palomino



Arab

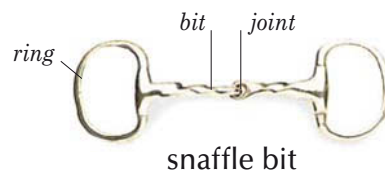


Shetland pony

shire



thoroughbred



snaffle bit



falabella foals (miniature horses)



thoroughbred



horseshoe

hose

hoses *noun*

a long, narrow tube, through which liquids can be sent.



garden hose

hospital

hospitals *noun*

a place where sick or injured people are treated.



hostage

hostages *noun*

a person who is taken prisoner by someone who demands something in return for the prisoner's safety.

hot

adjective

1 very warm.



*The bars of the heater are very **hot**.*

2 very spicy.



*Chili peppers taste very **hot**.*

■ comparisons **hotter hottest**

hotel

hotels *noun*

a building with bedrooms that people pay to stay in. Most hotels have a restaurant and a bar.



hotel building

hour

hours *noun*

a period of time lasting 60 minutes. There are 24 hours in a day.

■ say **ow-er**

hourly *adjective*

house

houses *noun*

a building that people live in.

houseboat

houseboats *noun*

a small boat that people live on.



household

households *noun*

all the people that live together in one home.

hover

hovers hovering hovered *verb*

to stay in one place in the air.



hovercraft

hovercraft *noun*

a vehicle that rides on a cushion of air. A hovercraft can travel across land and sea.



how

adverb

in what way.

How does this work?

howl

howls howling howled *verb*

to make a long, whining sound like a wolf.



huddle

huddles huddling huddled *verb*

to push or squeeze together.

*They **huddled** under the shelter.*

hug

hugs hugging hugged *verb*

to hold someone close in a loving way.



*A hummingbird **hovers** by beating its wings very fast.*

huge

adjective

very large or enormous.

*He was so hungry that he ate a **huge** plateful of food.*

hum

hums humming hummed *verb*

to make a musical sound with your lips closed.

humming *noun*

human being

human beings *noun*

a man, woman, or child.



■ say **hew-mun**

human *adjective*

humane

adjective

kind and merciful.

■ say **hew-mane**

humanely *adverb*

humid

humid

adjective
warm and damp.
*The weather was **humid**.*

humiliate

humiliates humiliating
humiliated verb
to make someone feel ridiculous or ashamed.
■ say hew-mil-lee-ate

humor

noun
the ability to see or show that something is funny.
*A good sense of **humor**.*
■ say hew-mer
humorous adjective

hump

humps noun
a large, round lump.



*This camel has two **humps**.*

hung

from the verb to hang
*I **hung** my coat up when I arrived this morning.*

hungry

adjective
wanting or needing something to eat.



hungry chicks
■ comparisons **hungrier**
hungriest
hunger noun

hunt

hunts hunting hunted verb
1 to chase an animal, often to kill it for food.



*Lions **hunt** in packs.*
2 to search for something in many places.



*I **hunted** all over the house for my key.*
hunt noun

hurl

hurls hurling hurled verb
to throw something as hard as you can.



*She **hurled** the cushion across the room.*

hurricane

hurricanes noun
a violent storm with very strong winds.

hurry

hurries hurrying hurried verb
to act quickly because there is not a lot of time.



*He had to **hurry** to deliver the package on time.*

hurt

hurts hurting hurt verb
1 to cause pain or injury.
*I **hurt** my leg when I fell.*
2 to be painful.
*My broken arm **hurts**.*

husband

husbands noun
a married man.
■ opposite **wife**

hush

noun
silence.
*There was a **hush** as the teacher came into the room.*

hut

huts noun
a small shelter.



*Tourists stayed in **huts** on the beach.*

hutch

hutches noun
a large box made of wood and wire for a small pet to live in.

*rabbit **hutch***



hydrogen

noun
a gas that is lighter than air, burns easily, and has no taste, color, or smell.
■ say hy-dro-jen

hyena

hyenas noun
a fierce mammal from Africa and Asia that looks like a large dog. Hyenas hunt for food and have a strange bark that sounds like a laugh.



■ say hy-ee-nuh

hygiene

noun
cleanliness and health.



*Good **hygiene** is important in the kitchen.*
■ say hy-jeen

hysterical

adjective
crying or laughing wildly.
■ say his-ster-i-kuhl

i

identity

identities *noun*

who someone is or what something is.



The card around his neck shows his **identity**.

iguana

iguanas *noun*

a large lizard found mainly in Central and South America. The common iguana lives near rivers and streams. It eats plants, insects, and small animals.



common **iguana**

ill

ill *adjective*

feeling sick or unwell.

illness *noun*



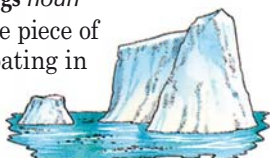
ice

ice *noun*
frozen water.

iceberg

icebergs *noun*

a huge piece of ice floating in cold seas.



ice cream

ice creams *noun*

a sweet, frozen food made mainly from cream or milk.



ice cube

ice cubes *noun*

a small block of ice used in drinks.



ice rink

ice rinks *noun*

a surface of ice where people skate; also called a "skating rink."



ice skate

ice skates *noun*

a boot with a metal blade on the sole, used for skating on ice.



icicle

icicles *noun*

a hanging piece of ice, formed by dripping water that has frozen.



idea

ideas *noun*

a thought or suggestion about something.

Do you have any better **ideas**?

ideal

ideal *adjective*

perfect in every way. That's an **ideal** solution.

ideal *noun*

identical

identical *adjective*

exactly the same.



identical candles

identify

identifies identifying identified *verb*

to recognize something or someone by name.



Can you **identify** which tree these leaves come from?

identification *noun*

idle

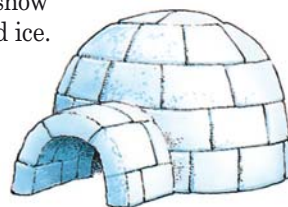
idle *adjective*

lazy, or doing nothing.

igloo

igloos *noun*

a round building made of snow and ice.



ignorant

ignorant *adjective*

not knowing about something.

ignorance *noun*

ignore

ignores ignoring ignored *verb*

to take no notice of someone or something.



illegal

illegal *adjective*

not allowed by law.

It is **illegal** to park there.

■ opposite **legal**

illegally *adverb*

illustrate

illustrates illustrating *verb*

illustrated *verb*

to supply with pictures.



Illustrating a book.

illustration *noun*

image

images *noun*

a picture of something or someone, or a picture in your mind.

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

imaginary

imaginary

adjective
not real.



The unicorn is an **imaginary** animal.

■ say i-maj-i-nar-ee

imagine

imagines imagining imagined verb

to create a picture of something in your mind.

■ say i-ma-jin

imagination noun

imitate

imitates imitating imitated verb
to copy the way that someone talks or does something.

imitation

imitations noun
a copy.



These **imitations** of fruit don't look real.

imitation adjective

immediately

adverb
without delay.

Go home **immediately**!

immediate adjective

immigrate

immigrates immigrating immigrated verb

to go to a country in order to live there permanently.

immigration noun

impact

impacts noun

1 the action of one object hitting another with force.



The **impact** of the crash wrecked both cars.

2 something that has enough power to create strong feelings in someone.

Traveling abroad had a great **impact** on me.

impatient

adjective

1 not willing to wait.



He became **impatient** when the bus didn't come.

2 easily annoyed.

She was often **impatient** with her little brother.

impatience noun

important

adjective

1 meaning a lot.

Winning this competition is very **important** to me.

2 having great power or influence.

An **important** visitor.

importance noun

impossible

adjective
not able to be done.



It is

impossible for people to fly like birds.

■ opposite possible

impress

impresses impressing impressed verb

to make someone have a good opinion of something.

His cooking skills **impressed** the judges.

improve

improves improving improved verb

to make or become better.

We **improved**

the flowerpot by decorating it.

improvement noun



include

includes including included verb

to put something in as part of a whole.

The travel brochure **includes** pictures of the hotels.

inclusion noun

inconvenient

adjective

not easy or not suitable.

Steep stairs are **inconvenient** for a lot of people.

■ say in-kun-veen-nyent

■ opposite convenient

inconvenience noun

increase

increases increasing increased verb

to become bigger in size or number.

■ opposite decrease

increase noun



incredible

adjective
difficult to believe.
He tells some **incredible** stories.

independent

adjective

not controlled by anyone or anything.

■ opposite dependent

independently adverb

index

indexes or indices noun

an alphabetical list of subjects and page numbers, usually found at the back of a book.



indignant

adjective

upset and annoyed because something is unfair.

They were **indignant** about the way they were treated.

indignantly adverb

individual

adjective

separate or for just one person.



Individual teaching.

individual noun

indoors

adverb

inside a building.

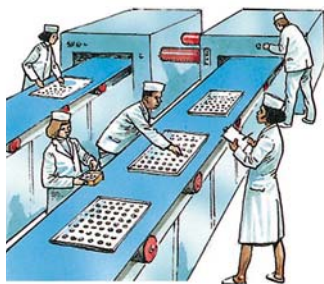
Let's go **indoors** now.

■ opposite **outdoors**

industry

industries *noun*

a trade or business, and all the people and processes involved in it.



The food **industry**.

industrial *adjective*

infant

infants *noun*

a very young child.



infancy *noun*

infection

infections *noun*

a disease caused by germs, which can be passed from one person to another.

infect *verb*

infectious *adjective*

infinite

adjective

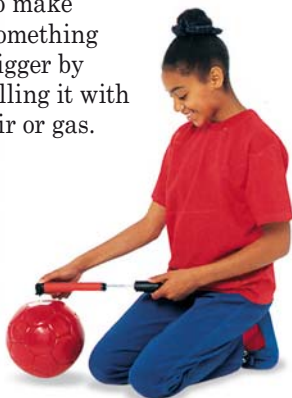
with no end.

infinity *noun*

inflate

inflates inflating inflated *verb*

to make something bigger by filling it with air or gas.



inflatable *adjective*

influence

influences influencing

influenced *verb*

to have an effect on someone so that they change their ideas or behavior.

■ say in-floo-ens

influence *noun*

information

noun

useful facts about something.



The board gave **information** about the birds in the area.

infuriate

infuriates infuriating infuriated

verb

to make someone very angry.

■ say in-fyoor-ee-ate

ingredient

ingredients *noun*

one of the parts of a mixture.



Ingredients for a salad.

■ say in-gree-dee-ent

inhabitant

inhabitants *noun*

a person who lives in a place.

The desert has very few **inhabitants**.

inhabit *verb*

initial

initials *noun*

the first letter of a word or name.

R.A.

Robert Anderson's **initials**.

■ say i-nish-uhl

inject

injects injecting injected *verb*

to put a substance into your body using a hollow needle and a syringe.

injection *noun*

injure

injures injuring

injured *verb*

to hurt yourself or someone else.



He **injured** his leg when he fell down the stairs.

injured *adjective*

injury *noun*

ink

inks *noun*

a black or colored liquid used for writing or drawing.



inland

adjective

away from the sea, toward the middle of the country.

inlet

inlets *noun*

a small opening or bay along the coast.



An **inlet**.

innocent

adjective

not guilty.

He was arrested for stealing, but was found to be **innocent**.

innocence *noun*

innocently *adverb*

inquire

inquires inquiring inquired *verb*

to ask for information.



He **inquired** at the stand about the way to the museum.

■ say in-kwire

inquiry *noun*

insect

insect

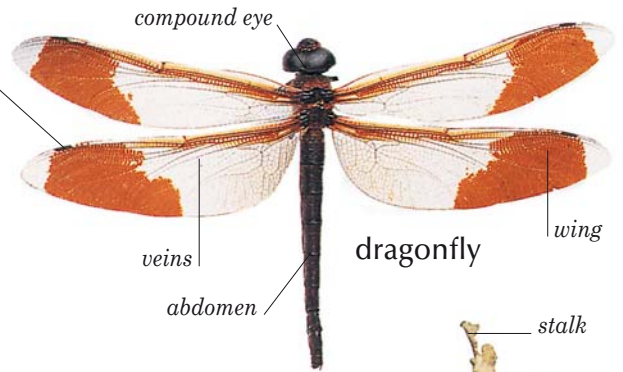
insects *noun*

a small animal with six legs and a body divided into three parts. Insects usually have two pairs of wings and do not have a backbone.



tachinid fly

black spot or stigma



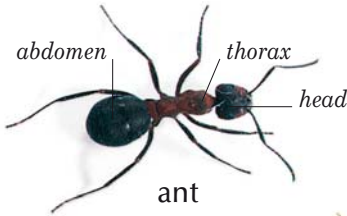
compound eye

veins

abdomen

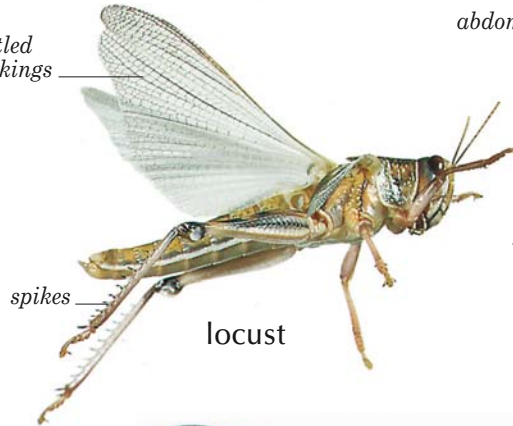
dragonfly

wing



ant

mottled markings



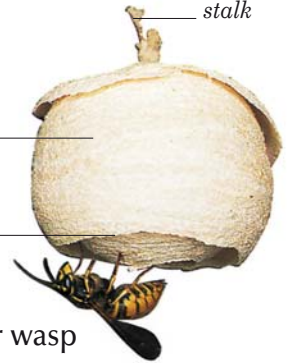
locust

spikes

wasp's nest

paper envelopes

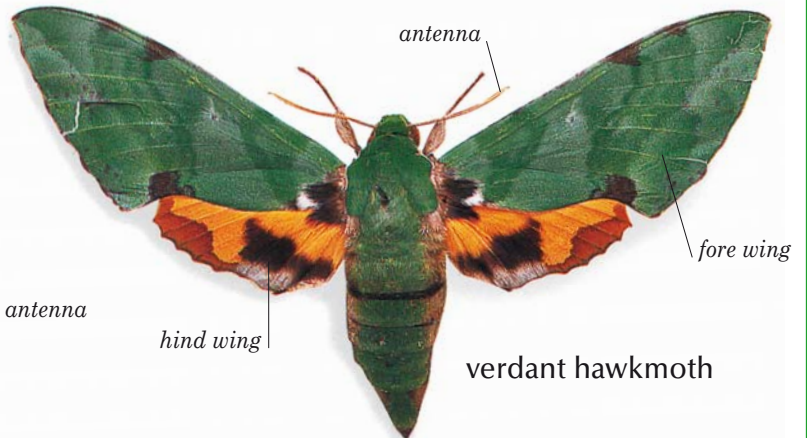
stalk



paper wasp



praying mantis



antenna

fore wing

hind wing

verdant hawkmoth



earwig

compound eye

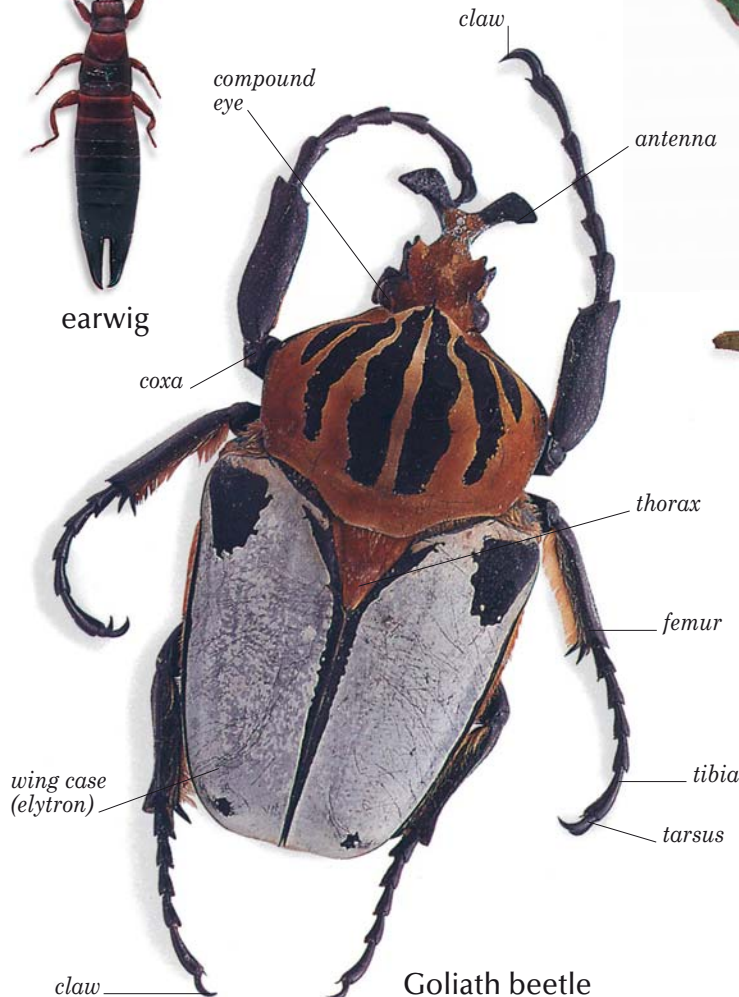
claw

antenna

coxa



stick insect



Goliath beetle

thorax

femur

tibia

tarsus

wing case (elytron)

claw



cicada



dung beetle



cockroach

insert

inserts inserting inserted verb
to put one thing
inside another.

inside

preposition
in the interior of.



Inside the box.

inside

adverb
in or into something.
Come inside!
inside noun

insist

insists insisting insisted verb
to say something very firmly.
She insisted that she had seen a ghost.
insistence noun
insistent adjective

inspect

inspects inspecting inspected verb
to check something carefully.



Cars are inspected for faults before leaving the factory.
inspection noun

instant

adjective
immediate.
She was an instant success.

instead

adverb
in place of.
I chose the red pen instead of the blue one.

instinct

instincts noun
a strong, natural feeling that makes animals or people do things that they haven't learned.
Birds have a pecking instinct.



instruction

instructions noun
information about something.
Read the instructions before you use the machine.
instruct verb

instrument

instruments noun
a device or tool that has a special use.



A navigational instrument.

insult

insults insulting insulted verb
to upset someone by saying unpleasant things to them or about them.
insult noun

intelligent

adjective
quick to learn, think, and understand.



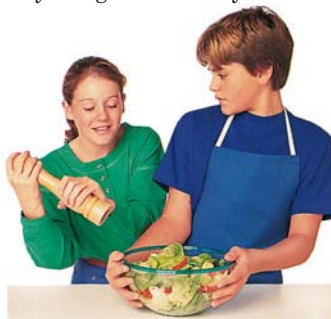
She was intelligent, so she solved the puzzle quickly.
intelligence noun

interest

interests interesting interested verb
to hold the attention of.
Anything to do with space interests me.
interesting adjective

interfere

interferes interfering interfered verb
to involve yourself in something that doesn't have anything to do with you.



She kept interfering as he tried to prepare lunch.

interior

interiors noun
the part that is inside something.



interior of a doll's house
interior adjective

interjection

interjections noun
a word such as "good-bye" or "hey" that can be used on its own.

internal

adjective
on the inside.



The internal workings of a pocket watch.

■ opposite **external**
internally adverb

international

adjective
involving several countries.
An international event.

internet

noun
a worldwide computer network for sharing information and sending messages.

interrupt

interrupts interrupting interrupted verb
1 to stop someone from talking by breaking into the conversation.
Please don't interrupt while I'm speaking!
2 to stop something from happening temporarily.
The tennis match was interrupted by rain.

intersection

intersections noun
a place where lines or roads cross each other.



A busy road intersection.

interval

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

interval

intervals *noun*

a period of time between events.
*There was a short **interval** between the two acts.*

interview

interviews *noun*

a meeting where someone is questioned.



*A job **interview**.*

interview *verb*

intestine

intestines *noun*

an organ that is connected to the stomach. Food is digested in the intestine as well as in the stomach.

■ say in-tes-tin

introduce

introduces *introducing*

introduced *verb*

to present a person or idea to someone for the first time.

***Introduce** me to your friend.*

introduction *noun*

invade

invades *invading*

invaded *verb*

to enter a place as an enemy.

invasion *noun*

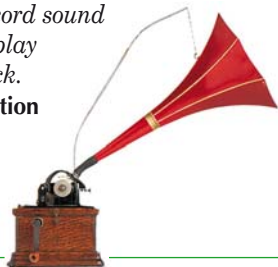
invent

invents *inventing*

invented *verb*

to design an original device or process.
*This device was **invented** to record sound and play it back.*

invention *noun*



investigate

investigates *investigating*

investigated *verb*

to look at a situation carefully to find out what is happening or what has happened.

*The police are **investigating** yesterday's robbery.*

investigation *noun*

invisible

invisible *adjective*

unable to be seen.

■ opposite **visible**

invitation

invitations *noun*

a written or spoken request asking someone to come and be with you.



*A party **invitation**.*

invite *verb*

involve

involves *involving*

involved *verb*

to include or affect something.
*Two cars were **involved** in the accident.*

involved

involved *adjective*

complicated.

*An **involved** plan.*

iris

irises *noun*

1 a tall, flowering plant that grows from a bulb or a rootlike stem.



iron

iron *noun*

1 a strong, heavy metal found in rocks; it is used to make things such as tools and gates.



*wrought-**iron** gate*

2 a piece of electrical equipment that heats up and is used to remove creases in clothing.



irrigate

irrigates *irrigating*

irrigated *verb*

to supply land with water.

irrigation *noun*

irritate

irritates *irritating*

irritated *verb*

to annoy someone.

irritation *noun*

2 the round, colored part of the eye.

■ say eye-ris



Islam

Islam *noun*

the Muslim religion. Muslims believe there is one God, Allah, and that Mohammed is his prophet.

Islamic *adjective*

island

islands *noun*

a piece of land completely surrounded by water.



■ say eye-land

itch

itches *itching*

itched *verb*

to have a feeling in your skin that makes you want to scratch.



*She scratched her hand because it was **itching**.*

itch *noun*

ivy

ivies *noun*

an evergreen climbing plant.



■ say eye-vee

J j

jab

jabs jabbing jabbed *verb*
to push a finger or a pointed tool into something in a quick, sharp way.
He jabbed his finger into his friend's ribs.
jab *noun*

jacket

jackets *noun*
a short coat.

**jagged**

adjective
having rough, sharp edges.
Jagged rocks.

jaguar

jaguars *noun*
a meat-eating mammal that belongs to the cat family. Jaguars live in forests and marshes of North and South America.

**jail**

jails *noun*
a place where criminals are kept locked up.

jam

jams *noun*
1 a sweet food made from boiled fruit and sugar. *strawberry jam*
2 a group of people or things that are squashed together.



traffic jam

jar

jars jarring jarred *verb*
to make an unpleasant sound or a jolt.
jarring *adjective*

jar

jars *noun*
a glass container with a wide top, used for storing foods.

javelin

javelins *noun*
a long, pointed stick that is thrown like a spear in athletic competitions.

**jaw**

jaws *noun*
the U-shaped bone that supports your mouth, allowing it to open and close.

**jazz**

noun
a type of popular music with strong rhythms, first played in the United States.

jealous

adjective
annoyed and unhappy because others have something you would like.
He was jealous of his friend's computer.
■ say **jell-us**
jealousy *noun*

jeans

noun
pants made of denim.

**jeep**

jeeps *noun*
a small, open vehicle for driving over rough ground (see **car** on page 39).

jelly

jellies *noun*
a soft, firm, clear food made from fruit juice and sugar.

jellyfish

jellyfish or **jellyfishes** *noun*
a sea animal that has a transparent, soft body. Jellyfish feed on fish and tiny sea animals, which they catch by stinging them with their long tentacles.



mangrove jellyfish

jet

jets *noun*
1 a sudden spray or stream of liquid or gas.
The water was thrown up in a huge jet.
2 a fast aircraft that is powered by an engine that sucks in air, heats it, and then pushes it out again.



supersonic jet

Jew

Jews *noun*
a person whose ancestors were Hebrew or whose religion is Judaism.
Jewish *adjective*

jewel

jewels *noun*
1 a precious stone that has been cut and polished. Diamonds, rubies, and emeralds are all jewels.
2 an ornament made of gems and precious metals that people wear.

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

jewelry

jewelry

noun

decorative ornaments that people wear. Jewelry is usually made from metals and decorated with jewels.



Viking armband



earrings



gold chain



Egyptian necklace



scarf pin



peridot



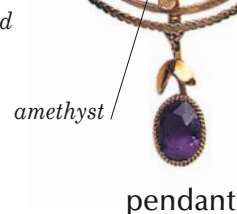
drop earrings



heliodor



solitaire ring



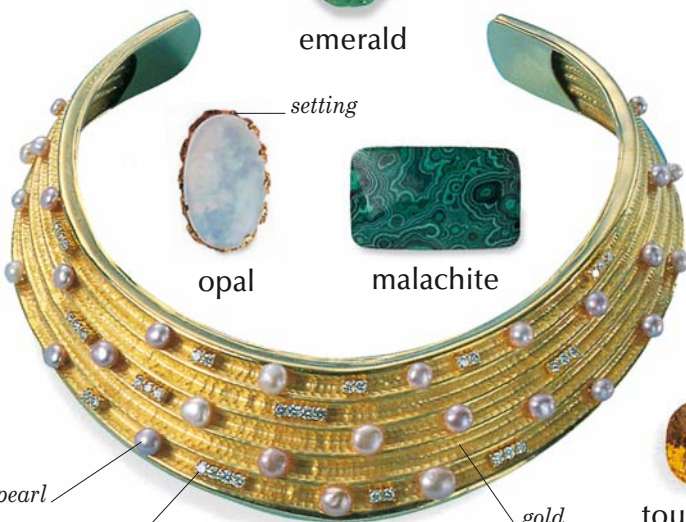
pendant



choker



emerald



collar



opal



malachite



cufflinks



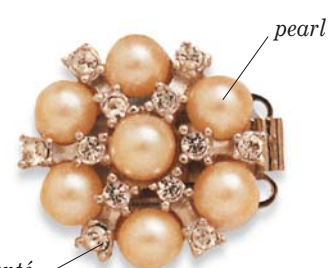
eternity ring



tourmaline



cameo brooch



clasp

jigsaw puzzle

jigsaw puzzles *noun*

a puzzle with oddly shaped pieces that fit together to make a picture.



job

jobs *noun*

1 a task or some work that you have to do.

Jobs *to do around the house.*

2 work that someone is paid to do.

I have an outdoor job.

jockey

jockeys *noun*

a person who rides a horse in races.



jog

jogs jogging jogged *verb*

to run steadily and slowly.

join

joins joining joined *verb*

1 to put two things together.



Joining *the two ends of a strip of paper.*

2 to become a member of something, such as a club.

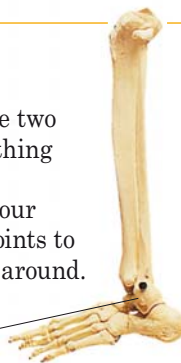
joint

joints *noun*

the place where two pieces of something join together.

The bones in your body meet at joints to help you move around.

ankle joint



joke

jokes *noun*

something that someone says or does to make people laugh.

joke *verb*

jolt

jolts jolting jolted *verb*

to shake or move in a bumpy way.



Jolting *along a bumpy track.*

jolt *noun*

journalist

journalists *noun*

a person who gathers and writes news.

■ say *jur-nuhl-list*

journey

journeys *noun*

a distance traveled.

■ say *jur-nee*

Judaism

noun

the religion of Jewish people. Jews believe in one God, and in the teachings of the Old Testament and the Talmud, the Jewish holy books.

■ say *joo-dee-iz-uhm*

judge

judges judging judged *verb*

to decide whether something is right or wrong, good or bad.

judgment *noun*

judge

judges *noun*

1 a person in charge of a court who decides the punishment of those people that the jury finds guilty.

2 a person who decides the winner of a competition or contest.

judo

noun

a sport from Japan in which two people fight using special movements to try and throw the other player to the ground.



jug

jugs *noun*

an open container that is used to hold liquids and that has a handle and a narrow mouth.

juggle

juggles juggling juggled *verb*

to keep several objects in the air at the same time by throwing and catching.



juice

juices *noun*

a liquid from fruit or meat.

juicy *adjective*

jump

jumps jumping jumped *verb*

to throw yourself into the air.



junction

junctions *noun*

a place where several things join, such as roads or railroads.

jungle

jungles *noun*

a dense, tropical forest.



junior

adjective

younger or less experienced.

jury

juries *noun*

a group of 12 people, chosen from the public, who sit in court and decide whether the person on trial is guilty or not guilty.

justice

noun

a fair and honest judgment.

■ say *jus-tis*

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

Kk

kaleidoscope

kaleidoscopes *noun*

a tube with mirrors and small pieces of colorful plastic inside that you can look through. When the tube is turned, the pieces move, making a pattern of colors.

■ say kuh-ly-duh-scope

kangaroo

kangaroos *noun*

a marsupial mammal from Australia that eats leaves and plants. Kangaroos can hop fast on their strong back legs. The females carry their young in a stomach pouch.



karate

noun

a sport from Southeast Asia in which people fight with their hands and feet using special movements.



■ say ka-rah-tee

kayak

kayaks *noun*

a covered canoe for one person, originally made from sealskins.

■ say ky-yak

kebab

kebabs *noun*

pieces of meat and vegetables, usually cooked over a grill on a sharp spike of wood or metal called a skewer.



keep

keeps keeping kept *verb*

1 to have something and not give it away.
*She wanted to **keep** the doll.*

2 to remain.
***Keep** still!*

3 to continue.
*He **kept** walking.*

kennel

kennels *noun*

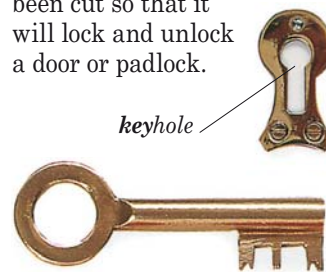
a shelter outdoors for a dog.



key

keys *noun*

1 a piece of metal that has been cut so that it will lock and unlock a door or padlock.



2 a small lever that you press with your finger.

*Computer **keys**.*

keyboard

keyboards *noun*

a row of keys that you use to play a musical instrument, or to use a computer or a typewriter.



*computer **keyboard***

kick

kicks kicking kicked *verb*

to hit something or someone with your foot.



***kick** *noun**

kidnap

kidnaps kidnapping kidnapped *verb*

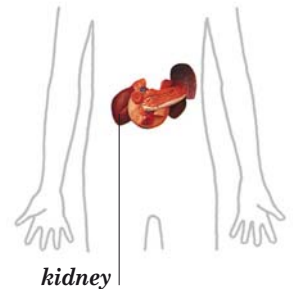
to take someone away against their will and keep them prisoner.

***kidnapping** *noun**

kidney

kidneys *noun*

one of two organs in your body that filters your blood and helps to keep it clean.



kill

kills killing killed *verb*

to make someone or something die.

*She **killed** the wasp with a rolled-up newspaper.*

kind

kinds *noun*

a type or sort of something.



*Different **kinds** of brush.*

kind

adjective

helpful and generous to other people.

■ comparisons **kinder kindest**

■ opposite **unkind**

king

kings *noun*

a male ruler of a country.

kingfisher

kingfishers *noun*

a bird with a long, straight bill and a small body.

Kingfishers eat insects or fish and live in river banks or holes in trees.

kiss

kisses kissing kissed *verb*
to touch someone with your lips in an affectionate way.



kiss *noun*

kitchen

kitchens *noun*
a room in which food is prepared and cooked.



kite

kites *noun*
a light, material-covered frame that is flown in the air. Kites are attached to a string held by a person on the ground.



kitten

kittens *noun*
a young cat.



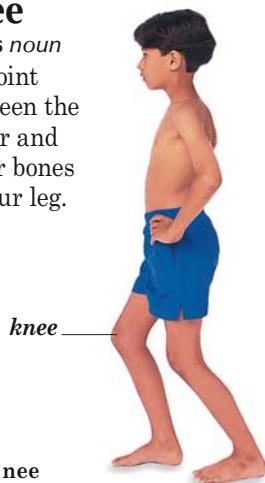
kiwi

kiwis *noun*
a nocturnal bird from New Zealand. Kiwis have hairlike feathers but they cannot fly. They have long, curved bills, which they use to hunt for insects and worms (see **bird** on page 28).

■ say kee-wee

knee

knees *noun*
the joint between the upper and lower bones of your leg.



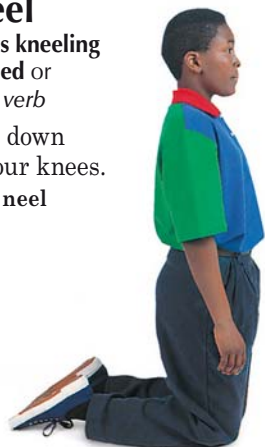
■ say nee

kneel

kneels kneeling kneeled or knelt *verb*

to go down on your knees.

■ say neel



knew

from the verb to know
I knew the answers to the test this morning.

■ say new

knife

knives *noun*
a sharp blade with a handle, that is used for cutting.

■ say nife



knight

knights *noun*
a soldier from medieval times who rode a horse. A knight fought on behalf of a lord, or for the king or queen.

■ say nite



knit

knits knitting knitted *verb*
to make clothes and blankets from thread or yarn using large plastic or metal needles.

■ say nit

knitting *noun*



know

knows knowing knew known *verb*

1 to understand something or to be sure about something.

Do you know her name?

2 to have met someone before.

I have known him for years.

■ say no

knowledge

noun
the things that someone knows, or all the things that are known.

■ say noll-ij

knowledgeable *adjective*

knuckle

knuckles *noun*
one of the bony joints at the base of your fingers.



■ say nu-kuhl

knob

knobs *noun*
a round handle made of metal, china, plastic, or wood that is fitted to a piece of furniture.

■ say nob

knock

knocks knocking knocked *verb*
to strike something sharply and quickly.

She knocked on the door.

■ say nok

knot

knots *noun*
a twisted or tied piece of string, rope, or other cord.



■ say not
knot *verb*

koala

koalas *noun*
a marsupial from Australia. Koalas eat the leaves and bark of the eucalyptus trees in which they live.



kosher

adjective
food that is prepared according to the rules of the Jewish religion.

Kosher meat.

■ say koh-shur

L

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z**label****labels** *noun*

a small notice attached to something that gives you information about it.

**laboratory****laboratories** *noun*

a place where scientists work.

lace*noun*

1 a material with a pattern of small holes.



lace border

2 a cord that is used to fasten things.

lace**laces lacing laced** *verb*

to thread a lace through holes.



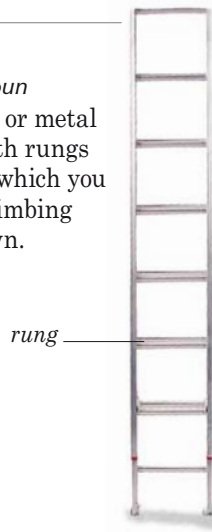
shoelace

lack*noun*

a state of not having enough or any of something.
The plants died from lack of water.

lack *verb***ladder****ladders** *noun*

a wooden or metal frame with rungs or steps, which you use for climbing up or down.



rung

ladle**ladles** *noun*

a large, deep, round spoon used to serve soup and other liquids.

**ladybug****ladybugs** *noun*

a small flying insect with spotted wing covers. Ladybugs eat other small insects.

**lagoon****lagoons** *noun*

a shallow lake, cut off from the sea or a larger lake by coral, rocks, or sand banks.

laid*from the verb to lay*

1 *He laid his paintings on the table so we could see them.*

2 *Our hen laid two eggs this morning.*

lake**lakes** *noun*

a large area of water surrounded by land.

**lamb****lambs** *noun*

1 a young sheep.



2 meat from a young sheep.

lamp**lamps** *noun*

a light that works by using electricity, oil, or gas.

land**lands landing landed** *verb*

to arrive on the ground after flying.



The plane landed on the runway.

land**lands** *noun*

1 the parts of the world that are not covered by sea.

2 a country, or an area of ground.

The farmer owns all the land around the village.

language**languages** *noun*

the words or movements that people use to communicate with each other.



The word "language" in sign language.

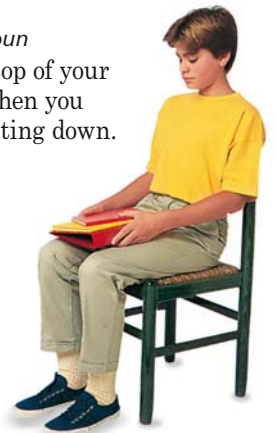
■ say lan-gwij

lantern**lanterns** *noun*

a light that is inside a transparent case to protect it from winds.

**lap****laps** *noun*

1 the top of your legs when you are sitting down.



The books were on his lap.

2 one circuit of a race track.
The runners were on the last lap of the track.

lap**laps lapping lapped** verb

1 to splash gently against something.

*The waves **lapped** against the beach.*

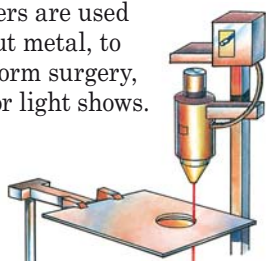
2 to drink using the tongue, in the way an animal does.

*The kittens **lapped** up the milk.***large**adjective
great in size.*a small tomato a **large** tomato*

- comparisons **larger largest**
- opposite **small**

larva**larvae** nounan insect after it has hatched out of its egg, but before it has become an adult (see **growth** on page 94).**laser****lasers** noun

a machine that produces a beam of powerful light. Lasers are used to cut metal, to perform surgery, or for light shows.

**last**

adjective

1 the only one left.

*The **last** roll on the plate.*

- opposite **first**
 - 2 the most recent.
- We stayed in **last** night.*

last**lasts lasting lasted** verb

to take a certain amount of time.

*My riding lesson **lasts** an hour.***late**

adjective

after the correct time.

*They were **late** for dinner.*

- comparisons **later latest**
- opposite **early**

laugh**laughs laughing****laughed** verb

to make a noise with your voice because you think that something is funny.



- say **laf**
- laughter** noun

launch**launches launching launched** verb

1 to put a boat or ship into the water.



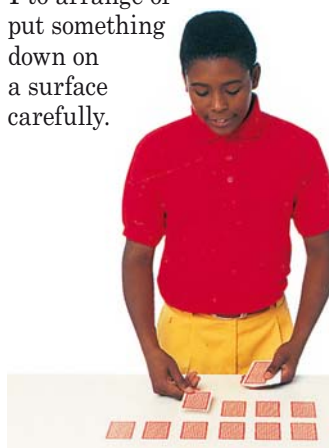
2 to start something off.

*They **launched** the rocket successfully.***law****laws** nouna set of rules that people live by, usually made by the government of a country. *It is against the **law** to litter.***lawn****lawns** noun

an area of grass that is regularly cut in a park or a garden.

lay**lays laying laid** verb

1 to arrange or put something down on a surface carefully.

***Lay** the cards on the table.*
2 to produce an egg.**lay**from the verb **to lie***He **lay** down on the bed.***layer****layers** noun

a single thickness of something.

*There is a **layer** of nuts on top of the cake.***lazy**

adjective

not wanting to work or do anything energetic.

- comparisons **lazier laziest**

lead**leads leading led** verb

1 to go first to show someone the way.

*Our tour guide **led** us to the bus.*

- opposite **follow**
- 2 to be in charge of something. *She **led** the expedition to the South Pole.*
- 3 to go in the direction of something. *The road **leads** to the house.*

lead**leads** noun1 the first place in a race. *She was in the **lead** all the way around the race track.*2 a clue. *The police followed up every **lead**.*

- rhymes with **feed**

lead

noun

a soft, heavy metal used in building and for making weights.



- rhymes with **bed**

leaf**leaves** noun

one of the thin, flat, green parts of a plant that grows out from the stem or shoots.

**leak****leaks** noun

a hole or crack in a container through which liquid or gas can escape.

*There is a **leak** in this bottle.*
leak verb

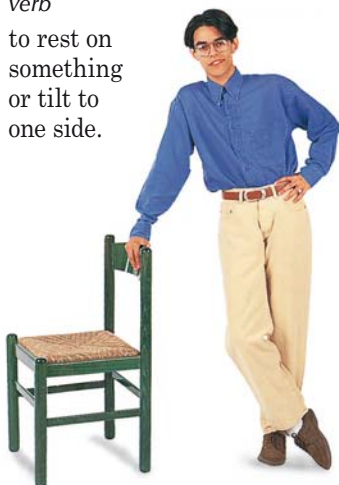
lean

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

lean

leans leaning leaned
verb

to rest on something or tilt to one side.



leap

leaps leaping leaped or leapt
verb

to jump a long distance, or to jump high into the air.

leap year

leap years *noun*

a year that has 366 days, instead of 365. A leap year happens once in every four years. The extra date in a leap year is February 29.

learn

learns learning learned
verb

to find out about something, and to understand it.

*We **learned** about magnetism at school today.*

learning *noun*

leather

noun

a material made from the skin of an animal, usually a cow.



leather bag

leave

leaves leaving left *verb*

1 to go away.

*We'll **leave** after lunch.*

2 to let something stay as it is.

***Leave** those cookies alone!*

lecture

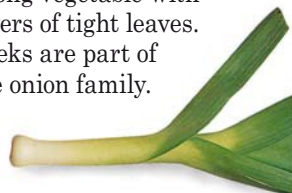
lectures *noun*

a talk given by one person to an audience.

leek

leeks *noun*

a long vegetable with layers of tight leaves. Leeks are part of the onion family.



left

adjective

the side that is opposite to the right.



*She writes with her **left** hand.*

left *noun*

leg

legs *noun*

1 the part of your body between your hip and your foot.



leg

2 a support for furniture.



table leg

legal

adjective

allowed by law, or having to do with the law.

■ say lee-gal

■ opposite **illegal**

legend

legends *noun*

a well-known old story that may or may not be true.

■ say lej-und

leisure

noun

a time when you don't have to work.

■ say lee-zhur or leezh-ur

lemon

lemons *noun*

a sour, juicy fruit with a tough, yellow skin.



lend

lends lending lent *verb*

to give something to someone for a short time.

*He **lent** me his umbrella because it was raining.*

■ opposite **borrow**

length

lengths *noun*

1 the measurement of something from one end to the other.

*Twelve inches in **length**.*

2 a piece cut from a longer piece.

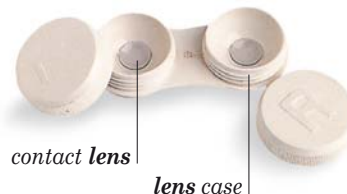


*A **length** of ribbon.*

lens

lenses *noun*

a curved piece of plastic or glass that is used to help you to see things in a clearer way. Lenses are an important part of telescopes, cameras, and eyeglasses.



contact lens

lens case

■ say lenz

leopard

leopards *noun*

a large mammal that lives in Africa and Asia and belongs to the cat family. Leopards hunt at night and are good at climbing trees.



■ say lep-ard

leotard

leotards *noun*

a tight piece of clothing worn for dancing and other kinds of exercise.



■ say lee-uh-tard

less

adjective

not as much.

*Three is **less** than four.*

■ opposite **more**

lesson**lessons** *noun*

a period of time for teaching and learning.
*A piano **lesson**.*

let**lets letting let** *verb*

to allow someone to do something.
*The farmer **let** the children pet the donkey.*

letter**letters** *noun*

1 a written symbol that is part of the alphabet (see **alphabet** on page 16).
 2 a written message that you send to someone by mail.

**lettuce****lettuces** *noun*

a green vegetable with large leaves around a short, central stem. Lettuce is often used in salads.



■ say **let-iss**

level**adjective**

smooth and flat.
*A sports field should be **level**.*

lever**levers** *noun*

1 a bar that is used to lift heavy weights or to force things open.
 2 a long bar or handle for operating a machine.

espresso coffee machine

liberty**liberties** *noun*

freedom.
*The prisoner's relatives campaigned for his **liberty**.*

library**libraries** *noun*

a place where books and other sources of information are collected and may be borrowed.

**license****licenses** *noun*

an official certificate that shows you have permission to do something.
*A driving **license**.*

■ say **lie-sens**

license *verb***lick****licks licking licked** *verb*

to touch something with your tongue to eat it or make it wet.



Licking an ice pop.

lid**lids** *noun*

the top of a container.



*saucepan **lid***

lie**lies lying lied** *verb*

to say something that you know is untrue.

lie *noun***lie****lies lying lay lain** *verb*

to be in a horizontal position.
Lying down.

**life****lives** *noun*

1 all things that are living.
Life on Earth.
 2 the time that you are alive.
*My grandmother had a long, happy **life**.*

lifeboat**lifeboats** *noun*

a boat for rescuing people who are in trouble at sea.

lifeguard**lifeguards** *noun*

a person whose job it is to rescue people who are in trouble in the sea or in a swimming pool.

**lift**

lifts lifting lifted *verb*
 to pick something up.

**lift****lifts** *noun*

1 a machine that carries people up to or down from high places.



*A ski **lift**.*

2 a ride in a vehicle that you don't have to pay for.
*Can I give you a **lift** into town?*

light**lights lighting lit** *verb*

to make something catch fire, or to turn on a light.
Lighting a candle.

light**lights** *noun*

something that shines to help you see in the dark.
*I had to turn on the **light** so I could see the way.*

light

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

light

adjective

1 weighing little.



a **light** balloon a heavy bucket

■ comparisons **lighter lightest**

■ opposite **heavy**

2 not dark in color.

Her dress was **light** blue.

lighthouse

noun

a tall tower with a bright, flashing light that guides or warns ships around dangerous areas of coast.



lightning

noun

a flash of light in the sky during a thunderstorm.



like

likes liking liked verb

to think that someone or something is pleasant.

■ opposite **dislike**

likeable adjective

like

adjective

similar to.

He looks **like** his brother.

lily

lilies noun

a tall plant that grows from a bulb, with large, trumpet-shaped blooms.



lime

limes noun

a juicy fruit with a sour flavor, similar to that of a lemon.



limit

limits noun

the point where something ends.

The **limits** of the town.

limp

limps limping limped verb

to walk with difficulty because your leg or your foot is injured or stiff.

The dog **limped** because it had a thorn in its paw.

limp noun

limp

adjective
not stiff.



A **limp** flag.

line

lines noun

1 a piece of rope or thread.

A **fishing line**.

2 a long, thin mark.



A **wavy line**.

3 a straight row of something.



A **line** of cars.

liner

liners noun

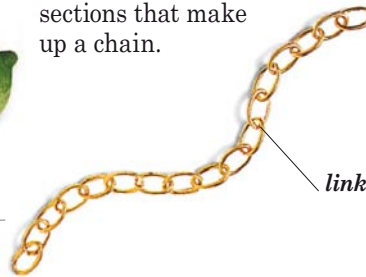
a large passenger ship.



link

links noun

1 one of the individual sections that make up a chain.



link

2 a connection between two things.

The new highway provides a **link** between the two cities.

lion

lions noun

a large mammal that is found in Africa and India. Lions belong to the cat family. They live together in groups called prides. The females, called lionesses, hunt at night for large animals such as antelope and zebra.



lioness

liquid

liquids noun

a substance that flows and is not a gas.



list

lists noun

the names of several people or things written in columns. A **shopping list**.

listen

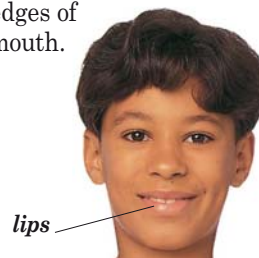
listens listening listened verb
to hear and pay attention to something, such as music.



lip

lips noun

1 one of the two soft, pink edges of your mouth.



lips

2 the top edge of a container.



lip

lit

from the verb **to light**
They **lit** a fire last night.

literature

noun
novels, plays, poems, and other written material.

litter

noun
1 garbage left lying around.
2 baby animals born to the same mother at one time.



A **litter** of puppies.

little

adjective
1 small
in size.



a **little** ball



a **big** ball

- comparisons **littler** **littlest**
- opposite **big**
- 2 not much.
- I only have a **little** time.
- comparisons **less** **least**

live

lives living lived verb
1 to be alive.
He **lived** to an old age.
2 to stay in a place.



Hermit crabs **live** in shells.

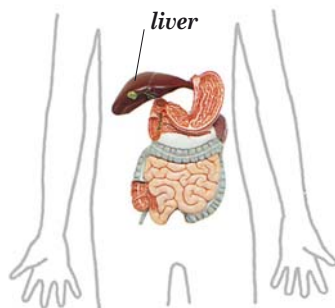
- rhymes with **give**
- living** adjective

live

adjective
1 having life.
A **live** snake.
2 shown while the event is taking place.
A **live** television show.
■ rhymes with **dive**

liver

livers noun
an organ in the body that cleans the blood and helps to digest food.

**living**

noun
the way a person lives or earns money.
He earns his **living** as a chef.

lizard

lizards noun
a reptile with scales. Most types of lizard have four legs and a long tail. Many lizards live in warm regions and eat insects.



A **gecko** is a type of **lizard**.

load

loads noun
an amount of something that is carried.

A **load** of gravel.

**load**

loads loading loaded verb
to put things into a vehicle.
Loading the ship with cargo.

loaf

loaves noun
a lump of bread baked as one piece that can be cut into slices.



loaf of bread

lobster

lobsters noun
a large shellfish that lives in the sea and has five pairs of legs. One pair of legs are claws, which lobsters use for cutting up dead fish and crushing shellfish to eat.



European lobster

local

adjective
having to do with the area near to a place.
The **local** paper showed a picture of the flood.
locally adjective

locate

locates locating located verb
1 to be in a particular place.
The company has **located** its main office in the city.
2 to find where something is.
He finally **located** the garage down a side street.

location

locations noun
the place or position of something.

lock

locks noun
1 a device that keeps something shut.



combination lock

lock verb
2 a device on a canal that raises or lowers the water level so that boats can move up and down.

**locker**

lockers noun
a small, narrow cupboard with a lock that is used for storing clothes or books.

**log**

logs noun
a thick piece of tree trunk or branch.

lonely

adjective
feeling sad and alone.
He was **lonely** with no one to play with.
■ comparisons **lonelier** **loneliest**
loneliness noun

long

long

adjective
1 having great length.

a short string of beads



a long string of beads

- comparisons **longer longest**
- opposite **short**
- 2 being a certain length.
*The fish was one foot **long**.*

look

looks looking looked verb
1 to use your eyes to see something.



Looking up.
2 to appear a certain way.
*He **looked** tired after a sleepless night.*

loose

adjective
not firmly fastened or held.

loose scarf



- say **loos**
- comparisons **looser loosest**
- loosely** adverb
- loosen** verb

lose

loses losing lost verb
1 to no longer have something.



*She has **lost** her shoe.*

- opposite **find**
- 2 to be defeated in a game or battle.
*He **lost** the tennis match.*
- say **looz**
- opposite **win**

loud

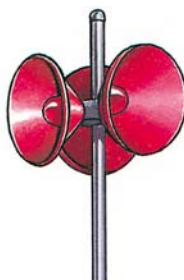
adjective
noisy.
***Loud** music.*

- comparisons **louder loudest**

loudspeaker

loudspeakers noun

a device that turns electrical signals into sound.



love

loves loving loved verb
to like someone or something very much.
love noun

low

adjective
near the ground.



*A **low** table.*

- comparisons **lower lowest**

lower

lowers lowering lowered verb
to let something down to the ground carefully.



*The load was **lowered** onto the pile.*

luck

noun
something that happens to you by chance, without being planned.
*I had the good **luck** to win a free vacation.*
lucky adjective

luggage

noun
cases and bags containing your clothes and other things that you carry when you travel.



- say **lug-ij**

lukewarm

adjective
not very warm.
*The hot water system wasn't working properly, so he had to have a **lukewarm** shower.*

lull

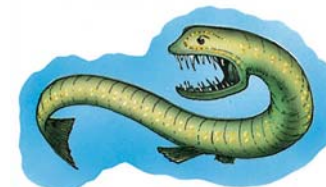
lulls lulling lulled verb
to calm someone.
*He **lulled** the baby to sleep.*

lullaby

lullabies noun
a song that is sung to help children to fall asleep.

luminous

adjective
glowing in the dark.



*A deep-sea fish with **luminous** markings.*
■ say **loo-min-us**

lump

lumps noun
a rough piece of something.
*A **lump** of coal.*

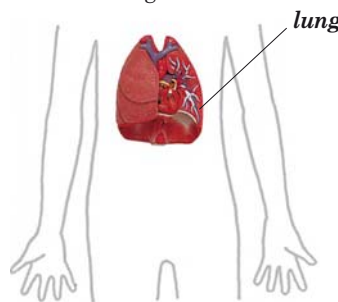
lunch

lunches noun
a meal eaten in the middle of the day.



lung

lungs noun
one of a pair of organs inside your body that you use for breathing.



luxury

luxuries noun
something that is expensive.
*The new car was a **luxury**.*
■ say **lug-zhur-ee** or **luk-zhur-ee**
luxurious adjective

lyrics

noun
the words to a song.
■ say **lir-iks**

Mm

machine

machines *noun*

a piece of equipment that is made up of several parts. The parts move together to do a particular job.



A food processor is a useful **machine**.

machinery

machinery *noun*
machines in general.

mad

mad *adjective*
1 very angry.
2 crazy or foolish.
*She is **mad** to swim in the sea during winter.*
■ comparisons **madder maddest**

magazine

magazines *noun*
a collection of news, stories, pictures, and advertisements with a paper cover.



magic

magic *noun*

tricks that a person performs that seem to make impossible and surprising things happen.

magical *adjective*

magician

magicians *noun*
someone who performs magic tricks.



magnet

magnets *noun*
a piece of iron that attracts metals with iron or steel in them.



magnetic *adjective*
magnetism *noun*

magnificent

magnificent *adjective*
grand and wonderful.
*A **magnificent** fountain.*

magnify

magnifies magnifying magnified *verb*
to make something look bigger than it really is.



magnifying *glass*

mail

mail *noun*
letters and packages that are collected and delivered.



mail *verb*

main

main *adjective*
most important.
*The **main** road.*
mainly *adverb*

major

major *adjective*
big or important.
*Scientists have made a **major** discovery.*
■ opposite **minor**
majority *noun*

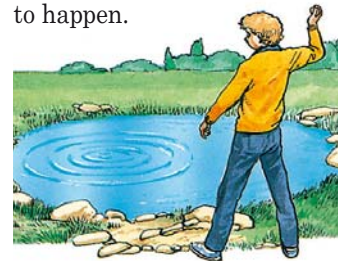
make

makes making made *verb*
1 to create, produce, build, or do something.



*She **made** some musical pipes out of straws and tape.*

2 to cause something to happen.



*The stone **made** ripples in the pond.*

3 to force someone to do something.
*Our teacher **made** us straighten up the classroom.*

makeup

makeup *noun*
a substance that people put on their faces to change the way that they look.



male

male *adjective*
belonging to the sex that can be a father, but cannot give birth to babies or produce eggs or seeds.
■ opposite **female**
male *noun*

mammal

mammal

mammals *noun*

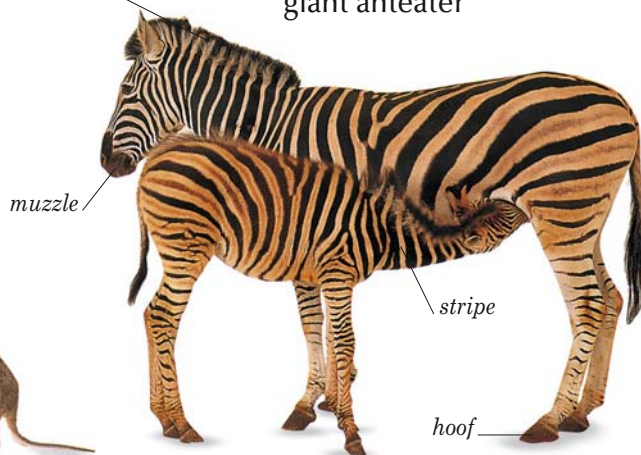
one of a group of animals that usually have hair or fur and a backbone and are warm-blooded. Most female mammals give birth to live babies and feed them on milk.



red-necked wallaby



joey



zebra foal

zebra



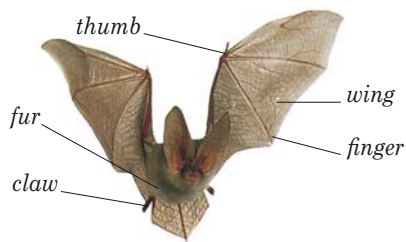
human being



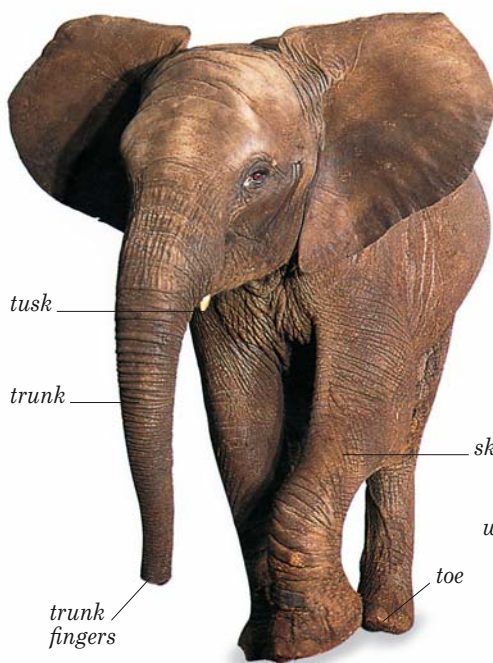
chinchilla



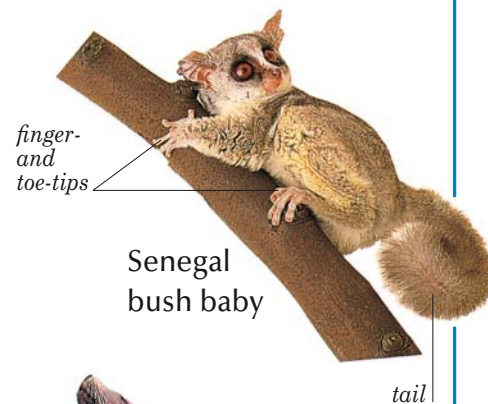
maned wolf



long-eared bat



African bush elephant



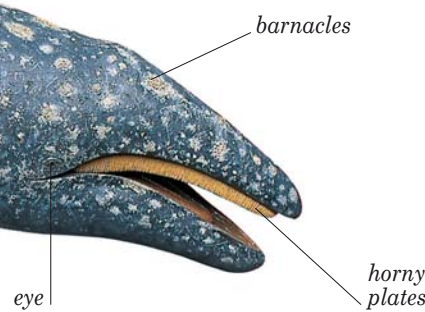
Senegal bush baby



sea lion



gray whale



man

men *noun*
an adult
male person.

**man**

noun
people in general.
Apes are related to man.

manage

manages managing
managed *verb*
1 to be in charge of a business or part of a business.
She manages a store and has two assistants to help her.
2 to be able to do something that is difficult.
She managed to swim across the bay.

manner

noun
a way that a person acts, or a way something is done.
She always greets us in a friendly manner.

manners

noun
the way a person behaves.



He has good manners.

manufacture

manufactures manufacturing
manufactured *verb*
to make something in large quantities with a machine.
Manufacturing cars.
■ say man-yu-fak-chur

many

adjective
a large number.
There were so many people, I couldn't find her.
■ comparisons **more most**
■ opposite **few**

map

maps *noun*
a drawing of all, or part of, Earth's surface. Maps often show where towns, rivers, and other geographical features are.



road map

marathon

marathons *noun*
a very long running race. A marathon is 26 miles and 385 yards (42.2 km) long.

marble

noun
1 a hard rock that is used in buildings to make floors or for decoration.

**marble slab**

2 a small, glass ball that is used to play a children's game called marbles.

**march**

marches marching marched *verb*
to walk with quick, regular steps.



march *noun*

margarine

noun
a food made of vegetable oil that is used for cooking or spreading on bread.
■ say mar-jer-in

margin

margins *noun*
a space that forms a border at the edge of a piece of paper.



margin

marine

adjective
living in the sea, or having something to do with the sea.



marine life

■ say ma-reen

mark

marks *noun*
1 a line or a stain on something.
A chalk mark.
2 a score that shows how well you have done at something.
I got high marks in French.

market

markets *noun*
a place with stalls for buying and selling goods, often outside.



open market

marmalade

marmalades *noun*
a type of jam made from fruit such as oranges or limes.



orange marmalade

marry

marries marrying married *verb*
to become someone's husband or wife at a wedding.
marriage *noun*

marsh

marshes *noun*
a low area of land that is always very wet.



marsupial

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

marsupial

marsupials *noun*

one of a group of mammals that carry their babies in pouches. Kangaroos and koalas are marsupials (see **mammal** on page 124).

■ say mar-soo-pee-al

masculine

adjective

of, or like, men or boys.

■ say mas-kul-lin

■ opposite **feminine**

mask

masks *noun*

something that hides or protects the face.



party

mask

mask *verb*

mass

masses *noun*

a very large number of people or things.



A mass of bees gathered around the hive.

mast

masts *noun*

an upright pole that holds the sails on a boat or ship (see **boat** on page 31).

mat

mats *noun*

a covering for a floor or to put under dishes on a table.



match

matches **matching** **matched** *verb*

to be similar to, or to go well with, something else.



His pants

matched *his*

hat and scarf.

matching *adjective*

match

matches *noun*

1 a sports competition between two people or teams. *A tennis match.*

2 a small stick of wood or cardboard that you strike against a rough surface to make a flame.



mate

mates **mating** **mated** *verb*

to join together as males and females to produce babies.

Many animals mate in the spring and have their babies in the summer.

mate *noun*

material

materials *noun*

1 cloth.



woven material

mathematics

noun

the study of numbers, quantities, shapes, and sizes. Mathematics is often shortened to "math."



Symbols that are used in mathematics.

mathematical *adjective*

matter

noun

1 any substance that takes up space and has weight, such as solids, liquids, and gases.

Everything is made up of matter.

2 a subject that needs to be discussed or decided.

It was an urgent matter.

mattress

mattresses *noun*

a soft, thick pad that you lie on in a bed.



mature

adjective

fully grown or developed.

mature *verb*

maturity *noun*

2 things that are used to make or do something.



building materials

maximum

noun

the greatest possible amount.



This box holds a maximum of 12 pencils.

■ opposite **minimum**

may

might *verb*

1 to ask or have permission to do something.

May I go now?

2 to suggest that something is possible.

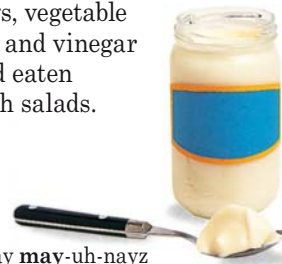
It may rain later.

■ always used with another verb

mayonnaise

noun

a creamy sauce made from eggs, vegetable oil, and vinegar and eaten with salads.

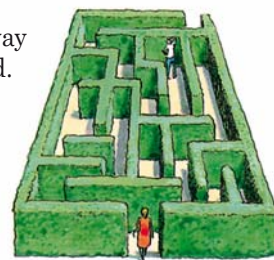


■ say may-uh-nayz

maze

mazes *noun*

a system of paths in which it is difficult to find your way around.



meadow

meadows *noun*

a field of grass, often with wild flowers growing in it.

■ say med-oh

meal

meals *noun*
food eaten at
a particular
time of the day.



An evening **meal**.

mean

adjective
1 unkind or unpleasant.

mean

mean meaning meant *verb*
to have in your mind
as your purpose.
What did you mean by that?

meaning

meanings *noun*
the explanation behind what
something says or what
it is about.
*She didn't understand
the meaning of the joke.*

meanwhile

adverb
at the same time.
*Put the pasta on to boil, and
meanwhile, make the sauce.*

measure

measures measuring measured *verb*
to find out how big or how
heavy something is.

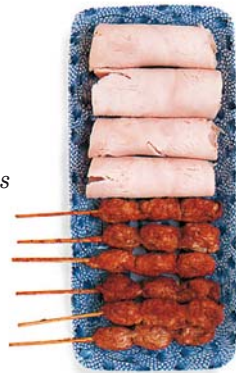


■ say **mez**-ur
measurement *noun*

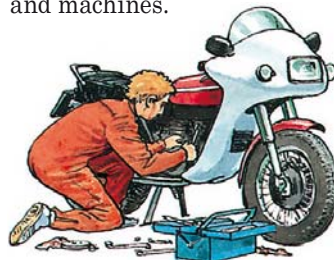
meat

noun
the parts of an animal that
can be eaten.

meat
kebabs

**mechanic**

mechanics *noun*
a person who makes and
repairs engines
and machines.

**mechanical**

adjective
worked by a machine.



A **mechanical** toy.

medal

medals *noun*
a piece of metal that looks
like a large coin hanging on
a ribbon. Medals are awarded
to people for
something
special that
they have done.



war **medal**

medical

adjective
having to do with medicine
or doctors.
Medical school.

medicine

medicines *noun*
a substance given
to a sick person
to help make
them better.



■ say **med**-i-sin

medieval

adjective
coming from the historical
period between
the 12th and
15th centuries.

medieval
costume



■ say
med-ee-ee-val

medium

adjective
an average size, not
particularly large or small.

small medium large

**meet**

meets meeting met *verb*
to come face-to-face with
another person.
*I meet my friend at
the bus stop every day.*
meeting *noun*

melody

melodies *noun*
a tune.
Do you recognize this melody?
melodic *adjective*

melon

melons *noun*
a round yellow or green fruit
with a tough skin, soft flesh,
and many seeds.

**melt**

melts melting melted *verb*
to turn from a solid to
a liquid when heated.



The butter **melted** quickly
in the hot pan.

member

member

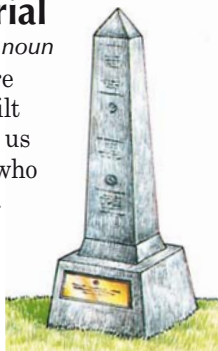
members *noun*

a person who belongs to a club or an organization.

memorial

memorials *noun*

a structure that is built to remind us of people who have died.



A war **memorial**.

memorize

memorizes memorizing

memorized *verb*

to learn something so that you can remember it in detail.
Memorize the directions before you begin your trip.

memory

memories *noun*

1 the ability to remember things.

*I have a terrible **memory** for people's names.*

2 what you remember of something that has happened in the past.

*The photos brought back happy **memories**.*

mend

mends mending mended *verb*

to repair something that is broken.



mental

adjective

having to do with the mind.
*A test of **mental** abilities.*

menu

menus *noun*

a list of dishes in a restaurant.



■ say **men**-yoo

mercury

noun

a heavy, silver-colored metal that is usually in a liquid form.
Mercury is often used in thermometers.

mercury

mercy

noun

the ability to forgive someone or to treat them sympathetically.

*The prisoners were shown **mercy** and released.*

merciful *adjective*

merit

merits meriting merited *verb*
to deserve something.

*Her actions **merited** a special award for bravery.*

merit *noun*

mermaid

mermaids *noun*

a sea creature from legends that has the upper body of a woman and the tail of a fish.



merry

adjective

happy and cheerful.

■ comparisons **merrier merriest**

mess

messes *noun*

things that are dirty or in the wrong place and look untidy.
*There was a big **mess** after they had finished cooking.*

messy *adjective*

message

messages *noun*

a piece of information or an instruction that you send to someone or leave for them.



met

from the verb to meet

*I **met** my friend in town yesterday.*

metal

metals *noun*

a substance that is found in rocks and can be hammered or stretched into a shape.
Iron, gold, and copper are all metals. Electricity and heat can be passed through metals.



gold watch

metallic *adjective*



tin can

meteorite

meteorites *noun*

a piece of rock that falls to Earth from space without burning up. Pieces of rock that burn up as they enter Earth's atmosphere are called meteors.



meteorite

■ say **meet**-ee-or-ite

method

methods *noun*

a way of doing something.
*Organic farming **methods**.*

microphone

microphones *noun*

a device that is used to send sound over a distance or to make it louder.



microscope

microscopes *noun*

an instrument that magnifies very tiny things so that they can be seen in detail.



microwave oven

microwave ovens *noun*

an oven that cooks food very quickly by passing electrical signals through it.

midday

noun

12 o'clock, in the middle of the day.

■ opposite **midnight**

middle

middles *noun*

the center, or the part between the outer edges of something.



*She sat in the **middle** of the bench, between her two friends.*

midnight

noun

12 o'clock at night.

■ opposite **midday**

might

*from the verb **may***

*It **might** snow later.*

■ say **mite**

migrate

migrates migrating migrated *verb*

1 to go from one place to another to live there.

***Migrating** from the country to the city.*

2 to go from one place to another every year at the same time.



*Birds **migrate** huge distances.*

■ say **my-grate**
migration *noun*

military

adjective

to do with an army, navy, or air force.



military *hat*

milk

noun

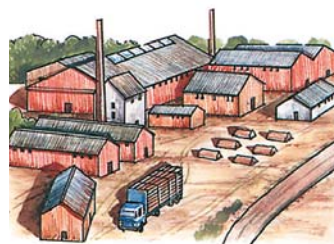
the liquid that female mammals produce to feed their babies. People also drink goat's and cow's milk.



mill

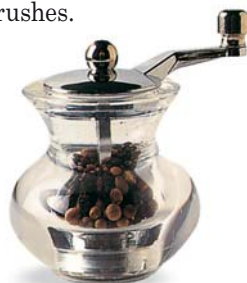
mills *noun*

1 a building where materials are manufactured.



sawmill

2 a device that grinds or crushes.



pepper mill

millionaire

millionaires *noun*

a very rich person with money and property worth more than a million dollars.

mime

mimes *noun*

a type of acting that uses movements instead of words.



mime *verb*

mimic

mimics mimicking

mimicked *verb*

to imitate what someone says or does.



*Parrots can **mimic** lots of noises.*

mind

minds minding minded *verb*

1 to object to something.

*Do you **mind** if I sit here?*

2 to take care of someone for a time.

*I had to **mind** the baby while my sister went out.*

mind

minds *noun*

1 the thoughts, feelings, and memory of a person.

*I've changed my **mind**.*

2 intelligence.

*She has a quick **mind**.*

mine

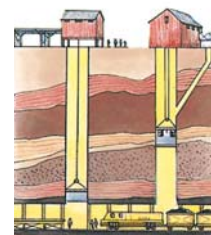
mines *noun*

1 a deep hole in the ground from which minerals are dug out of rock.

miner *noun*

2 a type of bomb that can float in the sea or be buried in the ground.

coal mine



mineral

minerals *noun*

a natural substance, such as coal or gold, that is found in rocks and in the ground.



lapis lazuli

miniature

adjective

very small, or made to a small scale.



miniature china

■ say **min-i-cher**

miniaturize *verb*

minimum

noun

the smallest possible amount or number.

*The **minimum** age for driving a car is 16.*

■ opposite **maximum**

minister

ministers *noun*

1 a person who holds religious services in a church.

2 someone in charge of a government department.

*The British health **minister**.*

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

minor

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

minor

adjective

small or unimportant.
*A **minor** fault delayed the plane's departure.*

■ opposite **major**
minority *noun*

minus

preposition

subtract or less.
*8 **minus** 5 equals 3.*
■ opposite **plus**

minus

minuses *noun*

a symbol in mathematics that means subtract.
minus *adjective*



minute

minutes *noun*

a measurement of time that lasts 60 seconds. There are 60 minutes in an hour.
■ say min-it

minute

adjective

extremely small.



*A **minute** bead.*

■ say my-noot

miracle

miracles *noun*

a sudden, wonderful event that sometimes makes a bad situation better.

*Her recovery after the accident was a **miracle**.*

■ say mir-u-kuhl
miraculous *adjective*

mirage

mirages *noun*

something that looks real from far away, but is not there when you get closer to it.
*The lake that they saw in the desert was only a **mirage**.*
■ say -mi-razh

mirror

mirrors *noun*

a shiny surface, usually made of glass. Mirrors reflect the images of things placed in front of them.



mischievous

adjective

playful in a way that can be annoying.



*The **mischievous** cat knocked over the plant.*

■ say mis-chuh-vus
mischievously *adverb*

miserable

adjective

very sad or unhappy.



miss

misses missing missed *verb*

1 to fail to meet, reach, or hit something that you are aiming at.

*He threw the ball at the target, but **missed** it.*

2 to be sad because someone is not there.

*I will **miss** you.*

3 to fail to keep, have, or attend something.

*She has **missed** school for three weeks now.*

mist

mists *noun*

a cloud of tiny water drops in the air.

misty *adjective*



mistake

mistakes *noun*

something that someone does wrong.

$$8-5=1$$

mistaken *adjective*

mix

mixes mixing mixed *verb*

to combine two or more things together.



mixture *noun*

moan

moans moaning moaned *verb*

to complain or to make a long, low, groaning noise because of pain or sadness.

moat

moats *noun*

a deep ditch filled with water that surrounds a castle.



mobile

adjective

able to move or be carried around.

*A **mobile** library.*

mobile

mobiles *noun*

a decoration made of small objects hanging on strings.



model

models *noun*

1 a small copy of something larger.



*A **model** of an airplane.*

model *adjective*

2 a person who demonstrates clothes or other things that are for sale.



*A **fashion model**.*

3 a person who poses for photographs or for an artist.



modern

adjective
of the present time.
*A **modern** house.*

modest

adjective
not boasting about your talents and actions.
*He was too **modest** to say he had won first prize.*

moist

adjective
slightly wet.
moisture *noun*

mole

moles *noun*
1 a small, furry mammal that lives in underground tunnels. Moles eat worms and insects and they are almost blind.



2 a small, dark patch on your skin.

moment

moments *noun*
a short time.
*I'll be back in a **moment**.*

money

noun
the coins and paper bills used to buy things.



mongrel

mongrels *noun*
a dog that is a mixture of more than one breed.



monk

monks *noun*
a man who lives in a religious community.

Buddhist
monk

■ say **munk**



monkey

monkeys *noun*
a furry mammal that usually lives in hot regions. Most monkeys live in trees and eat fruit, although some eat small insects and mammals. There are many different species of monkey.



macaque

■ say **mung-kee**

monster

monsters *noun*
a fierce, frightening creature from myths and fairy tales.

month

months *noun*
a period of between 28 and 31 days. A year is divided into 12 months.

mood

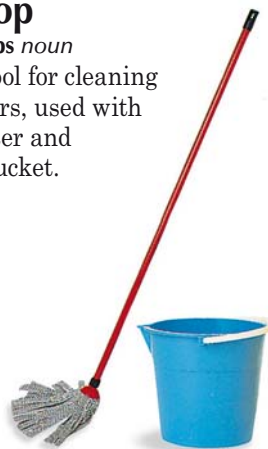
moods *noun*
a way you feel at a particular time.
*The sunny day put us all in a good **mood**.*

moon

moons *noun*
a ball-shaped natural satellite made of rock that revolves around a planet (see **universe** on page 229).

mop

mops *noun*
a tool for cleaning floors, used with water and a bucket.



more

adjective
greater in number or quantity.
■ opposite **less**

morning

mornings *noun*
the early part of the day, ending at noon.
*School starts at 8:30 in the **morning**.*

mosaic

mosaics *noun*
a picture or pattern made of small squares of colored stone.



■ say **mo-zay-ik**

mosque

mosques *noun*
a building where Muslims go to pray.
■ say **mosk**

mosquito

mosquitoes or **mosquitos** *noun*
a small, flying insect found in hot, wet regions. Female mosquitoes bite and feed on the blood of people and animals and can infect them with serious illnesses, such as malaria.



■ say **muh-skee-toe**

most

adjective
greatest in number or quantity.
■ opposite **least**

motel

motels *noun*
a hotel specially built for guests with cars.

moth

moths *noun*
a flying insect with wings covered in fine scales. Moths belong to the same animal group as butterflies, but they usually fly at night.



*pine emperor **moth***

mother

mothers *noun*
a female parent.

motion

motions *noun*
movement.
*The rocking **motion** of the boat made me feel sick.*

motor

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

motor

motors *noun*

a machine that supplies power to objects to move them or make them work.



motorcycle

motorcycles *noun*

a two-wheeled vehicle that is powered by a motor.



motorist

motorists *noun*

a person who drives a car regularly.

mound

mounds *noun*

a small hill, or a pile.
There is a mound of dirt at the end of the mole's tunnel.

mountain

mountains *noun*

an area of land that rises up to a great height.

mountainous *adjective*



mourn

mourns mourning mourned *verb*

to be sad because someone has died.

■ say **morn**

mouse

mice *noun*

1 a small, furry mammal from the rodent family. Mice have large front teeth that they use to gnaw food. Mice mainly eat plants, but sometimes they eat small animals and insects, too.



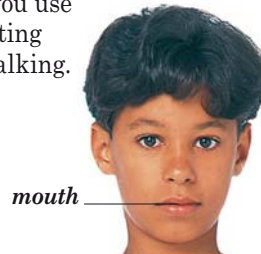
2 a control switch for a computer that can be used to move things around on a computer screen.



mouth

mouths *noun*

1 the opening in your face that you use for eating and talking.



2 the end of a river where it meets the sea.

move

moves moving moved *verb*

to go from one place to another, or to make something change position.

movement *noun*

moving

adjective

making you feel emotions, especially sympathy.

movie

movies *noun*

a moving picture.

mow

mows mowing mowed *verb*

to cut grass.



Mowing the lawn.

■ rhymes with **go**

mud

noun

soft, wet earth.

muddy *adjective*

muddle

muddles *noun*

a confusing or messy situation.

muddle *verb*

mug

mugs *noun*

a large cup without a saucer.



multiply

multiplies multiplying multiplied *verb*

to increase a number or an amount of something by adding it to itself several times.

$$9 \times 5 = 45$$

Nine multiplied by five equals forty-five.

multiplication *noun*

munch

munches munching munched *verb*

to make a crunching noise while eating something.

Munching lettuce.



murder

murders murdering murdered *verb*

to kill someone deliberately.

murmur

murmurs *noun*

a quiet, whispering sound.

murmur *verb*

muscle

muscles *noun*

the fleshy parts of your body that help it to move.

biceps muscle



■ say **mus-suhl**

muscular *adjective*

museum

museums *noun*

a place where objects from other times and places, or of special interest, are displayed.

■ say **myoo-zee-um**

mushroom

mushrooms *noun*

a common fungus that grows in warm, damp areas. Some mushrooms can be eaten, but others are poisonous.



field mushrooms

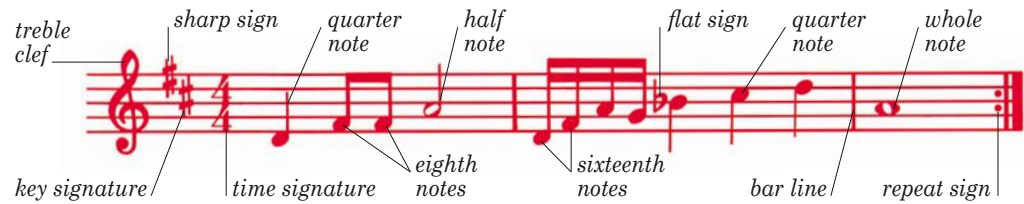
music

noun

the sound that people make when they sing or play musical instruments.

musical instrument

musical instruments *noun*
an instrument for making music, usually played by hitting, blowing, or pulling or hitting strings.



Musical symbols

Wind instruments



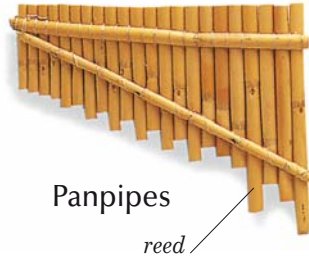
didgeridoo
(Australian Aboriginal pipe)



bassoon

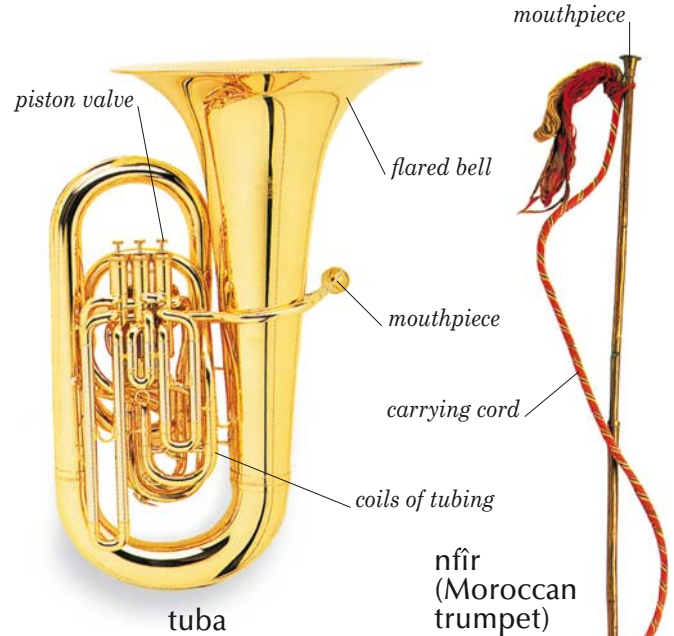


ocarina



Panpipes

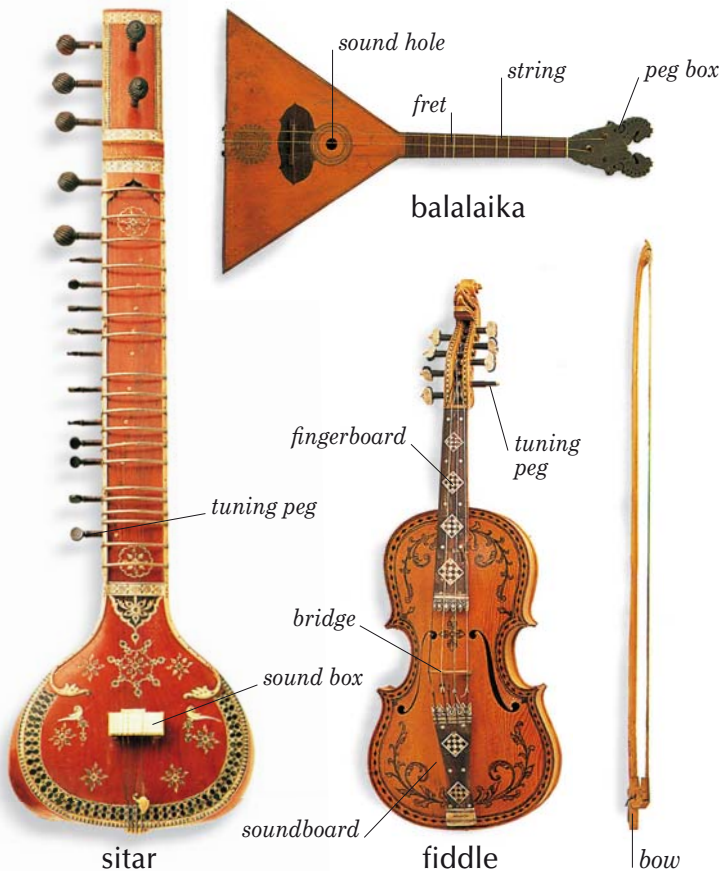
Brass instruments



tuba

nfir
(Moroccan trumpet)

String instruments



sitar

balalaika

fiddle

Percussion instruments



castanets

cabaca (rattle)

djeme (African drum)

mu-yus (Chinese temple blocks)

beaters

musician

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

musician

musicians *noun*

a person who sings, plays a musical instrument, or writes music.



■ say myoo-zish-un

Muslim

Muslims *noun*

a person who believes in and follows the Islamic religion.

■ also spelled **Moslem**

mussel

mussels *noun*

a type of shellfish that is edible. Some mussels live in the sea, while others live in lakes and streams.



must

verb

to have to do something.

*I **must** mail her birthday present today.*

■ opposite **must not** or **mustn't**

■ always used with another verb

mustard

noun

a spicy powder or sauce made from mustard seeds and used to add flavor to food.



mutiny

mutinies *noun*

a rebellion by the crew of a ship or by soldiers in an army against the people in charge.

■ say myoot-n-ee

mutiny *verb*

mutter

mutters **muttering** **muttered** *verb*

to talk in a low voice.

*I can't hear when you **mutter**.*

mutual

adjective

shared by two or more.

*A **mutual** friend.*

■ say myoo-tyoo-ul

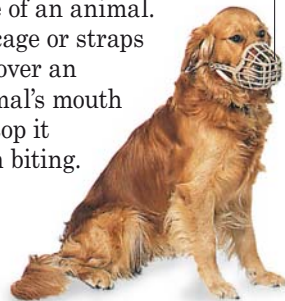
muzzle

muzzles *noun*

1 the mouth and nose of an animal.

2 a cage or straps put over an animal's mouth to stop it from biting.

muzzle



mystery

mysteries *noun*

an unusual and puzzling event.

*His disappearance is still a **mystery**.*

mysterious *adjective*

myth

myths *noun*

an ancient story that tries to explain how the world became the way it is.



*Zeus was the god of light, clear skies, and thunder in Greek **myths**.*

mythical *adjective*

Nn

nail

nails *noun*

1 a long, thin, pointed metal spike that is hammered into pieces of wood to fasten them together.

nail *verb*



2 a hard substance that grows at the ends of your fingers and toes.



fingernail

naked

adjective

not wearing any clothes.

■ say nay-kid

name

names *noun*

a word that a person or thing is known by.

*My dog's **name** is Rover.*

nap

naps *noun*

a short sleep.

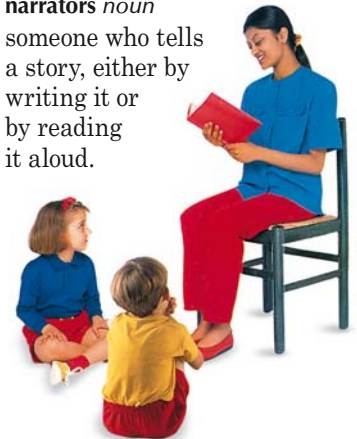


*He took a quick **nap** before supper.*

narrator

narrators *noun*

someone who tells a story, either by writing it or by reading it aloud.

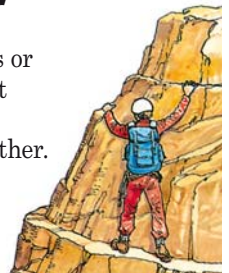


narrate *verb*

narrow

adjective

with sides or edges that are very close together.



*The path was very **narrow**.*

■ comparisons **narrower**

narrowest

■ opposite **wide**

nasty

adjective

unpleasant or cruel.

■ comparisons **nastier** **nastiest**

nation

nations *noun*

a group of people who usually share the same history, language, and way of life and live in the same country.

national *adjective*

natural

adjective
produced by nature.



natural sponge

nature

noun
all the things in the world that are not made by humans, such as the weather, animals, plants, and the sea.

■ say **nay**-cher

naughty

adjective
disobedient or badly behaved.



It is very **naughty** to draw on walls.

■ say **naw**-tee
■ comparisons **naughtier**
naughtiest

nautical

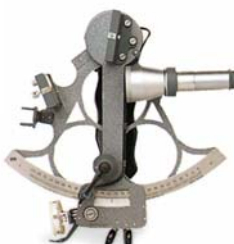
adjective
relating to ships, sailors, or sailing.



map dividers



ship's register



sextant

Nautical instruments.

navigate

navigates navigating navigated verb

to steer a boat, ship, or aircraft in a particular direction using special instruments and maps.



navigation *noun*

navy

noun
1 a country's warships and sailors.
2 a dark blue color.

near

preposition
close to or not far from.



They lived **near** the airport.

■ opposite **far**
near *adjective*
near *adverb*

nearby

adverb
not far away.
Do you live **nearby**?

nearly

adverb
not quite, but almost.
It's **nearly** bedtime.

necessary

adjective
needed.
Necessary equipment for survival at sea.
■ say **nes**-i-sair-ee
■ opposite **unnecessary**
necessarily *adverb*



handheld flare



parachute flare

neck

necks *noun*
the part of the body that supports your head and joins it to the rest of your body.



neck

necklace

necklaces *noun*
a chain or beads worn around the neck as a piece of jewelry.



nectar

noun
a sweet liquid that bees and some birds collect from flowers. Bees use nectar to make honey.

need

needs needing needed *verb*
to want something because you have to have it.
Do you **need** anything from the store?



life jacket

needle

needles *noun*
1 a small, thin piece of pointed steel.



sewing needle

2 a plastic or metal stick used for knitting.



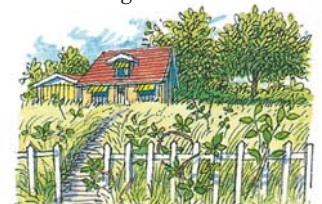
3 a thin, pointed leaf of some plants, such as pine trees.
4 a part that points on a dial.
A compass **needle**.

negative

adjective
1 saying or meaning no.
A **negative** answer.
2 smaller than zero.
A **negative** number.
■ opposite **positive**

neglect

neglects neglecting neglected *verb*
to pay too little or no attention to someone or something.



They **neglected** their yard.
neglect *noun*

negotiate

negotiates negotiating negotiated *verb*
to discuss something in order to reach an agreement.
■ say **neg**-oh-she-ate
negotiation *noun*

neighbor

neighbors *noun*
someone who lives near you.
■ say **nay**-bur

neighborhood

neighborhoods *noun*
the people and the area where you live.
■ say **nay**-bur-hood

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

nephew

nephew

nephews *noun*

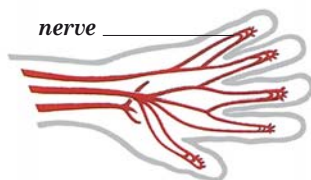
the son of a person's brother, sister, brother-in-law, or sister-in-law.

■ say *nef-yoo*

nerve

nerves *noun*

1 a thin fiber that connects your brain to all parts of your body. Nerves carry messages to and from your brain so that you can feel and move.



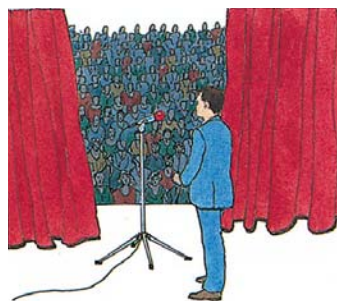
2 courage.

To lose your **nerve**.

nervous

adjective

slightly worried or frightened about what is happening or going to happen.



He was **nervous** about speaking in public.

nervously *adverb*

nest

nests *noun*

the home that a bird or animal builds out of leaves, grass, and other materials.



squirrel's
nest

nest *verb*

net

nets *noun*

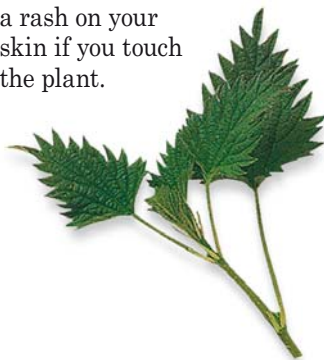
a material made of knotted threads, string, or rope. Nets are often used to catch fish.



nettle

nettles *noun*

a plant with stinging hairs on its stems and leaves. These hairs can cause a rash on your skin if you touch the plant.



network

networks *noun*

1 a system of connected lines, roads, people, computers, or organizations.



Plan of a rail **network**.

2 a group of connected radio or television stations that can broadcast the same programs.

neutral

adjective

1 not being on anyone's side.

A **neutral** country.

2 not very definite.

Gray is a **neutral** color.

■ say *noo-trul*

never

adverb

not ever.

I've **never** been here before.

new

adjective

1 recently made, or unused.



I bought a **new** shirt today.

2 unfamiliar or recently changed.

A **new** job.

■ comparisons **newer** **newest**

■ opposite **old**

news

noun

information about recent events around the country or around the world.

Have you heard the **news**?

newspaper

newspapers *noun*

large sheets of paper, printed with pictures and news reports.



daily **newspapers**

next

adjective

1 coming immediately after.

The **next** day.

2 nearest.

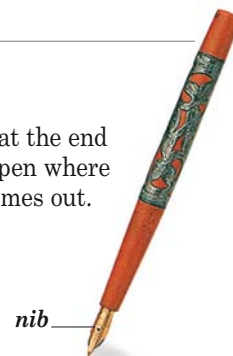
It's in the **next** room.

next *adverb*

nib

nibs *noun*

the point at the end of an ink pen where the ink comes out.



nibble

nibbles nibbling nibbled *verb*

to eat by taking quick, small bites out of something.



Nibbling some nuts.

nibble *noun*

nice

adjective

1 pleasant or delightful.

A **nice** day.

2 kind.

He is a **nice** person.

■ comparisons **nicer** **nicest**

nickel

noun

1 a 5-cent piece.

2 a strong, silvery-white metal. Nickel doesn't rust easily.



nickel ore

nickname**nicknames** *noun*

a shortened form of a name or an extra name that people may use instead of a person's full name.

*She was so smart that she earned the **nickname** "Brains."*

niece**nieces** *noun*

the daughter of a person's brother, sister, brother-in-law, or sister-in-law.

■ rhymes with **peace**

night**nights** *noun*

the time between sunset and sunrise, when the sky is dark.



■ opposite **day**

nightmare**nightmares** *noun*

an unpleasant and frightening dream.



*A **nightmare** about a ghost.*

nimble**adjective**

able to move quickly and easily.

***Nimble** fingers.*

nitrogen**noun**

a gas with no taste or smell. All living things contain nitrogen, and air is mainly made of nitrogen.

■ say ny-troh-jin

nobody**noun**

no person.

***Nobody** came to the party.*

nocturnal**adjective**

active at night.



*Bats are **nocturnal** animals.*

nod**nods nodding nodded** *verb*

to move your head up and down.

nod *noun***noise****noises** *noun*

any kind of sound, especially a sound that is too loud or unpleasant.



*He was making a lot of **noise**.*

noisy**adjective**

making loud sounds.

noisily *adverb***nonfiction****noun**

information that is written about real events, things, and people.

■ opposite **fiction**

nonsense**noun**

words that are silly or do not make sense.

noodle**noodles** *noun*

a type of pasta that is made in long, flat, narrow strips.

**noon****noun**

12 o'clock midday.

noose**nooses** *noun*

a circle of rope with a sliding knot. The loop tightens when the rope is pulled.

normal**adjective**

usual or ordinary.

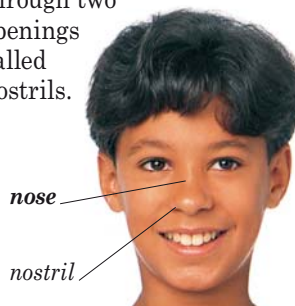
*Come at the **normal** time.*

normally *adverb***north****noun**

one of the four main compass directions. North is to your right when you are facing the setting Sun.

**northern** *adjective***nose****noses** *noun*

the part of your face that you smell and breathe with through two openings called nostrils.

**note****notes** *noun*

1 a short, written message to remind you of something, or a short letter.



2 a piece of paper money.



3 a single sound in a piece of music.

**nothing****noun**

1 not anything.

*There's **nothing** to worry about.*

2 zero.

notice**notices noticing noticed** *verb*

to see or be aware of something and pay attention to it.



*He **noticed** that he had a mark on his sleeve.*

noticeable *adjective*

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

notice

notices *noun*

1 a written or printed sign that provides information.



Notices on a board.

2 attention.

*Take no **notice** of them.*

noun

nouns *noun*

a word that is used as a name. A noun can name a person, a place, a thing, or an idea.

novel

novels *noun*

a fictional written story in book form.

nowhere

adverb

not in any place.

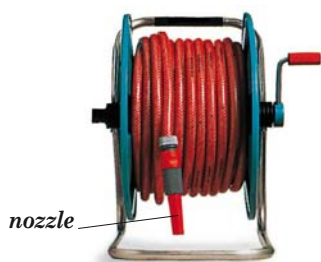


*His dog was **nowhere** to be seen.*

nozzle

nozzles *noun*

a spout attached to the open end of a pipe or hose, through which water or other liquids are sprayed.



nozzle

nuclear energy

noun

energy that is released by splitting the center, or nucleus, of particular atoms.

■ say **noo-klee-ur**

nude

adjective

with no clothes on.

nudge

nudges nudging nudged *verb*

to push or poke someone gently to draw their attention to something.



nudge *noun*

nugget

nuggets *noun*

a lump of something, usually a mineral.

*A gold **nugget**.*



nuisance

nuisances *noun*

an annoying person or thing.



*The cat was being a **nuisance**.*

■ say **noo-suhns**

numb

adjective

unable to feel anything.

*His fingers were **numb** with cold.*

■ say **num**

number

numbers *noun*

a figure used in counting that shows the quantity or total of something.

848

*848 is a three-figure **number**.*

numeral

numerals *noun*

a symbol that stands for a number.

VI is the Roman numeral for 6.

VI

numerous

adjective

very many.

*Too **numerous** to count.*

nun

nuns *noun*

a woman who lives in a religious community.

nurse

nurses *noun*

a person who is trained to care for and treat sick people, usually in a hospital.



nursery

nurseries *noun*

1 a room or building where young children are looked after.



nut

nuts *noun*

1 a tree fruit that consists of a seed, or kernel, surrounded by a hard shell.



almond

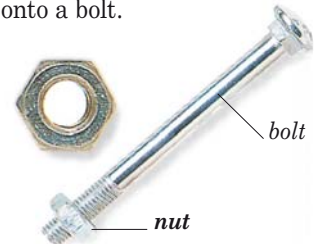
kernel



brazil nut

kernel

2 a small piece of metal with a hole in it that is screwed onto a bolt.



bolt

nut

nutmeg

nutmegs *noun*

the hard seed of the tropical, evergreen nutmeg tree. Nutmegs can be used as a spice in cooking.



nutrient

nutrients *noun*

a part of a food that gives living things what they need to be healthy or to grow.

2 a place where trees and plants are grown and sold.





oak

oaks *noun*

a large deciduous tree that has fruit called acorns. Oak wood is often used for making furniture (see **tree** on page 223).



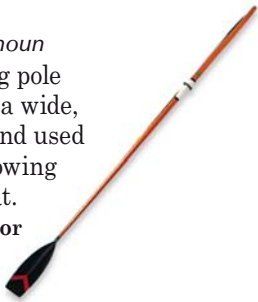
oak leaf

oar

oars *noun*

a long pole with a wide, flat end used for rowing a boat.

■ say **or**



oasis

oases *noun*

a place in the desert where there is water and where plants and trees can grow.



■ say oh-ay-sis

oats

oats *noun*

a type of cereal crop grown on farms. Oats are used to make food and to feed cattle, horses, and other animals.



obey

obeys obeying obeyed *verb*

to do something that someone tells or orders you to do.



*She taught the dog to **obey** her commands.*

■ opposite **disobey**
obedient *adjective*

object

objects *noun*

anything you can see or touch that isn't alive.

■ say ob-jekt

object

objects objecting objected *verb*

to dislike or disagree with something.

*He **objected** to people dropping litter in the street.*

■ say ub-jekt

oblong

oblong *adjective*

longer than it is wide, with sides nearly parallel.



*An **oblong** box.*

oblong *noun*

observatory

observatories *noun*

a building from which people observe stars, the planets, and the weather, using powerful telescopes.



observe

observes observing observed *verb*

to watch something.

observation *noun*

obstacle

obstacles *noun*

a thing that blocks your way.

*He had to jump over 10 **obstacles** to win the race.*

obstinate

obstinate *adjective*

difficult to persuade.



*He was very **obstinate** and refused to pick up his room.*

obstinately *adverb*

obstruct

obstructs obstructing obstructed *verb*

to block or to prevent something or someone from passing.

*She **obstructed** his path.*

obstruction *noun*



obvious

obvious *adjective*

easy to see or understand.

■ say ob-vee-us

obviously *adverb*

occasion

occasions *noun*

1 a special event.



*The park opening was a grand **occasion**.*

2 a time when something happens.

*I have flown in an airplane on two **occasions**.*

occupation

occupations *noun*

the work that someone does to earn a living.

occupy

occupies occupying occupied *verb*

1 to be busy.

*I was **occupied** with my book when the doorbell rang.*

2 to take up a space or live in a place.

*The company **occupied** the top two floors of the building.*

3 to control a place by force.

*The army **occupied** the city.*

occur

occurs occurring occurred *verb*

1 to happen or exist.

*When did the problem **occur**?*

2 to come into your mind.

*That never **occurred** to me.*

ocean**oceans** *noun*

a very large area of sea, usually separating continents.

*Pacific Ocean***octagon****octagons** *noun*

a flat shape with eight straight sides (see **shape** on page 182).

octopus**octopuses** or **octopi** *noun*

a sea animal that does not have a backbone. Octopuses have eight arms, which they use for catching crabs, shellfish, and fish. They have good eyesight and are thought to have the ability to learn things.

**odd***adjective*

1 strange or unusual.

*That's a very **odd** thing to do!*

■ comparisons **odder** **oddest**

2 not belonging to a pair or a set of things.



*Wearing **odd** socks.*

3 any number that cannot be divided exactly by two.

■ opposite **even**

odor**odors** *noun*

a strong smell.



*There was a strange **odor** coming from the garbage.*

■ say **oh**-der

offend**offends** **offending** **offended** *verb*

1 to upset or annoy someone.

offensive *adjective*

2 to break a law.

offer**offers** **offering** **offered** *verb*

to ask someone if they would like something, or if you can do something for them.



*He **offered** her some grapes.*

offer *noun***office****offices** *noun*

a place where people organize and run a business.

official*adjective*

properly approved by someone in charge.

■ say uh-fish-al

officially *adverb***often***adverb*

many times.

*I **often** go to school by bus.*

oil*noun*

1 a thick liquid that occurs naturally underground.

Oil is used to make products such as fuel and plastics.

2 a greasy substance that is found in the seeds and fruits of some plants. This type of oil is often used for cooking.



oily *adjective* *Sunflower oil.*

oil rig**oil rigs** *noun*

a structure and machinery used for drilling into the ground in search of oil and gas. Some oil rigs are used at sea, while others are used on land.

**oil slick****oil slicks** *noun*

a patch of oil, usually spilled accidentally, that floats on the surface of the sea.

oil tanker**oil tankers** *noun*

a ship that transports huge amounts of oil.

**ointment****ointments** *noun*

a substance that you put on your skin or on a wound to make it better.

**old***adjective*

1 having been in use for a long time.



*An **old** teddy bear.*

■ opposite **new**

2 having existed for a long time.

■ opposite **young**

■ comparisons **older** **oldest**

olive**olives** *noun*

a small, oval fruit that grows in countries near the Mediterranean Sea. Olives are eaten in salads and crushed to make olive oil.

Olympic Games*noun*

a sporting competition for athletes from countries all over the world that is held every four years.

omit**omits** **omitting** **omitted** *verb*

to leave something out, or not to do something.

*His name was **omitted** from the list.*

onion**onions** *noun*

a small, round root vegetable with a strong taste. Onions have a thin, papery skin with many layers inside.



only*adjective*

without any others.
*He's the **only** person wearing green.*

only*adverb*

1 just.



*There were **only** a few beads left in the box.*
 2 no more than.
***Only** five of us went to the park.*

open*adjective*

1 not closed or shut, so that people or things can go in and out.



***Open** car doors.*

■ opposite **shut**

2 with plenty of space, or not closed in.
***Open** fields.*

opera*operas noun*

a musical play where the words are sung instead of spoken.



opera singer

operate*operates operating operated verb*

1 to work a piece of machinery.



*You must be careful when **operating** machinery.*
 2 to perform surgery in a hospital.



operating adjective
operation noun

opinion*opinions noun*

a person's belief or judgment about something.

*Who is the best football player, in your **opinion**?*

opponent*opponents noun*

someone who is on the opposite side in a fight or competition.



*Chess **opponents**.*

opportunity*opportunities noun*

a chance, or a suitable time to do something.
*He had the **opportunity** to go to Europe for a year.*

oppose

opposes opposing opposed verb
 to argue or fight against someone or something.
*They **opposed** the decision to close the park.*
opposition noun

opposite*adjective*

1 on the other side.



*He saw his friend on the **opposite** side of the river.*
 2 completely different.
*Tall is the **opposite** of short.*
opposite noun

optician*opticians noun*

a person whose job is to test peoples' sight and to sell eyeglasses and contact lenses.

■ say op-tish-un

optimistic*adjective*

expecting or hoping that things will go well.

***Optimistic** about the future.*

■ opposite **pessimistic**
optimism noun

option*options noun*

a choice.

*You have several **options**: you can travel by car, train, or plane.*

optional adjective

orange*oranges noun*

1 a color made by mixing red and yellow together.

**orangutan***orangutans noun*

a large ape that lives in tropical forests in Southeast Asia. Orangutans eat mainly fruit, but also eat leaves, bark, and birds' eggs. They live in nests called platforms, which they build in trees.



■ say or-rang-a-tang

orbit*orbits orbiting orbited verb*

to move around a planet, a moon, or the Sun in space.
*The Earth **orbits** the Sun.*

orbit noun

orchard*orchards noun*

an area of land where fruit trees are grown.



*They were picking apples in the **orchard**.*

2 a juicy fruit with a tough skin.



orchestra

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

orchestra

orchestras *noun*
a large group of musicians who play together.
■ say or-kes-tra



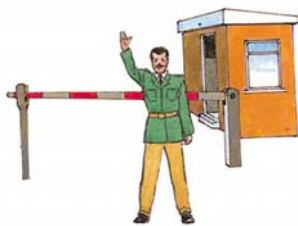
orchid

orchids *noun*
a type of plant with flowers that are an unusual shape.
■ say or-kid



order

orders *noun*
1 an instruction telling someone to do something.



He gave them orders to stop.
2 a request for something in a store or restaurant.



order *verb*
3 a way that things are placed or arranged.
Alphabetical order.
4 a peaceful, lawful state.
Law and order.

ordinary

adjective
not different or unusual in any way.



His sandwich was fairly ordinary, but she had a special one.

organ

organs *noun*
1 a musical instrument with a keyboard and large air pipes. The pipes make a noise when air is forced into them.
2 a part inside your body that does a particular job. Your heart is an organ.

organism

organisms *noun*
any living animal or plant.

organization

organizations *noun*
a group of people with common goals or business.

organize

organizes organizing organized *verb*
to arrange or plan something.



Organizing work into folders.
organization *noun*

origin

origins *noun*
the beginning of something, or where something or someone comes from.
The pot was of Roman origin.
■ say o-rij-in

original

adjective
earliest or first.
An original design.
■ say or-rij-in-nal

ornament

ornaments *noun*
an object that is used as a decoration.

orphan

orphans *noun*
someone whose parents have died.
■ say or-fan

ostrich

ostriches *noun*
a tall bird from Africa that can run very fast, but cannot fly. Ostriches live in dry, open countryside and eat plants, fruit, insects, and small animals.



other

adjective
the remaining one, usually of two.



She tried on the other hat.

ought

verb
to do something because it is necessary or should be done.
You ought to be in bed.
■ say awt
■ always used with another verb

out

adverb
1 away from a place or not in a place.



The bird pulled the worm out of the ground.
2 into view.
The Sun came out from behind the cloud.

■ opposite in
3 no longer lit.
Blow the candle out.

outcome

outcomes *noun*
the result of something.
What was the outcome of the football game?

outdoors

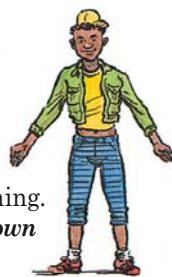
adverb
not inside a building.
Shall we eat outdoors today?
■ opposite indoors

outfit

outfits *noun*
a set of clothes worn for a particular occasion.

outgrow

outgrows outgrowing outgrew outgrown *verb*
to grow too big for something.
He had outgrown his clothes.



outline

outlines *noun*
a line that shows the shape of something.
Outline of a leaf.



outside

outsides *noun*
a part of something that faces out.
They painted the outside of the house green.
outside *adverb*

oval**ovals** *noun*

a flat, round shape
like a zero.

oval *adjective***oven****ovens** *noun*

a space for cooking food,
heating, or drying things,
usually inside a stove.

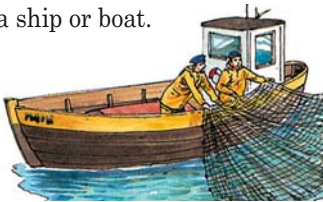
over**over** *preposition*

above or across.

*She threw the ball **over**
the wall.*

overboard**overboard** *adverb*

over the side of
a ship or boat.



*The fishermen threw their
nets **overboard**.*

overgrown**overgrown** *adjective*

covered in plants that have
been left to grow wild.
*An **overgrown** garden.*

overhear**overhears overhearing overheard** *verb*

to hear people talking about
things accidentally.

overlap**overlaps overlapping overlapped** *verb*

to cover the edge
of something.

*Fish scales **overlap** each other.*

overtake**overtakes overtaking overtaken overtook** *verb*

to catch up with and pass by.
*The car **overtook** the truck.*

owe**owes owing owed** *verb*

to have to pay back money
or something else you
have borrowed.
*You **owe** me \$5.*

owl**owls** *noun*

a nocturnal
bird that
hunts for
mice and other
small animals. Owls have
good hearing and can see
well in the dark. They can
turn their heads around to
see behind them.

**own****owns owning owned** *verb*

to have something that
belongs to you.

ox**oxen** *noun*

a bull used for carrying or
pulling things.

*A zebu is a type of **ox**.*

oxygen**oxygen** *noun*

a gas found in air and water.
You cannot see, smell, or
taste oxygen. All living
things need oxygen in order
to live.

■ say **ox**-i-jen

oyster**oysters** *noun*

a shellfish that
lives in shallow
water. Oysters
feed on tiny
bits of food
that they
filter through
the edge of their shells.

**ozone layer****ozone layer** *noun*

a layer of ozone gas in
the Earth's atmosphere that
protects the Earth from the
more harmful rays of the Sun.

Pp

pack**packs packing packed** *verb*

to put things
into a
suitcase,
box, or
other
container.



■ opposite **unpack**

2 to fit in as much as possible.
*The hall was **packed**
with people.*

pack**packs** *noun*

1 a bundle that you carry.
2 a group of similar animals
or objects.

***Pack** of cards.*

package**packages** *noun*

a wrapped parcel or bundle.

pad**pads** *noun*

1 a pile of sheets of paper
joined at one end.
2 a thick piece of soft material.
3 the soft, fleshy parts on
an animal's paw.
4 a place where helicopters
land and take off.

**paddle****paddles** *noun*

a pole with a flat blade at
one or both ends. You hold
the paddle and use it to move
a boat or canoe through
water (see **boat** on page 31).

paddle**paddles paddling paddled** *verb*

1 to move a boat through
water using a paddle.



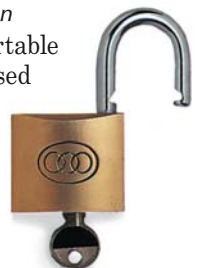
2 to walk around in
shallow water.

paddock**paddocks** *noun*

a fenced area of grass, often
where animals are kept.

padlock**padlocks** *noun*

a type of portable
lock often used
on gates.

**page****pages** *noun*

one side of a single piece of
paper forming part of a book,
newspaper, or magazine.

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

paid

paid

from the verb **to pay**
I paid for the movie tickets.

pail

pails *noun*
a bucket, usually made of wood or metal.

pain

pains *noun*
suffering caused by an injury, disease, or sadness.
painful *adjective*

paint

paints *noun*
a colored liquid used for decorating or for making pictures.



paintbrush

paint

paints painting painted *verb*
to cover a surface with color, either for decoration or to create a picture.



painting

paintings *noun*
a painted picture.

pair

pairs *noun*
a set of two things that match each other, or belong together.
A pair of socks.

palace

palaces *noun*
a large, grand home belonging to an important person.

pale

adjective
of faint color, almost white.
He painted the hall pale blue.
■ comparisons **paler palest**

palm

palms *noun*
1 the flat, middle part on the inside of your hand.



2 a tree without branches that grows in hot regions. Palms have long leaves that grow from the top of the trunk (see **tree** on page 223).



pan

pans *noun*
a metal container with a handle, used for cooking.

pancake

pancakes *noun*
a flat, fried cake made of eggs, flour, and milk.

panda

pandas *noun*
a large, bearlike mammal that lives in the mountain forests of China. Pandas mainly eat bamboo shoots, but sometimes eat other plants and small animals.



panic

panics panicking panicked *verb*
to lose control suddenly because you are frightened or do not know what to do.
The chickens panicked when they saw the fox.
panic *noun*



pant

pants panting panted *verb*
to breathe quickly through your mouth because you are hot or out of breath.

panther

panthers *noun*
a black leopard.



pantomime

pantomimes *noun*
a traditional children's play with music, songs, and dancing.

paper

papers *noun*
a material made from wood, and mainly used for writing, printing, and drawing on.



parachute

parachutes *noun*
an apparatus made of material that helps people and objects fall to the ground safely from an aircraft.



■ say **pair-uh-shoot**

parade

parades *noun*
a procession of people, animals, or vehicles, either for display or inspection.

paragraph

paragraphs *noun*
a section in a piece of writing. Paragraphs start on a new line.

parallel

adjective
being side by side and at the same distance from each other.



parallel lines

paralyze

paralyzes paralyzing paralyzed *verb*
to be unable to move a part of the body because of an injury or disease.
paralysis *noun*

parcel

parcels *noun*
an object wrapped up with paper.



parent

parents *noun*
a father or mother.

park

parks *noun*
an area of grass and trees that the public may use.

park

parks parking parked *verb*
to drive a vehicle into a position where it can be left.

parliament

parliaments *noun*
a group of people who have been elected to govern and make the laws of their nation.
■ say **par-luh-ment**

parrot

parrots *noun*
a large bird that lives in tropical forests and eats fruit and seeds. Parrots are often kept as pets. In the wild, parrots live in large flocks.

**part**

parts *noun*
1 a piece of something.



The **parts** of an electric guitar.
2 a role in a play.



She played the **part** of the queen in the play.

particular

adjective
1 a specific one.
Which particular one do you mean?
2 special, or careful.
Take particular care of that!

partner

partners *noun*
one of a pair of people who do something together, such as dancing or playing a game.
A business partner.

party

parties *noun*
1 a group of people invited to celebrate a special occasion.
2 an organized group of people who have the same political beliefs.

pass

passes passing passed *verb*
1 to go by someone or something.
2 to give something to someone with your hand.



He **passed** the bowl to her.
3 to be successful in an examination or test.

passenger

passengers *noun*
someone traveling in or on a vehicle that is controlled by another person. *motorcycle passenger*

**passport**

passports *noun*
an official certificate that you need for traveling to other countries.

past

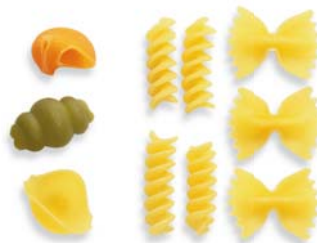
noun
the time before now.
past *adjective*

past

adverb
by or beyond.
He walked past the store.

pasta

noun
an Italian food, usually made from wheat flour and water.



Different shapes of pasta.

paste

pastes *noun*
1 a soft, moist, and usually sticky substance.
2 a type of glue made of flour and water.

pasteurize

pasteurizes pasteurizing pasteurized *verb*
to heat and then cool something to kill the bacteria in it. Milk is usually pasteurized.
■ say **past-yoor-ize**

pastry

pastries *noun*
a dough made of flour, water, and fat that is baked to make small cakes called pastries, or shells for pies.



cheese pastries

pasture

pastures *noun*
a field of grass where animals graze.

patch

patches *noun*
1 a small piece of material that is placed over a hole to repair it.



2 a small area of something.
A patch of grass.

path

paths *noun*
a narrow track for walking along, or a route.

**patient**

adjective
able to wait calmly.
■ say **pay-shent**
patience *noun*

patient

patients *noun*
a person being treated by a doctor, nurse, or dentist.

**patrol**

patrols patrolling patrolled *verb*
to guard a place by moving around it and checking it regularly.
patrol *noun*

pattern

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

pattern

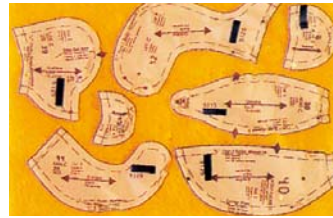
patterns *noun*

1 a decorative shape or design.



patterned *adjective*

2 a guide for making things, such as toys or clothes.



teddy bear pattern

pause

pauses pausing paused *verb*

to stop what you are doing for a short time.

■ say **pawz**
pause *noun*

pave

paves paving paved *verb*

to cover a road with stone or concrete to make it smooth.

paw

paws *noun*

a soft, padded animal foot with claws or nails.



cat's paw

pay

pays paying paid *verb*

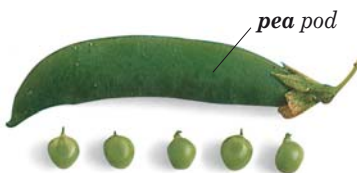
to give money in return for something.

payment *noun*

pea

peas *noun*

a small, round, sweet-tasting vegetable that grows in a pod.



pea pod

peace

noun

a period of quietness and calm.

peaceful *adjective*

peach

peaches *noun*

a round fruit with a velvety skin and a large pit inside.



peacock

peacocks *noun*

a large bird that is also called a peafowl. Peacocks live in forests in Africa and India and eat insects, grains, plants, and small animals. The males are known for their beautiful tail feathers (see **bird** on page 28).

peak

peaks *noun*

the pointed top of a mountain.

peanut

peanuts *noun*

a small, edible nut that grows in pods under the ground.



pear

pears *noun*

a pale green or brown fruit with a thin skin, pale, juicy flesh, and pits.



■ rhymes with **hair**

pearl

pearls *noun*

a smooth, shiny, rounded object that grows inside an oyster. Pearls are often used for making jewelry.



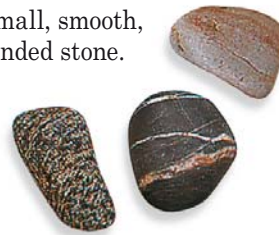
pearl

■ say **purl**

pebble

pebbles *noun*

a small, smooth, rounded stone.



peck

pecks pecking pecked *verb*

to bite or strike with a beak.



The bird pecked at the food.

peculiar

adjective

strange, odd, or unusual.

pedal

pedals *noun*

a lever that you work with your foot to move or control something (see **transportation** on page 221).

pedestrian

pedestrians *noun*

a person traveling on foot.

peel

peels peeling peeled *verb*

to remove or strip something off.



Peeling a banana.

peep

peeps peeping peeped *verb*

to look quickly and secretly at something or someone.



peer

peers peering peered *verb*

to look closely at something or someone.

peg

pegs *noun*

a hook on the wall for hanging things on.

He hung his coat on the peg.

pelican

pelicans *noun*

a large bird that lives in or near water in warm regions. It has a pouch beneath its bill that it uses to catch and hold fish.



pen

pens *noun*

1 a tool filled with ink, used for writing.



2 a small area with a fence for keeping animals in.
*A cattle **pen**.*

penalty

penalties *noun*

a fine or a punishment for breaking a law or rule, or for breaking a rule during a sports game.

*The referee gave a **penalty** to our team.*

pencil

pencils *noun*

a tool with an erasable material inside, used for writing and drawing.



penguin

penguins *noun*

a large, fish-eating seabird found in the cold seas of the southern hemisphere. Penguins cannot fly, but are good underwater swimmers (see **bird** on page 28).

penknife

penknives *noun*

a small knife that folds into a case.



pentagon

pentagons *noun*

a flat shape with five sides of equal length (see **shape** on page 182).

people

noun

1 human beings in general.
2 members of a particular race, culture, or nation.

pepper

peppers *noun*

1 the dried berries of the pepper plant used to flavor foods.



peppercorns **ground pepper**

2 a bright green, yellow, orange, or red vegetable (see **vegetable** on page 233).

percent

noun

a fraction of a whole written as part of 100. Fifty percent means 50 parts of 100. Percent is also written as percentage. The sign for percent is “%.”

27%

27% (**percent**) of 100 is 27.

perch

perches **perching** **perched** *verb*

to sit on a branch or other place like a bird.



Perching on a branch.

perch *noun*

perfect

adjective

having nothing wrong, or just right.

perfectly *adverb*

perform

performs **performing** **performed** *verb*

to put on a show for other people.

Performing in the street.

performance *noun*

perfume

perfumes *noun*

1 a sweet-smelling liquid that you put on your skin.



2 any sweet or pleasant smell.

perhaps

adverb

maybe or possibly.

perimeter

perimeters *noun*

the outer edge or boundary of something.

■ say puh-rim-i-ter

period

periods *noun*

a length or portion of time.

*A fortnight is a **period** of two weeks.*

permanent

adjective

lasting a long time or forever.

*A **permanent** job.*

■ opposite **temporary**

permission

noun

the act of allowing someone to do something.



*The teacher gave him **permission** to leave the room.*

permit *verb*

perpendicular

adjective

crossing at or forming a right angle.

■ say pur-pen-dik-yuh-lur

person

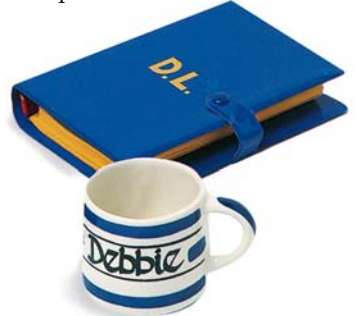
persons or **people** *noun*

a human being.

personal

adjective

belonging to, or meant for one person.



Personal belongings.

personality

personalities *noun*

1 your character or the kind of person you are.

*My sister has a friendly **personality**.*

2 someone famous.

*A sports **personality**.*

persuade

persuades **persuading** **persuaded** *verb*

to make someone believe or do something by giving good reasons.

*She **persuaded** me to go skiing with her.*

persuasion *noun*

■ say pur-swade

pest

pests *noun*

an insect or animal that is harmful or a nuisance.



Colorado beetle

pet

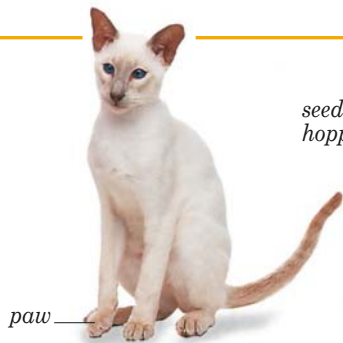
pet

pets *noun*

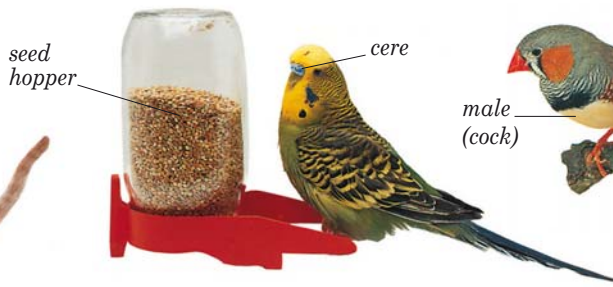
a tame animal that is kept because it is loved rather than because it is useful. Pets are often kept in the home.



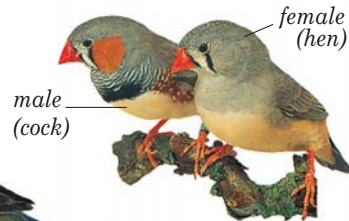
Jack Russell puppy



Siamese cat



green budgerigar



zebra finches

identity tag



giant Flemish rabbit



Abyssinian guinea pig



Peruvian guinea pig



grooming brush



Manx cat



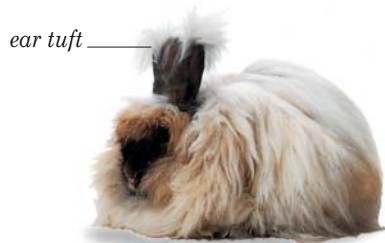
golden retriever



Persian cat



water bottle



Angora rabbit



self golden guinea pig



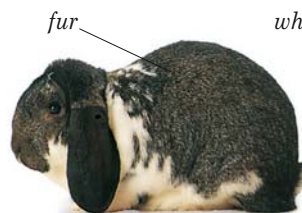
fox terrier



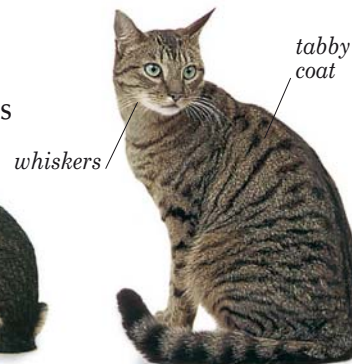
whippet



clipping scissors



lop-eared French rabbit



shorthaired cat

petal**petals** *noun*

the colored outer parts of a flower that are not green (see **plant** on page 151).

petroleum**petroleum** *noun*

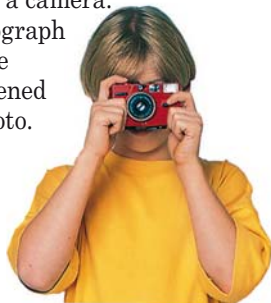
a natural liquid that can be made into gasoline.

photocopy**photocopies** *noun*

an exact copy of words or pictures made by a machine.

**photocopy** *verb***photograph****photographs** *noun*

a picture made using a camera. Photograph can be shortened to photo.

Taking a **photograph**.**photographer****photographers** *noun*

a person who takes photographs.

physical**physical** *adjective*

to do with the body.

Physical exercise.

■ say fiz-i-kul

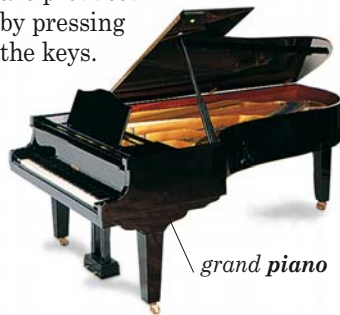
pianist**pianists** *noun*

a person who plays the piano.

■ say pee-uh-nist

piano**pianos** *noun*

a large, stringed, musical instrument with black and white keys. Different musical notes are produced by pressing the keys.

*grand piano***pick****picks picking picked** *verb*

1 to choose something.

She asked him to **pick** a card.

2 to remove a flower, fruit, or leaf from a plant.



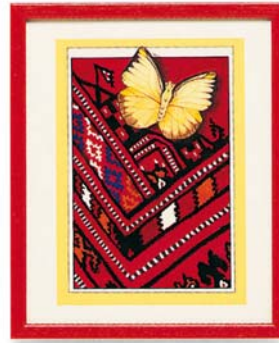
Picking a flower.

picnic**picnics** *noun*

a meal that is eaten in the open air, away from home.

**picnic** *verb***picture****pictures** *noun*

an image of something, such as a painting or a photograph.

**pie****pies** *noun*

a pastry case filled with vegetables, meat, fish, or fruit and baked in an oven.

*apple pie***piece****pieces** *noun*

a bit or a part of something.

A **piece** of cheese.**pier****piers** *noun*

a long platform built out into the sea for people to walk along or to tie boats to.

pig**pigs** *noun*

an animal with a blunt snout and a curly tail that is kept on farms to provide meat, such as pork, ham, and bacon.

*sow (female pig)**piglets***pigeon****pigeons** *noun*

a bird that is common in both town and countryside. Pigeons mainly eat berries, fruits, and seeds. Some pigeons can be trained to deliver messages.



■ say pij-in

pigment**pigments** *noun*

1 a colored powder that is mixed with other substances to make paint.

*windsor red**cadmium yellow*

2 the substance that gives coloring to the skin of animals and vegetables.

pile**piles** *noun*

a group of things resting or lying one on top of the other.

**pill****pills** *noun*

a small piece of medicine that is swallowed whole.

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

pillow

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

pillow

pillows *noun*

a soft pad for resting your head on in bed.



pilot

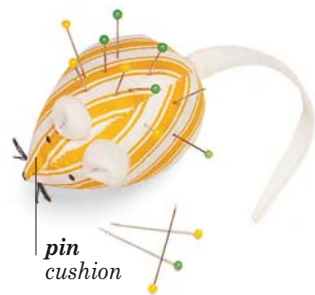
pilots *noun*

a person who controls and flies an aircraft.

pin

pins *noun*

a small piece of metal with a sharp point at one end, used to fasten pieces of cloth together.



pinch

pinches pinching pinched *verb*

to squeeze someone's skin between your finger and thumb.

pine

pin *noun*

an evergreen tree that has needle-shaped leaves and produces cones.

Arolla pine



pineapple

pineapples *noun*

a tropical fruit with a tough, scaly skin and a sprout of spiky, green leaves at the top (see **fruit** on page 85).

pink

noun

a color made by mixing red and white together.



pipe

pipes *noun*

a tube through which liquids and gases can flow.



pipeline

pirate

pirates *noun*

someone who attacks and robs ships or boats at sea.



pit

pits *noun*

1 a deep hole in the ground.
2 a coal mine.

pitch

itches *noun*

1 a throw of a ball, or the throw to a batter in baseball.
2 the highness or lowness of a musical note, musical instrument, or a human voice.

itch *verb*

pitiful

adjective

making you feel sad or full of pity.
A pitiful sight.

pity

noun

a feeling of sadness for someone because they are unhappy or in pain.

pity *verb*

pizza

pizzas *noun*

a round, flat piece of dough with tomato, cheese, and other foods on top that is baked in an oven.



■ say peet-suh

place

places *noun*

1 a particular area.
2 a position in a competition or race.



They won the first, second, and third places in the race.

place

places placing placed *verb*

to put something in a position.

He placed the vase in the center of the table.

plain

adjective

1 ordinary, or not fancy.
Her dress was very plain.
2 understandable or clear.
His meaning was plain.

plain

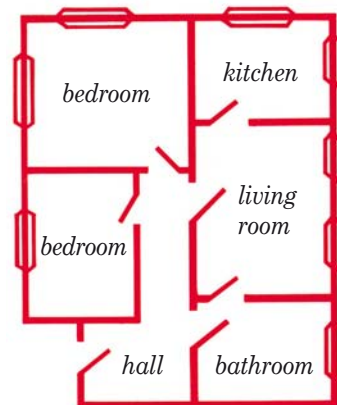
plains *noun*

a large area of flat land.

plan

plans *noun*

a map or drawing of an area, such as a room, building, or town.



A plan of an apartment.

plan

plans planning planned *verb*

to decide how you are going to do something.

plan *noun*

planet

planets *noun*

one of the huge spheres of rock and gas that revolve around the Sun. The eight planets in our solar system are Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune (see **universe** on page 229).

plant

plants planting planted *verb*

to put a seed, bulb, or plant into the soil so that it will grow.

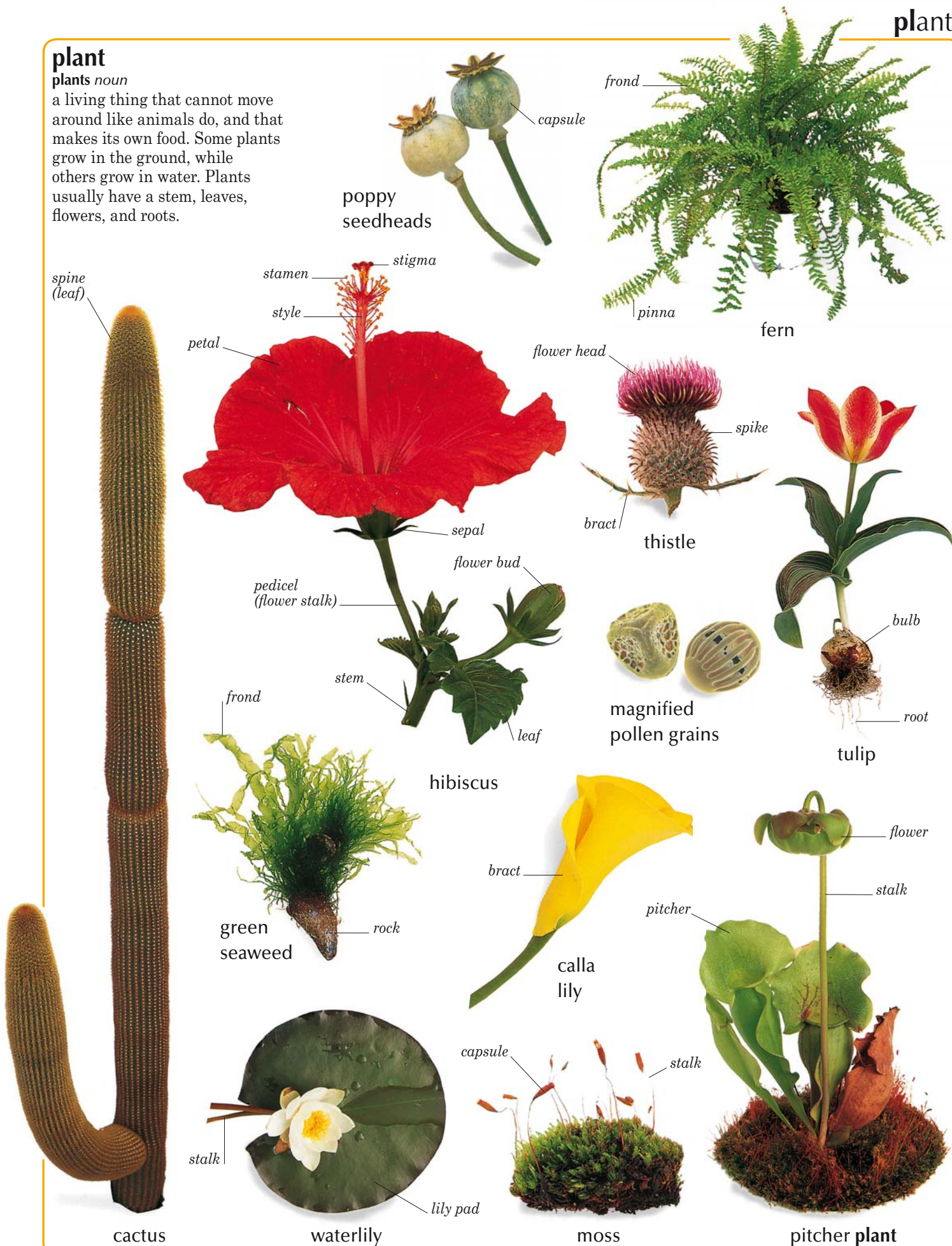


Planting a window box.

plant

plants noun

a living thing that cannot move around like animals do, and that makes its own food. Some plants grow in the ground, while others grow in water. Plants usually have a stem, leaves, flowers, and roots.



a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

plaster

plaster

plasters *noun*

a powder mixed with water that is spread on walls and ceilings to make them smooth.

plastic

plastics *noun*

a light, manufactured material made from chemicals. Many types of plastic can be heated up and molded into different shapes and products.



plastic duck

plate

plates *noun*

a flat dish that is used for serving food on.



dinner plate

plateau

plateaus or **plateaux** *noun*

a high, wide, flat area of ground.

■ say **pla-toh**

platform

platforms *noun*

1 the flat, raised area at a train station where people get on and off trains.

2 a flat, raised area in a hall where speakers or performers stand so they can be seen.



platypus

platypuses or **platypi** *noun*

an Australian mammal with a bill like a duck's, webbed feet, and a long, flat tail. Platypuses live in water and, unusually for a mammal, lay eggs. They eat plants, worms, insects, and water animals.

■ say **plat-uh-pus**

play

plays **playing** **played**

verb

1 to take part in a game, usually with other people.



Playing with a balloon.

2 to make music on a musical instrument.



Playing an accordion.

3 to act a part.

She played the fairy.

play *noun*

pleasant

adjective

enjoyable or well-liked.

A pleasant evening.

■ opposite **unpleasant**

please

interjection

a word used when you ask for something politely.

pleasure

pleasures *noun*

enjoyment or satisfaction.

■ say **plezh-ur**

pleat

pleats *noun*

a fold that is pressed or sewn into cloth.



pleat verb

plenty

noun

a large amount of something.

Do you want some candy? I have plenty.

plentiful *adjective*

plot

plots **plotting** **plotted** *verb*

to make a secret plan.

The thieves plotted to rob the bank.

plot *noun*

plot

plots *noun*

1 the story of a book, play, or movie.

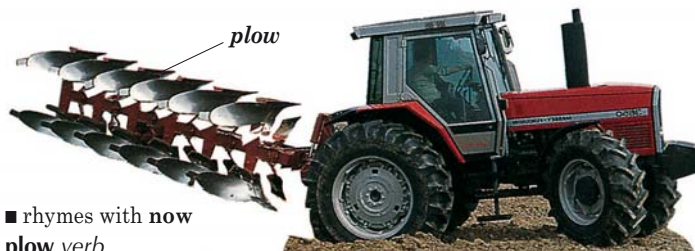
The book has a complicated plot.

2 a small piece of ground.

plow

plows *noun*

a farm tool that has large blades for cutting and turning the soil. Plows are used to prepare the soil for planting crops and are pulled by a tractor or an animal.



■ rhymes with **now**
plow *verb*

plug

plugs *noun*

1 a circular piece of plastic or other material used to keep water in a bath or sink.

2 an electrical device that connects the wire from a piece of electrical equipment to a source of electricity.

plum

plums *noun*

a fruit that grows on trees, and has a smooth, thin skin and soft, juicy flesh.



plumber

plumbers *noun*

a person who fits water and heating pipes into buildings and repairs them when they go wrong.



plunge

plunges plunging plunged *verb*
to fall or dive very quickly.



The bridge broke in two and plunged into the river.

plunge *noun*

plural

plurals *noun*

a word used to describe two or more things or people.
The plural of baby is babies.

plus

preposition
added to.

4 plus 2 equals 6.

■ opposite **minus**

**plus**

pluses *noun*

a symbol in mathematics that means add.

pocket

pockets *noun*

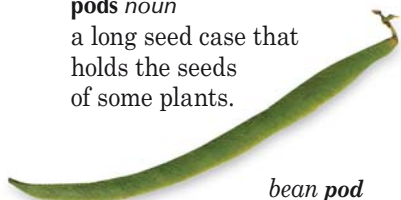
a small pouch or fold sewn into clothing or a bag where you can put your belongings.

pocket

**pod**

pods *noun*

a long seed case that holds the seeds of some plants.



bean pod

poem

poems *noun*

a piece of writing, set out in lines that sometimes rhyme. Poems describe things in a thoughtful and imaginative way.

poet

poets *noun*

a person who writes poetry.

poetry

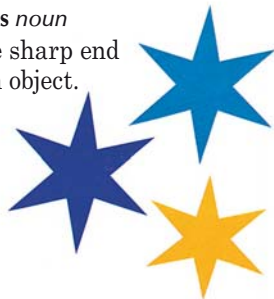
noun

a general name for poems.

point

points *noun*

1 the sharp end of an object.



Each star has six points.

2 a score in a game or competition.

How many points did you get?

3 the main goal or purpose.
What's the point of this story?

4 the level, time, or place at which something happens.

The freezing point of water is 32°F (0°C).

5 a dot.

point

points pointing pointed *verb*

to show where something is with your finger.

**poison**

poisons *noun*

a substance that can kill or harm animals or plants.

poison

arrow frog



A deadly poison can be made from this frog's skin.

poisonous *adjective*

poke

pokes poking poked *verb*

to push something with a stick, your finger, or another pointed object.



He poked the fire with a stick.

polar bear

polar bears *noun*

a large mammal that lives in Arctic regions. Polar bears eat animals such as seals and fish. Their white fur camouflages them against the snow and ice where they live.

**pole**

poles *noun*

1 a long, rounded rod made from wood, metal, or plastic.



A row of flagpoles.

police

noun

an organization that is responsible for keeping law and order and making sure that a country's laws are not broken.

polish

polishes polishing

polished *verb*

to rub something so that it shines.



Polishing shoes.

polish

polishes *noun*

a substance that is rubbed into something to make it shine.



furniture polish

polite

adjective

well-mannered and pleasant to other people.

■ opposite **rude**

politely *adverb*

2 the most northern and southern end of an imaginary line, or axis, that passes through Earth's center.

North Pole



South Pole

3 either end of a magnet.

politics

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

politics

noun

the work of government.

political *adjective*

pollen

noun

a fine, yellow powder found in the middle of flowers. Pollen is made by the male parts of a flower.

pollinate

pollinates pollinating pollinated *verb*

to transfer pollen from the male to the female parts of a plant so that a seed can grow.



*The bee **pollinated** the flower.*

pollute

pollutes polluting polluted *verb*

to make a thing or a place dirty, unclean, or harmful.

*Chemicals from the factory **polluted** the river.*

pollution *noun*

pond

ponds *noun*

an area of fresh water that is smaller than a lake.



*duck **pond***

pony

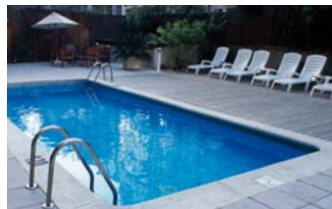
ponies *noun*

a small horse (see **horse** on page 102).

pool

pools *noun*

a small area of water, especially one that is made for people to swim in.



*swimming **pool***

poor

adjective

1 not having enough money to live on.

*The family was very **poor**.*

■ opposite **rich**

2 of low or bad quality.

The house was in

*a **poor** condition.*

3 unfortunate.

*The **poor** child was soaking wet.*

poor *noun*

popcorn

noun

a snack made by heating grains from the corn plant until they burst open and puff up.



poppy

poppies *noun*

a wild flower with delicate, petals. When the flowers die, they leave behind a round seed head (see **plant** on page 151).



popular

adjective

liked by many people.

population

populations *noun*

all the people living in a district or country.

porch

porches *noun*

a shelter built around the entrance to a building.

porcupine

porcupines *noun*

a large rodent that is covered in lots of sharp spines called quills. A porcupine can raise the quills to protect itself from its enemies. Porcupines eat bark, buds, twigs, and leaves.



pork

noun

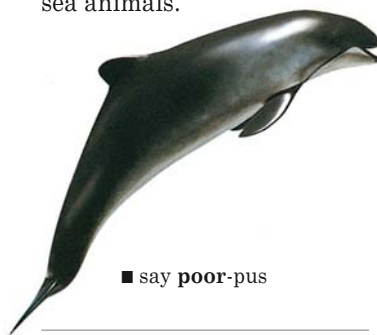
meat from a pig.

porpoise

porpoises *noun*

a sea mammal that belongs to the whale family.

Porpoises eat shrimp, fish, squid, and other sea animals.



■ say **poor**-pus

port

ports *noun*

a place on a coast or river, where ships load and unload.

portable

adjective

easily carried or moved.



***portable** DVD player*

portion

portions *noun*

a part or share of something.



*A **portion** of fisherman's pie.*

portrait

portraits *noun*

a picture of a person or animal, especially their face.



pose

poses posing posed *verb*

to arrange yourself or a thing in a particular position, especially for a painting or a photograph.

pose *noun*

position

positions *noun*

1 the way in which a person or thing is placed or arranged. *A sitting **position**.*

2 a place or location. *He found the **position** of his house on the map.*

positive

adjective
definite or certain.
■ opposite **negative**

possess

possesses possessing possessed
verb

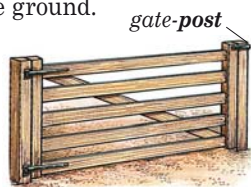
to own or have something.
possession noun

possible

adjective
able to be done or happen.
*Is it **possible** to walk there?*
■ opposite **impossible**
possibly adverb

post

noun
1 the delivery of letters and other mail, or the letters themselves.
2 an upright pole of wood, stone, or metal set in the ground.



3 the place where a person is supposed to be when working.

poster

posters noun
a large notice or picture that is displayed on a wall as an ad or for decoration.



post office

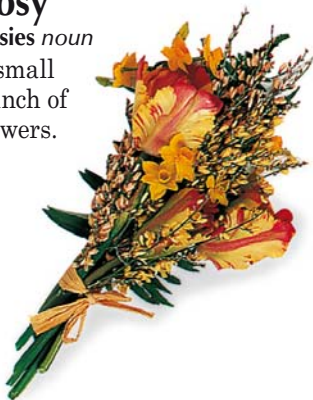
post offices noun
a place where you go to buy stamps and to send letters and packages.

postpone

postpones postponing postponed verb
to put something off until later.
*The game was **postponed** because of the rain.*

posy

posies noun
a small bunch of flowers.



pot

pots noun
a container with high sides.



potato

potatoes noun
a common root vegetable that can be boiled, roasted, fried, or baked.



pottery

noun
a general name for containers and ornaments made from clay, then baked in a kiln.
kitchen pottery



pouch

pouches noun
1 a small, open bag or sack that is used for carrying things like money.
2 a part of the body that is shaped like a bag or pocket (see **mammal** on page 124).

pounce

pounces pouncing pounced verb
to spring forward suddenly and grab hold of something.



pour

pours pouring poured verb
to tip a container up so that its contents flow out.



poverty

noun
the situation of not having enough money to live on.
*The family lived in **poverty**.*

powder

noun
a mass of very fine, dry grains of a substance.



power

powers noun
1 the ability to do something.
2 the ability to control what someone else does.
3 energy or force.



■ rhymes with **our**

practical

adjective
1 sensible and useful.
*Gloves are very **practical** in cold weather.*
■ opposite **impractical**
2 having practice at doing something.
*You need **practical** experience for this job.*

practice

practices practicing practiced verb
to do something over and over again in order to be good at it.



practice noun

praise

praise

praises praising praised *verb*
to tell someone that what they have done is very good.
praise *noun*

pray

prays praying prayed *verb*
to talk to a god, prophet, or saint.
prayer *noun*

precaution

precautions *noun*
care or action taken in advance to prevent something from happening.
*Locks are a **precaution** against theft.*
■ say pre-kaw-shun

precious

precious *adjective*
very valuable or special to someone.



*The ring was very **precious**.*
■ say presh-us

precise

precise *adjective*
exact or accurate.



*Stopwatches measure the **precise** time.*
■ say pri-sise

predict

predicts predicting predicted *verb*
to say what is going to happen in the future.
prediction *noun*

preen

preens preening preened *verb*
to clean and arrange feathers with the beak. Birds preen themselves.



prefer

prefers preferring preferred *verb*
to like something or someone better than another.



*She pointed to the pair of skates she **preferred**.*
preferable *adjective*

pregnant

pregnant *adjective*
expecting a baby.
pregnancy *noun*



prehistoric

prehistoric *adjective*
belonging to the time before any records were written.

prejudice

prejudices *noun*
a strong feeling about something, which has been formed unfairly or before all the facts are known.
■ say pre-joo-dis

prepare

prepares preparing prepared *verb*
to make something or yourself ready.



Preparing sandwiches for lunch.

preposition

prepositions *noun*
a word such as "on" that relates a noun or pronoun to another word in the sentence.
*The bird was **on** the chair in the backyard.*

prescription

prescriptions *noun*
an order for medicine written by a doctor.

present

present *noun*
1 the time now.
*The story takes place in the **present**.*
present *adjective*
2 a gift to someone.



■ say prez-unt

present

presents presenting presented *verb*
to award or give something to someone.
*The judge **presented** the rider with a cup.*
■ say pri-zent

preserve

preserves preserving preserved *verb*
1 to keep something the way it is.
2 to keep food so that it lasts.
*Fruit **preserved** in a jar.*



press

presses pressing pressed *verb*
to squeeze or push something down, often in order to flatten it.



Pressing flowers.

pretend

pretends pretending pretended *verb*
1 to try to make people believe something that isn't true.
2 to believe something for fun.



*He **pretended** to be a cowboy.*
pretence *noun*

pretty

pretty *adjective*
nice to look at.
■ comparisons prettier prettiest

prevent

prevents preventing prevented verb

to stop something from happening.

*The barrier **prevented** anyone from falling down the hole.*

prevention noun

previous

adjective

happening or existing before.
*The **previous** day.*

■ say pree-vee-us

prey

noun

creatures that are hunted and eaten by other animals.



*The owl swooped down on its **prey**.*

■ say pray
prey verb

price

prices noun

the amount of money needed to buy something.

prickly

adjective

having many little sharp points or needles.



*A **prickly** cactus.*

■ comparisons pricklier
prickliest
prick verb

priest

priests noun

a person who is trained to lead religious services.

prince / princess

princes / princesses noun

a son or daughter of a king or queen. The wife of a prince is also a princess.

■ **prince** is male and **princess** is female

principle

principles noun

a general rule, belief, or truth.
*Scientific **principles**.*

print

prints printing printed verb

1 to write the letters of words separately, rather than with linked letters.



2 to put words, pictures, or patterns onto paper, using paint or ink, and printing blocks.



*Printing a picture.
printed adjective*

printer

noun

a machine that prints on paper, usually linked to a computer.

prison

prisons noun

a secure place in which criminals are kept as punishment.

private

adjective

belonging only to one person or a few people, or not open to the public.

*My diary is **private**.*

■ say pry-vit

privately adverb

prize

prizes noun

a reward for winning something.



*The **prize** was a silver cup.*

probable

adjective

likely to happen.
probably adverb

problem

problems noun

something that is difficult to do or hard to understand.

process

processes noun

the method of making or doing something.

■ say prah-ses

procession

processions noun

a line of people or vehicles following each other.



*A **procession** of musicians.*

prod

prods prodding prodded verb

to poke or push something, often with something sharp.

produce

produces producing produced verb

1 to make something happen.

*The magician **produced** a rabbit out of his hat.*

2 to make, grow, manufacture, or create something.



*The orange trees **produced** a large crop of fruit this year.*

■ say pruh-dooos

product noun

production noun

produce

noun

things that are grown or made.



*farm **produce***

■ say pro-dooos

profession

professions noun

1 a job or occupation where special knowledge of a subject is needed.

2 all the people who do such a job.

*The medical **profession**.*

professional

adjective

1 having to do with a profession.

*He took **professional** advice.*

2 earning a living from an occupation that is not usually thought of as a job.

*A **professional** actor.*

profile

profile

profiles *noun*
the side view of a face or object.



profit

profits *noun*
the extra money made when something is sold for more than it cost to make or buy.
■ opposite loss
profitable *adjective*

program

programs *noun*
1 a television or radio show.
2 a list of planned events.
3 a small book of information about a play or concert.
*There are two pianists on the **program**.*
4 a set of instructions that tells a computer how to do something.
*This **program** sorts for me.*

progress

noun
the process of moving forward or improving.



*She made slow **progress** through the swamp.*
progress *verb*

prohibit

prohibits prohibiting prohibited *verb*
to ban or to forbid someone from doing something.



*Smoking is **prohibited**.*

project

projects *noun*
a piece of work involving research and study of a particular subject.

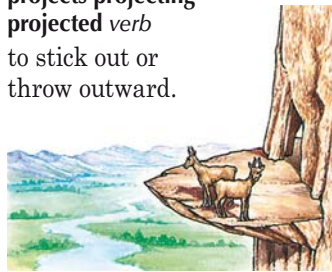


*He is doing a **project** on plants.*

■ say prah-jekt

project

projects projecting projected *verb*
to stick out or throw outward.



*The rock **projected** over the valley.*

■ say pro-jekt

promise

promises promising promised *verb*
to say and mean that you will, or will not, do something.
promise *noun*

promotion

promotions *noun*
1 a campaign to improve the sale of a product or event by advertising it.



*The **promotion** for a new yogurt.*
2 a change to a more important job or position.
promote *verb*

prompt

prompts prompting prompted *verb*
to encourage someone to do or say something.

prompt

adjective
on time, or without delay.



*A **prompt** delivery.*

pronoun

pronouns *noun*
a word such as "he" or "she" that is used in a sentence to replace a noun.
*Jane was sick today, so **she** didn't go to school.*

pronunciation

pronunciations *noun*
the way a word is said.
■ say pro-nun-see-ay-shun
pronounce *verb*

proof

noun
a thing or happening that shows something is true.



*The footprint was **proof** that someone had been there.*

propeller

propellers *noun*
a device with revolving blades. Propellers spin around to move a boat through the water, or to power an airplane through the air (see **boat** on page 31 and **transportation** on page 221).

proper

adjective
suitable and correct.



*This is the **proper** way to hit a golf ball so that it rolls along the ground.*
properly *adverb*

property

noun
1 the things that belong to a person.
2 a general name for the buildings and land owned by someone.

prosecute

prosecutes prosecuting prosecuted *verb*
to accuse someone of a crime in a court of law.
■ say pros-i-kyoot
prosecution *noun*

protect

protects protecting protected *verb*
to keep someone or something from being harmed.



*Gardening gloves **protect** your hands from thorns.*
protection *noun*

protest

protests protesting protested verb

to say very clearly that you disagree with something.



*They **protested** against the building of a new road.*

■ say **pro-test**
protest noun

proud

adjective
feeling very pleased or satisfied.



*She was **proud** of her new outfit.*

■ say **prowd**
proudly adverb

prove

proves proving proved verb
to show that something is true.

■ say **proov**

proverb

proverbs noun
a short common saying that comments on life.
*"Many hands make light work" is a **proverb**.*

provide

provides providing provided verb

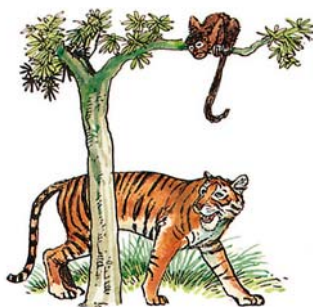
to supply something that is useful or needed.



*The runners were **provided** with drinks along the route.*

prowl

prowls prowling prowled verb
to move around quietly while searching for something.



*The tiger **prowled** around the tree.*

public

adjective
open to everybody.

publish

publishes publishing published verb
to produce and print a book, newspaper, or magazine.

puddle

puddles noun
a shallow pool of liquid on the ground.

puff

puffs noun
a small, sudden gust of smoke, air or breath.

a puff of smoke



pull

pulls pulling pulled verb
to move something with force toward you or in the same direction as you are going.

***Pulling** on a rope.*



pulley

pulleys noun
a device made of a wheel with a rope or a chain around it that is used for lifting heavy objects.



pulp

noun
the soft, inside part of a plant, particularly fruits (see **fruit** on page 85).

pulse

pulses noun
the regular sound of your blood as the heart pumps it through your body.



*Feeling her **pulse**.*

pump

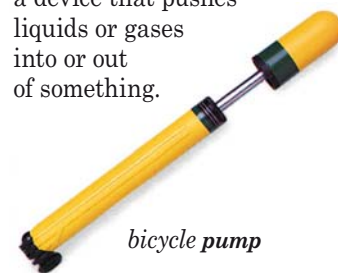
pumps pumping pumped verb
to fill or inflate something by forcing air or liquids into it.



***Pumping** up a balloon.*

pump

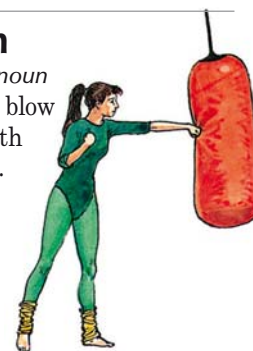
pumps noun
a device that pushes liquids or gases into or out of something.



*bicycle **pump***

punch

punches noun
1 a hard blow made with your fist.



punch verb

2 a machine that stamps holes, letters, or patterns in something.



hole punch

3 a sweet drink made by mixing fruit juices and other liquids together. Punch is usually served from a large bowl.



puncture

punctures noun
a hole or wound, often made by a sharp pointed object or instrument.
*My tire has a **puncture**.*
puncture verb

punish

punish

punishes punishing punished verb

to make someone suffer in some way for things they have done wrong.

punishment noun

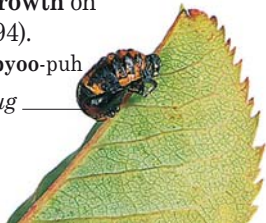
pupa

pupae noun

the stage of an insect's development when it changes from a larva to a winged insect inside a rounded case (see **growth** on page 94).

■ say pyoo-puh

ladybug —
pupa



pupil

pupils noun

1 a student at school.



2 the small, dark part at the center of your eye that expands or contracts to let in the right amount of light.

pupil



puppet

puppets noun

a doll or animal figure that is moved by pulling on its strings or by making hand movements inside it.

finger puppet



string puppet



puppy

puppies noun

a young dog (see **pet** on page 148).



purchase

purchases purchasing

purchased verb

to buy something.



■ say pur-chis

pure

adjective

clean, or not mixed with anything.

Pure gold.

■ comparisons purer purest

purple

noun

a color made by mixing red and blue together.



purpose

purposes noun

a reason for doing something, or a goal.

purr

purrs purring purred verb

to make a low, rumbling noise like a cat makes.

purse

purses noun

a small bag for carrying money and personal things.



push

pushes pushing pushed verb

to move something away from you by pressing hard against it.



He had to push the car to a garage when it broke down.

put

puts putting

put verb

to place or position something somewhere.



She put her books into her schoolbag.

puzzle

puzzles noun

1 a problem or question that it is difficult to find the answer to.

2 a game in which you have to find the answers to a problem.



puzzle

puzzles puzzling puzzled verb

1 to try to figure out something you do not understand.

2 to confuse.

The strange noises

puzzled us.

■ say puz-l

puzzling adjective

pyramid

pyramids noun

1 a solid shape with a square base and four triangular faces that meet in a point (see **shape** on page 182).

2 an ancient tomb or temple shaped like a pyramid.



The pyramids of Egypt.

■ say pir-a-mid

python

pythons noun

a large snake that is found in hot regions. Pythons kill by wrapping themselves around their prey and squeezing. They eat small mammals.

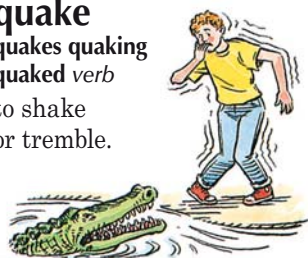


■ say pie-thon

Q q

quake

quakes quaking
quaked verb
to shake
or tremble.



He **quaked** with fear when he saw the crocodile.

■ say **kwake**

qualify

qualifies qualifying qualified
verb

to prove that you are fit
or suitable for something.
*I hope I **qualify** for the team!*

■ say **kwol-uh-fie**
qualification noun

quality

qualities noun

1 a judgment of how good
or bad something is.

*High **quality**.*

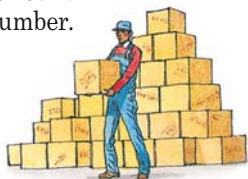
2 something that is special
about someone or something.
*She has many good **qualities**.*

■ say **kwol-i-tee**

quantity

quantities noun

an amount
or number.



A large **quantity** of crates.

■ say **kwon-ti-tee**

quarrel

quarrels quareling quareled
verb

to have an argument or
disagreement with someone.

■ say **kwor-rul**
quarrel noun

quarry

quarries noun

a place where stone, sand, or
gravel is cut out of the ground.



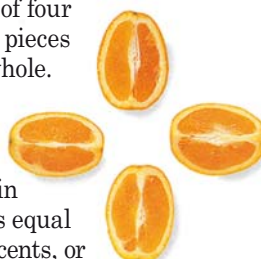
A stone **quarry**.

■ say **kwor-ee**

quarter

quarters noun

1 one of four
equal pieces
of a whole.



2 a coin
that is equal
to 25 cents, or
a quarter of a dollar.

quartz

noun

a hard mineral,
often found in
crystal form.

■ say **kworts**



quay

quays noun

an area by a harbor
where ships are loaded
and unloaded.

■ say **kee**

queen

queens noun

a female ruler of a country
or the wife of a king.

query

queries noun

a question, because you
have a doubt or problem
about something.



The teacher helped to
answer the student's **query**.

■ say **kweer-ree**
query verb

question

questions questioning
questioned verb

to ask someone for
information or an answer.

■ opposite **answer**
question noun

questionable

adjective

doubtful or suspicious.

*His reasons for leaving
so quickly were
questionable.*

quick

adjective

fast or sudden.

*A **quick** movement.*

■ comparisons **quicker**
quickest
■ opposite **slow**
quickly adverb

quiet

adjective

silent and peaceful.

■ comparisons **quieter quietest**

quill

quills noun

a large feather, especially
one that has been made
into an ink pen.

■ say **kwil**



quill
pen

quilt

quilts noun

a thick, soft cover for a bed.



patchwork quilt

quite

adverb

1 fairly.

*I am **quite** good at running.*

2 completely.

*You are **quite** right.*

quiz

quizzes noun

a game in which you are
asked questions to find out
how much you know.

quote

quotes quoting quoted verb

to repeat something that
someone else has said
or written.

quotation noun

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

Rr

rabbi

rabbis *noun*

a teacher of the Jewish religion and law.

■ say **rab-eye**

rabbit

rabbits *noun*

a small mammal with long front teeth that lives underground in burrows. Rabbits are normally active in the evening or at night. They eat grass, roots, and leaves.



race

races *noun*

1 a competition of speed.



A swimming **race**.

race *verb*

2 a group of people who share the same ancestors and may share some physical characteristics.

racial *adjective*

racket

rackets *noun*

1 a bat with strings used for playing sports such as tennis and badminton (see **sport** on page 197).

badminton racket

2 a loud, annoying noise. *He was making a racket with his drums.*



radar

radar *noun*

a device that tells you the position and speed of ships, cars, and aircraft by sending out radio waves.



An airport **radar** screen.

■ say **ray-dar**

radiator

radiators *noun*

1 a thin, metal tank with hot water flowing through it that heats a room.

2 a metal tank that allows air to cool the hot water in the engine of a vehicle.

■ say **ray-dee-ay-tor**

radio

radios *noun*

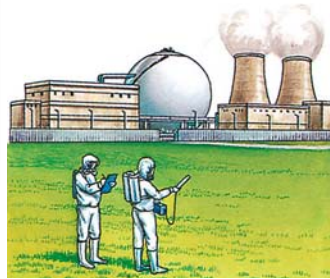
a device that sends or receives electrical signals and changes them into sound.



radioactivity

radioactivity *noun*

the energy released by the center of atoms breaking up in some substances. High amounts of radioactivity can be harmful to living things.



*They tested for **radioactivity** outside the nuclear power plant.*

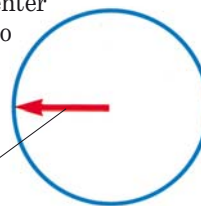
■ say **ray-dee-oh-ak-tiv-i-tee**
radioactive *adjective*

radius

radii or **radiuses** *noun*

a straight line drawn from the center of a circle to its outer edge.

radius



raft

rafts *noun*

1 a floating platform made of logs that have been tied tightly together.



rag

rags *noun*

a small, torn piece of cloth.



rage

rages *noun*

anger or uncontrolled temper. *In her **rage**, she slammed the door shut.*

raid

raids *noun*

a sudden surprise attack by a group of people. *The police made a **raid** on the house, arresting two women.*

raid *verb*

rail

rails *noun*

1 a long bar for holding on to, or for hanging clothes on. *Use the **rail** to help you climb the stairs.*

2 a long line of metal track that trains run along.



3 the railroad.

*We traveled by **rail** around Europe.*

2 a hollow mat made of rubber or plastic and filled with air that can be used as a boat.



life raft

railroad

railroads *noun*

- 1 a network of tracks that trains run on.
- 2 a transportation system that uses rail tracks, together with trains, stations, and land.

rain

rains *noun*

water that falls from the clouds in drops.

rain *verb*

rainy *adjective*



rainbow

rainbows *noun*

an arch of colors that appears in the sky when the sun shines while it's raining.



raindrop

raindrops *noun*

a single drop of rain.

rainfall

rainfall *noun*

the amount of rain that falls over a particular area.

The chart shows the annual rainfall in South America.

rain forest

rain forests *noun*

a dense, hot, wet jungle that grows in tropical areas.



rake

rakes **raking** **raked** *verb*

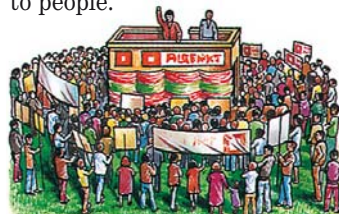
to gather up leaves into a pile or to smooth over soil.



rally

rallies *noun*

- 1 a large, public meeting held to discuss something that is important or worrying to people.



The party held a political rally in the park.

- 2 a long-distance car race that tests drivers' skills.

ram

rams *noun*

- 1 a male sheep.



- 2 a device for pushing against something with force.



They used the log as a ram to break down the door.

ram *verb*

ran

from the verb to run

- 1 *Last week, he ran a 400-meter race.*
- 2 *She ran a bookstore.*

ranch

ranches *noun*

a huge farm where cattle or other animals are reared.



rang

from the verb to ring
He rang the doorbell.

ranger

rangers *noun*

a person who looks after a forest or a wildlife park.

■ say rain-jer

rapid

rapid *adjective*

quick or swift.

rare

rare *adjective*

unusual or not common.

A rare blue morpho butterfly.

■ comparisons **rarer** **rarest**

■ opposite **common**



rascal

rascals *noun*

a mischievous person.

rash

rashes *noun*

a patch of red, itchy spots on your skin.

raspberry

rasberries *noun*

a juicy, red fruit that grows on a bush with thorns.



■ say raz-bair-ee

rat

rats *noun*

a common rodent that looks like a large mouse. Some kinds of rat eat plants, while others eat small animals. They can gnaw through stone, wood, and even metal with their strong front teeth.



rate

rates *noun*

- 1 a speed.

Ostriches can run at a rate of 30 miles (50 km) per hour.

- 2 a level of payment.

The vacation resort charges high rates for its apartments.

rather

rather

adverb

- 1 fairly or quite.
*It was **rather** hot the other day.*
2 preferably.

*She'd **rather** have fruit than cake.*



ration

rations noun

a fixed amount of something that someone is allowed.

*Food **rations**.*

■ say rash-un

ration verb

raw

adjective

1 in its natural condition, not processed or cooked.



raw carrot

2 not experienced.

*A **raw** recruit.*

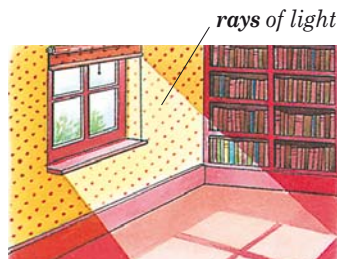
3 painful to touch.

*A **raw** wound.*

ray

rays noun

a long, narrow beam of light, heat, or other powerful force.



razor

razors noun

a device with a blade that people use to shave.



reach

reaches reaching reached verb

1 to stretch out your hand and arm to touch something.



2 to arrive at a place.

*After a long trek they **reached** the other side of the island.*

react

reacts reacting reacted verb

to say or do something in response to an event.

*He **reacted** badly to the news.*

■ say ree-akt

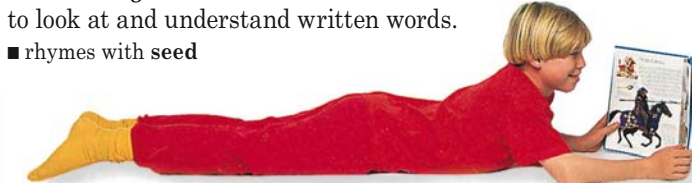
reaction noun

read

reads reading read verb

to look at and understand written words.

■ rhymes with seed



ready

adjective

prepared, or able to start.

■ say red-ee

real

adjective

actually existing, or genuine.

realize

realizes realizing realized verb

to become aware, or to understand completely.



*She did not **realize** the puddle was so deep.*

really

adverb

very, or actually.

*The trip was **really** fun.*

rear

rears rearing reared verb

1 to feed and care for young animals as they grow up.

*Our cat has **reared** 10 kittens.*

2 to rise up on the back legs.

*A **rearing***

horse.



rear

noun

the back of something, or the part that is opposite or behind the front.



*The **rear** of a car.*

rear adjective

reason

reasons noun

an explanation of why or how something has happened.

rebel

rebels noun

someone who fights against those in charge.

■ say reb-ul

rebellion noun

receipt

receipts noun

a written or printed piece of paper that shows you have received and paid for something.

■ say ri-seet

receive

receives receiving received verb

to take something given or sent to you.



*She **received** lots of presents for her birthday.*

recent

adjective

not long ago.

*A **recent** storm.*

■ say ree-sunt

recently adverb

recipe

recipes *noun*

instructions that tell you how to make and cook food, or how to make a drink.



recipe book

■ say res-uh-pee

recite

recites reciting recited *verb*
to say aloud something that you have learned by heart.

reckon

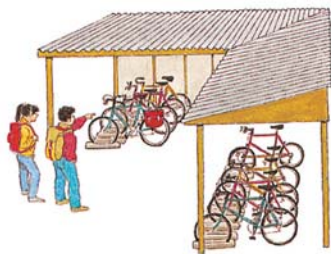
reckons reckoning reckoned *verb*

1 to suppose or think something.
*What do you **reckon** that is?*
2 to work out the amount of something.
■ say rek-un

recognize

recognizes recognizing recognized *verb*

to see someone or something and know who they are or what it is.



*He **recognized** his friend's bike because of the red bags.*
recognition *noun*

record

records recording recorded *verb*
1 to store sounds or pictures, on tape, film, record, compact disc (CD), or digital versatile video disc (DVD).
2 to write down information on paper.

■ say ree-kord

record

records *noun*

1 a round plastic disc with tiny grooves in the surface, on which sounds are recorded.
2 information that is written or printed.



*She kept a **record** of the day's events in her diary.*
3 the fastest or best performance in an activity or sport.
*They tried to beat the **record** for the number of people who can stand on a chair.*

■ say rek-urd

recorder

recorders *noun*

a small wooden or plastic wind instrument that you blow into. The air is forced out through holes, which you cover with your fingers to make different sounds.



recover

recovers recovering recovered *verb*

1 to get better after being ill.
2 to get something back.



*He **recovered** his hat from the lake.*



Recording a song.

recreation

noun

the things we like to do in our spare time, such as playing sports and having hobbies.

recruit

recruits *noun*

a new member of an organization or group.

■ say ree-kroote

rectangle

rectangles *noun*

a flat four-sided shape with four right angles in its corners (see **shape** on page 182).

recycle

recycles recycling recycled *verb*
to use things again, often by turning garbage into new products. Glass, plastics, paper, and metal can all be recycled.



*materials for **recycling***

red

noun
a color.



reduce

reduces reducing reduced *verb*
to make something smaller in size or amount.
*The store **reduced** the price of hats by half.*

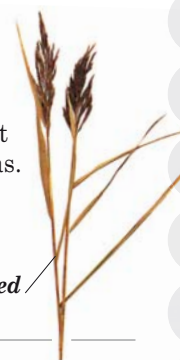
■ say re-doo
reduction *noun*

reed

reeds *noun*

a tall plant with a long, stiff, straight stem that grows in wet areas. Reeds are used to make house roofs and paper.

common reed



reef

reefs *noun*

a raised, narrow ridge of rock, sand, or coral, just above or below the surface of the sea.



coral reef

referee

referees *noun*

someone who watches over a game or contest to see that people play by the rules.

reference

adjective
providing information.
*The **reference** book was full of interesting facts.*
reference *noun*

refinery

refineries *noun*

a large factory where natural substances are processed into other products. Oil is made into gasoline at a refinery.



oil refinery

reflect

reflect

reflects reflecting reflected *verb*
 1 to throw back light, heat, or sound that has come from somewhere else.
Shiny surfaces reflect light.
 2 to give back, or show, an image of something or someone.



His face was reflected in the mirror.
reflection *noun*

refrigerator

refrigerators *noun*
 a machine that keeps food and beverages cool and fresh. A refrigerator is sometimes called a fridge for short.



refugee

refugees *noun*
 someone who leaves their home and belongings and escapes to another place, usually because he or she is in danger.
 ■ say ref-yoo-jee

refuse

refuses refusing refused *verb*
 to say that you will not do something.



He refused to give her the ball.

region

regions *noun*
 an area or district of a country.



A mountain region.
 ■ say ree-jun

regret

regrets regretting regretted *verb*
 to be sorry or sad about something that has happened.
He regretted being angry with his sister.

regular

regular *adjective*
 1 normal, or happening at certain times.
A regular bus service.
 2 even in shape or sound.



These wooden cubes are regular shapes.
 ■ opposite **irregular**
regularly *adverb*

rehearse

rehearses rehearsing rehearsed *verb*
 to practice doing something before giving a performance in public.



Rehearsing for a play.
 ■ say ree-hurs
rehearsal *noun*

reign

reigns reigning reigned *verb*
 to rule a country or region as a queen or king.
 ■ say rain
reign *noun*

rein

reins *noun*
 a long, thin, leather strap that a rider uses to control a horse (see **horse** on page 102).
 ■ say rain

reindeer

reindeer or reindeers *noun*
 a deer with large antlers that lives in cold, Arctic regions. Reindeer herds migrate great distances every summer and winter in search of plants to eat. Some reindeer are tamed and used to pull sleighs.



relative

relatives *noun*
 a member of someone's family.

relax

relaxes relaxing relaxed *verb*
 to rest and feel comfortable.



She relaxed with her favorite book.

relay

relays *noun*
 a team race in which runners take turns carrying a baton and completing parts of a course.



release

releases releasing released *verb*
 to let someone or something go free.



They released balloons in the park to celebrate the event.

reliable

reliable *adjective*
 able to be trusted.

relief

noun

1 the removal of worry, pain, or unhappiness.

*It was a **relief** when the exam was over.*

2 help given to people who need it.

■ say ri-leef

religion

religions *noun*

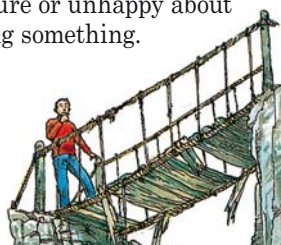
a belief in God or gods, and the way people express this belief in their life and worship.

religious *adjective*

reluctant

adjective

unsure or unhappy about doing something.



*He was **reluctant** to cross the old bridge.*

rely

relies **relying** **relied** *verb*

to depend on someone for something with complete trust.

*Young birds **rely** on their mothers for food.*

■ say re-lie

remain

remains **remaining** **remained** *verb*

1 to stay behind.

2 to be left behind.



*He **remained** there alone.*

2 to be left behind.

remains *noun*

3 to stay unchanged.

*She **remained** calm while everyone else panicked.*

remember

remembers **remembering**

remembered *verb*

to think about a place, person, object, or past event again.

*She suddenly **remembered** she had left her bag on the bus.*

remind

reminds **reminding** **reminded**

verb

to make someone remember something.



*A calendar **reminds** you of future events.*

remote

adjective

far away, distant.

*A **remote** farmhouse.*

remove

removes **removing** **removed** *verb*

to take something off or away.



*She **removed** her shoe to get a pebble out.*

renew

renews **renewing** **renewed** *verb*

to begin, make, or get again.

*He **renewed** his bus pass.*

rent

rents *noun*

a regular payment that you make to the owner of something so that you can use it.

rent *verb*

repair

repairs **repairing** **repaired** *verb*

to fix something that is broken.



Repairing a bicycle.

repair *noun*

repeat

repeats **repeating** **repeated** *verb*

to say or do something again.

repetition *noun*

replace

replaces **replacing** **replaced** *verb*

1 to put something

back where it came from.



*She **replaced** the book on the shelf.*

2 to exchange or renew.

*He **replaced** his bicycle with a bigger, more expensive one.*

replacement *noun*

replay

replays **replaying** **replayed** *verb*

1 to play a sports match again.

2 to play a recording of something again.

replica

replicas *noun*

an exact copy of something.

*She made a **replica** of the ship out of matchsticks.*

reply

replies **replying** **replied** *verb*

to answer.

*He **replied** to the invitation immediately.*

reply *noun*

report

reports *noun*

a spoken or written account of a situation or event.

reporter

reporters *noun*

a person who gathers information on events and writes or speaks

about them for a television

program,

newspaper,

or radio

station.



represent

represents **representing**

represented *verb*

to mean or show something.



*Sailors use this flag to **represent** the word "yes" when they signal to other ships.*

reptile

reptile

reptiles *noun*

one of a group of cold-blooded animals that have a backbone, lungs for breathing, dry, scaly skin, and clawed fingers or toes. Reptiles lay their eggs on dry land.

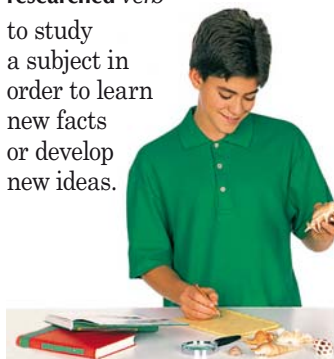


request**requests requesting requested** verbto ask for something formally.
*The prisoner **requested** a visit to his mother.*■ say ri-kwest
request noun**rescue****rescues rescuing rescued** verb
to save someone who is injured or in danger.

■ say res-kyoo

research**researches researching researched** verb

to study a subject in order to learn new facts or develop new ideas.

***Researching** objects found on the seashore.***research** noun**reserve****reserves reserving reserved** verb
to arrange to have something kept for a later time.*They **reserved** a table at the restaurant for 8 o'clock.***reservation** noun**reservoir****reservoirs** noun

a large storage area where water is collected and stored for future use.

■ say rez-ur-vwar

**resign****resigns resigning resigned** verb
to give up your job.

■ say ri-zine

resist**resists resisting resisted** verb
to try to stop something from happening.*He **resisted** temptation.***resort****resorts** noun

a place where many people go for a vacation.

*A ski **resort**.***resource****resources** nouna supply of something useful or valuable, such as oil or gas.
*The country is rich in **natural resources**.*

■ say ree-sors

respect**respect** noun

1 admiration for someone.

*I have great **respect** for her.*

2 politeness.

respect verb**respectful** adjective**response****responses** noun

a reply, in actions or words, to something.

respond verb**responsive** adjective**responsible****responsible** adjective

1 sensible and dependable.

2 in charge of something.

*The boy was **responsible** for feeding his dog.***rest****rest** noun

1 the time when you are relaxing.

rest verb2 something that is left over.
*Most people left yesterday, but the **rest** went this morning.*

3 when something is still.

*The ball came to **rest** at the teacher's feet.***restaurant****restaurants** noun

a place where people go to buy and eat a meal.



■ say res-tur-ont

restless**restless** adjective

unable to stay still or relax.

*The baby had a **restless** night.***restore****restores restoring restored** verb

to fix something old or worn, so that it looks new or can be used again.

result**results** noun

the effect of certain actions or events.

*What was the **result** of the experiment?***result** verb**retire****retires retiring retired** verb

to give up working, usually because of old age or illness.

return**returns returning returned** verb

1 to come back from somewhere.

*The boomerang **returned** easily to his hand.*

2 to give something back to a person.

*She **returned** the book he had lent her.***return** noun

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

revenge

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

revenge

noun

harm or injury that a person does to another, in return for something unpleasant previously done to them.

reverse

reverses reversing reversed *verb*

to go backward, usually in a vehicle.



She reversed her motorcycle into the parking space.

reverse

adjective

at the opposite side, inside, or back of an object.



The reverse side of the coat is lined with white material.

reverse *noun*

revise

revises revising revised *verb*

to look back over work to make extra changes.

revision *noun*

revolution

revolutions *noun*

1 one complete turn.

2 a time when people fight to change the government of their country.

The French Revolution.

■ say rev-uh-loo-shun

reward

reward *noun*

a prize given because of a good thing someone has done.



They offered a reward to anyone who found their cat.

rhinoceros

rhinoceroses *noun*

a heavy mammal that lives in hot regions. Rhinoceroses have one or two horns and thick skin with hardly any hair.



■ say ry-noss-er-us

rhubarb

noun

a large-leaved plant. Its long stems can be cooked and eaten as a dessert.



■ say roo-barb

rhyme

rhymes *noun*

words that have the same or similar sound and are often found in a poem.

■ say rime

rhythm

rhythms *noun*

a regular pattern of sound, such as beats in music.

■ say rith-um

rib

ribs *noun*

one of the bones that curves around from your spine to the front of your chest. Ribs protect your internal organs (see **skeleton** on page 188).

ribbon

ribbons *noun*

a thin strip of decorative material often used for tying hair or wrapping presents.



rice

noun

a grasslike plant that grows in warm, wet regions. The small white or brown grains can be cooked and eaten.



cooked rice

rich

adjective

1 having a lot of money.

2 having a lot of something.

Milk is rich in calcium.

■ comparisons **richer** **richest**

■ opposite **poor**

riddle

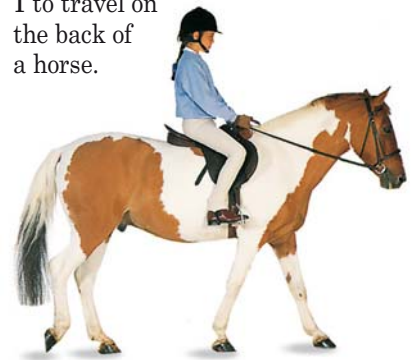
riddles *noun*

a word puzzle in which you have to guess the answer from clues.

ride

rides riding rode ridden *verb*

1 to travel on the back of a horse.



2 to travel on anything that moves.



Riding on a Ferris wheel.

ride *noun*

ridiculous

adjective

crazy, funny, or not making sense.



She looked ridiculous.

■ say ri-dik-yuh-lus

right

adjective

1 the opposite direction to left.

My right hand.

2 correct or lawful.

The right answer.

right *noun*

right angle

right angles *noun*

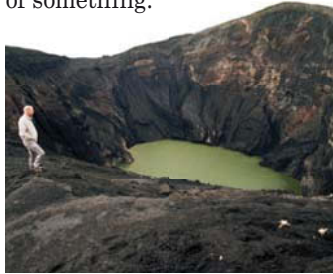
an angle that measures 90 degrees, formed by two lines that are perpendicular to one another (see **shape** on page 182).

*The four inside corners of a square are **right angles**.*

rim

rims *noun*

the edge or border of something.



*He looked over the **rim** of the volcano into the crater.*

ring

rings ringing rang rung *verb*

1 to strike metal or play a bell so that it makes a pleasant sound.



2 to sound or press a doorbell.
*I **rang** the doorbell three times but no one answered the door.*

ring

rings *noun*

a piece of jewelry that is worn on your finger (see **jewelry** on page 112).



rinse

rinses rinsing rinsed *verb*

to wash something in water with no soap in it.



riot

riots *noun*

uncontrolled fighting among a crowd of people who are angry or protesting about something.

■ say ry-ut

rip

rips ripping ripped *verb*

to tear something, usually cloth or paper.



*He **ripped** the piece of paper in half.*

ripe

ripe *adjective*

ready to pick or eat, usually used about fruit.

■ comparisons **riper ripest**
■ opposite **unripe**

ripple

ripples *noun*

a small wave on the surface of water.



*When the duck dived, it made **ripples** on the water's surface.*

rise

rises rising rose risen *verb*

to go upward or become higher.

*Heat **rises**.*

rising *adjective*

risk

risks risking risked *verb*

to take the chance of harming or losing something.

*He **risked** his life to save her.*

risk *noun*

risky *adjective*

river

rivers *noun*

a large stream of water that flows into another river, a lake, or the ocean.



road

roads *noun*

a path for vehicles to travel on, usually with a hard, smooth surface.

roar

roars roaring roared *verb*

to make a loud, deep, rumbling noise like the noise a lion makes.



roast

roasts roasting roasted *verb*

to cook food in a hot oven or over a fire.

rob

robs robbing robbed *verb*

to steal from someone, often by using violence.

*They **robbed** the bank.*

robbery *noun*

robber

robbers *noun*

a person who robs you of something, usually money or goods.

robot

robots *noun*

a machine that can imitate some human actions. Robots are often used

in factories, but can also be used in homes.



*A toy **robot** runs on batteries.*

rock

rocks *noun*

a hard, natural, nonliving substance.

*Mountains are made up mostly of **rock**.*

granite rock

rocky *adjective*

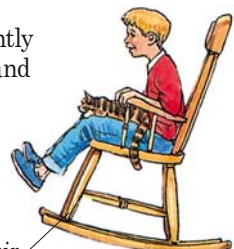


rock

rocks rocking rocked

verb

to move gently backward and forward, or from side to side.



rocking chair

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

rocket

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

rocket

rockets *noun*

1 an engine that powers a spacecraft. Hot gases are released from the rear of the engine, causing the craft to move forward.



2 a type of firework that shoots into the sky and explodes.

rode

from the verb **to ride**
She **rode** her horse last week.

rodent

rodents *noun*

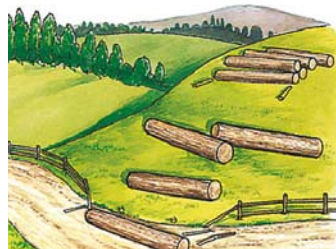
a small, usually nocturnal mammal with long front teeth for gnawing food. Some rodents eat insects and plants, while others only eat plants. Rats, mice, and squirrels are rodents.

■ say road-nt

roll

rolls rolling rolled *verb*

1 to move by turning over and over.



The logs **rolled** down the hill.

2 to move on wheels.

3 to tilt from side to side, like a ship on a rough sea.



4 to flatten something by moving a tool over it.

roll

rolls *noun*

1 paper, cloth, film, or other material that has been wound onto a tube.



rolls of wrapping paper

2 a rounded piece of bread or pastry.



bread rolls

roof

roofs *noun*

1 the outside covering on top of a vehicle or a building.

2 the highest surface inside your mouth or a cave.

room

rooms *noun*

1 one of the separate areas inside a building.



bathroom

2 space.

Is there any **room** in the car for me?

roost

roosts roosting roosted *verb*

to settle down for the night, usually done by birds.



root

roots *noun*

the part of a plant that usually grows underground. A plant's roots supply it with water and minerals from the soil.

rope

ropes *noun*

a strong, thick piece of twisted string or wire.



coil of rope

rose

roses *noun*

a plant with thorns along its stem and flowers with many petals.



rose

from the verb **to rise**
The Sun **rose** in the sky.

rot

rots rotting rotted *verb*

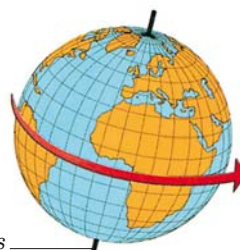
to go bad, or to weaken and break down.

rotten *adjective*

rotate

rotates rotating rotated *verb*

to turn around a central point like a wheel does.



axis

The Earth **rotates** on its axis.

rotation *noun*

rough

rough *adjective*

1 uneven, or not smooth.

A **rough** sea.

2 approximate, or not exact.

A **rough** guess.

■ comparisons **rougher**

roughest

round

round *adjective*

shaped like a circle, with no corners.

route

routes *noun*

the path you take to get from one place to another.



We drew our **route** on the map in red.

■ say root

routine

routines *noun*

a regular activity.

■ say roo-teen

row

rows *noun*

a line of several things next to each other.



■ rhymes with toe

row

rows rowing rowed *verb*

to make a boat move forward by pulling it through the water with oars.



royal*adjective*

to do with a king, queen, or members of his or her family.

rub **rubs rubbing rubbed** *verb*

to press something backward and forward over the surface of something else.



She **rubbed** her wet hair with a towel.

rubbish*noun*

the things that people throw away because they no longer have use for them.

rude*adjective*

speaking or behaving in a way that does not show respect.

■ opposite **polite**

rug **rugs** *noun*

a small carpet made of thick material.



a cotton bath **rug**

rugged*adjective*

1 having a rough, uneven surface.

A **rugged** landscape.



2 not regular, or tough and strong.

The actor had a **rugged** face.

3 stormy.

Rugged weather.

■ say rug-id

ruin **ruins** *noun*

the broken remains of a building.



ruined *adjective*

ruin **ruins ruining ruined** *verb*

to spoil or damage something.



She **ruined** her top by spilling ink on it.

rule **rules** *noun*

an instruction of what must or must not be done, for example, in a game.

rule **rules ruling ruled** *verb*

to govern a country or a group of people.

ruler **rulers** *noun*

1 a straight piece of wood, metal, or plastic that is used for measuring and drawing straight lines.

2 a person, such as a king or queen, who rules a country.

**rumble** **rumbles rumbling rumbled** *verb*

to make a long, low sound, like the noise thunder makes.

rumble *noun*

rumor **rumors** *noun*

a tale passed from one person to another about something that may not be true.

run **runs running** **ran** *verb*

1 to move quickly on your legs.



2 to organize something.
He **runs** a swim club.

runway **runways** *noun*

a long, flat strip of ground with a hard surface from which aircraft take off and land.

 runway **rural***adjective*

to do with the countryside or farms.

A **rural** village.

■ say roor-ul

rush **rushes rushing rushed** *verb*

to hurry, or to do something quickly.

rust*noun*

the red-brown coating that forms on some metals when they get wet.



The sickle was covered with **rust**.

rustle **rustles rustling rustled** *verb*

to make a soft, whispering sound.

The leaves on the tree **rustled** in the wind.

rye*noun*

a grass with light-brown grains, grown to make bread and food for cattle.



S s

sack

sacks *noun*

a large, strong bag made of cloth, plastic, or paper that is used for carrying or storing things.



sacred

adjective

holy, or connected with the worship of God or gods. *The Qur'an is the sacred book of Muslims.*

■ say **say**-krid

sad

adjective

not feeling happy.

■ comparisons **sadder** **saddest**
■ opposite **happy**

saddle

saddles *noun*

a seat for a rider on a horse or a bicycle (see **horse** on page 102 and **transportation** on page 221).



horse **saddle**

safari

safaris *noun*

an expedition to hunt or observe wild animals, usually in Africa.



■ say **sa-far**-ree

safe

adjective

1 protected from harm or danger.

Safe on dry land.

2 not dangerous.

A safe driver.

■ comparisons **safer** **safest**
safety *noun*

safe

safes *noun*

a lockable metal box that is used for storing money and valuable things.



sag

sags **sagging** **sagged** *verb*

to bend or sink, especially in the middle.

*The sofa **sagged** in the middle.*

said

from the verb to say

1 *She **said** "Good morning."*

2 *The clock **said** half past four.*

sail

sails **sailing**

sailed *verb*

to travel across water in a ship or boat.



sail

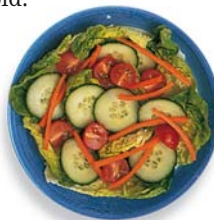
sails *noun*

a piece of material attached to the mast of a boat or ship that catches the wind and helps to move the vessel along (see **boat** on page 31).

salad

salads *noun*

a mixture of vegetables, fruit, or other foods, usually served cold.



mixed
salad

salary

salaries *noun*

an amount of money regularly paid to someone for work they have done.

A monthly salary.

sale

sales *noun*

1 the act of offering something to be sold.



The house is for sale.

2 an event where things are sold at reduced prices.

Half-price sale!

saliva

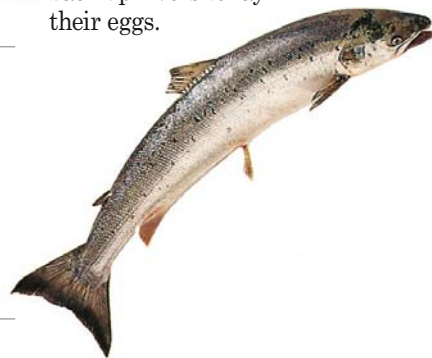
noun

the fluid that is produced in your mouth to help you to chew and digest food.

salmon

noun

a large, edible fish. Salmon hatch in rivers, but then swim to the sea to live. They swim back up rivers to lay their eggs.



■ say **sam-un**

salt

noun

a substance made of small, white crystals that we put on food in order to add flavor.



salt mill

salty *adjective*

salute

salutes **saluting** **saluted** *verb*

to give a sign of respect by raising the right hand to the forehead or by firing guns into the air.

salute *noun*

same

adjective

1 matching exactly.

*She was wearing the **same** dress as me.*

2 mentioned or seen before.

*He looks like the **same** person who was there yesterday.*

■ opposite **different**

sample

samples *noun*

a small part of something that shows what the rest is like.



The supermarket was giving away free **samples** of cheese.

sample *verb*

sand

sand *noun*

very small grains of broken rock, found on beaches or in deserts.



sandal

sandals *noun*

a shoe with a top made of straps, usually worn in warm weather.



sandwich

sandwiches *noun*

slices of bread with another food in between.



sang

from the verb **to sing**

The blackbird **sang** loudly outside my window.

sank

from the verb **to sink**

1 The ship **sank** at sea.

2 The balloon **sank** slowly.

sari

saris *noun*

a long, light cloth wrapped around the body and shoulder that is worn mainly by women of India, Bangladesh, Nepal, and Sri Lanka.



sarong

sarongs *noun*

a traditional Asian skirt worn by men and women and made from a piece of cloth wrapped around the waist or chest.

sash

sashes *noun*

a band of fabric worn around the waist or over the shoulder.



satisfy

satisfies **satisfying** **satisfied** *verb*

to please someone or give someone what they want or need.

His answer didn't **satisfy** the teacher.

satisfaction *noun*

sauce

sauces *noun*

a liquid or soft food that is eaten with a meal.



raspberry
sauce

■ say sawss

saucepan

saucepans *noun*

a metal container with a handle, used for cooking.



■ say sawss-pan

saucer

sauces *noun*

a small, shallow plate that is placed beneath a cup.



■ say sawss-ser

sausage

sausages *noun*

a food made from a mixture of chopped meat, fat, and cereal inside a tube of thin skin.

■ say saw-sij

save

saves **saving** **saved** *verb*

1 to rescue.

The firefighter **saved** him from the burning house.

2 to not waste.

Save power—turn off the light!

3 to keep something to use later.

He **saved** all his allowance.

saw

saws *noun*

a tool for cutting wood that has a handle and a blade with sharp teeth.



saw

saws **sawing** **sawed** *verb*

to use a saw.



Sawing a plank of wood.

saw

from the verb **to see**

I **saw** my face in the mirror.

say

says **saying** **said** *verb*

1 to speak words out loud.

"Hurry up!" I **said**.

2 to give a message or some information.

The sign **says** "No Entry."



scald

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

scald

scalds scalding scalded *verb*
to burn with hot liquid
or steam.
■ say skawld

scale

scales *noun*
1 a series of regular
marks along a line used
for measuring.
*Thermometers have a **scale**
for measuring temperature.*
2 a set sequence of musical
notes going from the highest
to the lowest, or from
the lowest to the highest.



3 a small, hard plate on
the skin of a fish, insect,
or reptile (see **fish** on
page 79, **insect** on page 108,
reptile on page 168).
4 the size of a map or a model
compared with the actual
size of the object.



*This model of a building has
been made to **scale**.*

scales

scales *noun*
a machine that is used
to weigh things.



*kitchen **scales***

scar

scars *noun*
a mark left on the skin
after a wound has healed.
scar *verb*

scarce

scarce *adjective*
not great in amount,
or not often found.
*Snow is **scarce** in May.*
■ say skairs

scare

scares scaring scared *verb*
1 to become frightened.
2 to make someone
else frightened.



*The bear appeared suddenly
and **scared** him.*

scarecrow

scarecrows *noun*
a figure made from sticks and
old clothes that is used to
scare birds away from crops.



scarf

scarves *noun*
a piece of cloth that you wear
around your shoulders, neck,
or head for decoration or to
keep warm.



scatter

scatters scattering scattered *verb*
to spread in many
different directions.
*The wind **scattered** the seeds.*

scavenger

scavengers *noun*
an animal that feeds on
rotting meat and garbage.



scavenge *verb*

scene

scenes *noun*
1 the place where
something happened.
*The **scene** of the crime.*
2 a part of a play or film, set
in a particular time or place.
3 a view.



*A winter **scene**.*

■ say seen

scenery

scenery *noun*
1 the way a place looks.
*The **scenery** in the mountains
was amazing.*
2 an artificial background
used in a play or a film.



■ say see-nuh-ree

scent

scents *noun*
1 a trail of smell left by
an animal or a person.
*The dog followed the **scent**.*
2 perfume.

■ say sent

scheme

schemes *noun*
1 a secret plan.
2 a way of arranging things.
*A color **scheme**.*
■ say skeem

school

schools *noun*
a place where children
go to learn.
■ say skool

science

sciences *noun*
the study of things
in the world; it involves
observing, measuring, and
experimenting to test ideas.
■ say sy-uns
scientific *adjective*

scientist

scientists *noun*
someone who does
scientific work.
■ say sy-un-tist

scissors

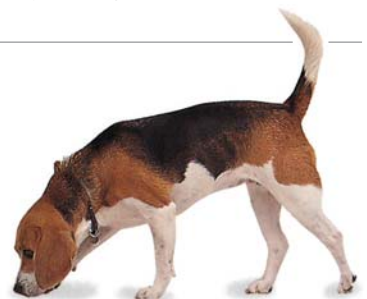
scissors *noun*
a tool with handles
and two blades joined
together. Scissors are
used for cutting
things, such as
paper and hair.

■ say siz-urz



scold

scolds scolding scolded *verb*
to speak to someone angrily
because they have done
something wrong.
*My father **scolded** me
for being late.*



scoop

scoops scooping scooped *verb*
to lift something up using your hand or a tool shaped like a deep spoon.



scoop

Scooping pasta out of a jar.

score

scores scoring scored *verb*
to win points in a game.

scorn

scorns scorning scorned *verb*
to show by words or your expression that you do not think much of something or someone.
The journalist scorned the plans for the power plant.
scornful *adjective*

scorpion

scorpions *noun*
a small, nocturnal animal that is part of the same animal group as spiders. Scorpions usually live in hot regions. They eat insects and spiders that they kill with the poisonous stingers on their tails.



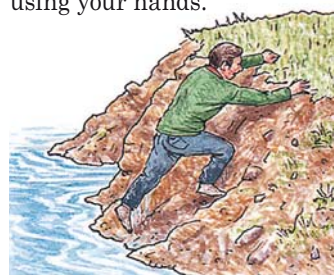
imperial scorpion

scowl

scowls scowling scowled *verb*
to frown in an angry or bad-tempered way.
She scowled when she was given extra homework.
scowl *noun*

scramble

scrambles scrambling scrambled *verb*
1 to crawl or climb fast, using your hands.
2 to mix together.
Scrambling an egg.



He scrambled back up the riverbank.
2 to mix together.
Scrambling an egg.

scrap

scrap *noun*
1 a small piece of something.



scraps
of paper

2 anything that is worn out or no longer of any use.



The cars were sold as scrap.
scrap *verb*

scrape

scrapes scraping scraped *verb*
to drag an object across something, often removing part of the surface.



Scraping wallpaper off the walls.

scratch

scratches scratching scratched *verb*
1 to make a mark on the surface of something with a sharp object.



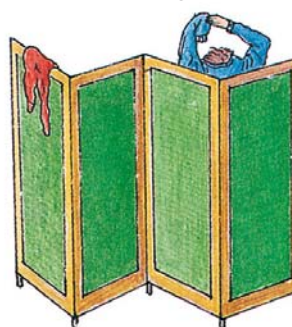
The cat scratched the tree.
2 to rub skin with fingernails or claws to stop it from itching.
scratch *noun*

scream

screams screaming screamed *verb*
to cry out in a loud, high voice because you are frightened or in pain.
scream *noun*

screen

screens *noun*
1 a flat surface onto which moving images are projected.
Some movie theaters have six screens.
2 a barrier that is used to hide, separate, or protect something.



She dressed behind a screen.
3 the part of a computer or television on which the picture or text appears.

screw

screws *noun*
a metal pin used for fastening things together.



screwdriver

screwdrivers *noun*
a tool for turning screws.



script

scripts *noun*
1 a written version of a play, film, radio, or television show.
2 handwriting.

scrub

scrubs scrubbing scrubbed *verb*
to clean by rubbing hard.



Scrubbing a rabbit hutch.

sculpture

sculptures *noun*
a piece of art made from wood, stone, metal, or another solid material.



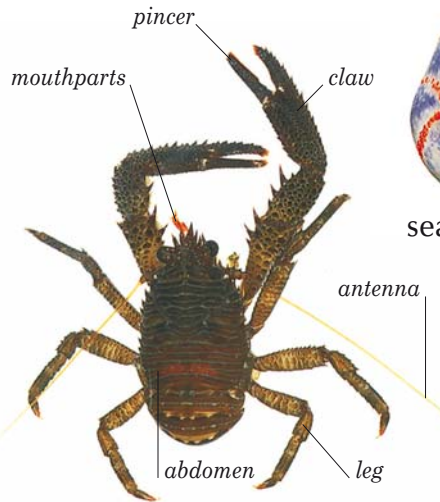
sea

seas *noun*
the salt water that covers two-thirds of the Earth's surface.

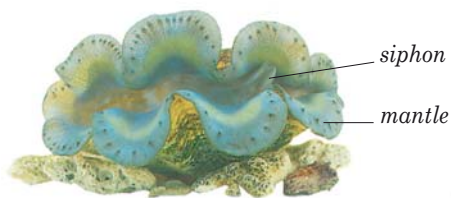
sea life

sea life

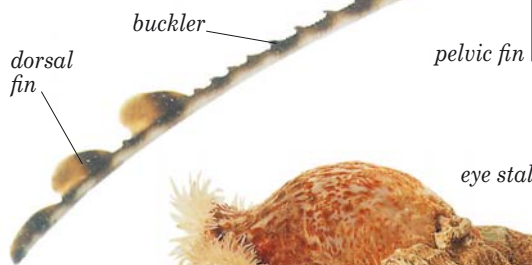
noun
all the plants and animals that live in the sea or on the seashore.



squat lobster



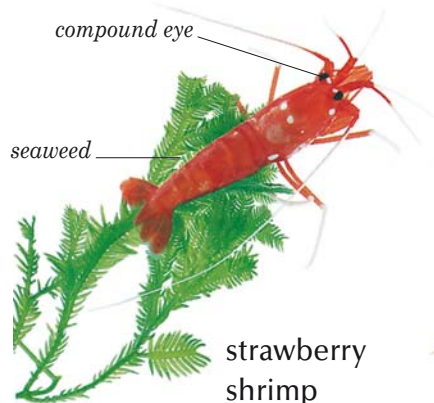
giant blue clam



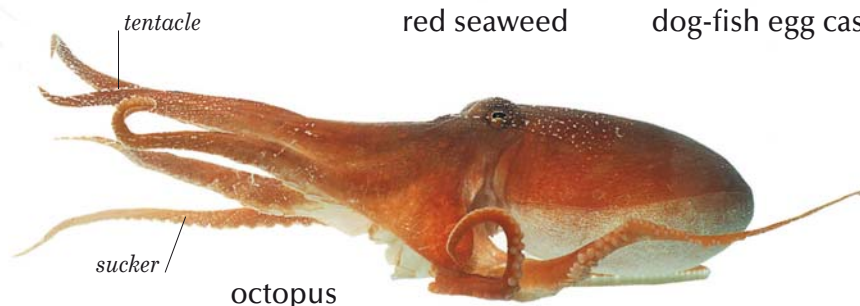
thornback ray



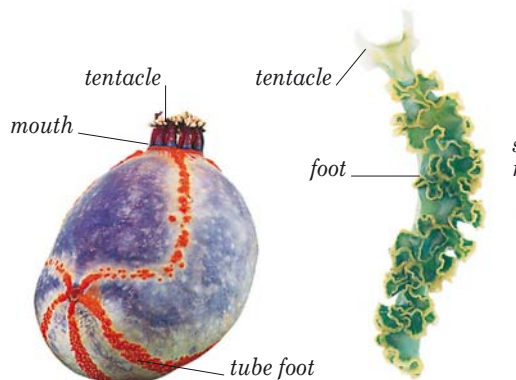
hermit crab



strawberry shrimp



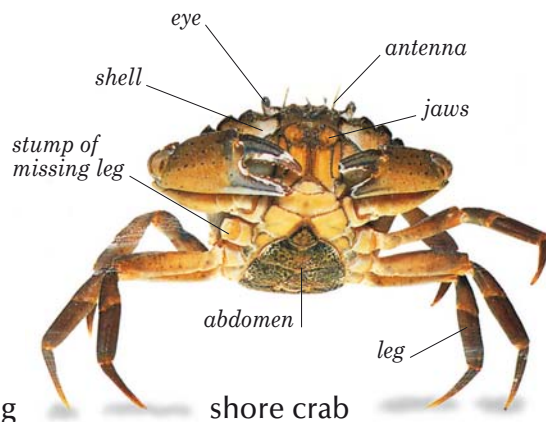
octopus



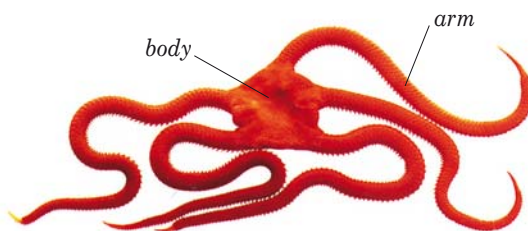
sea cucumber



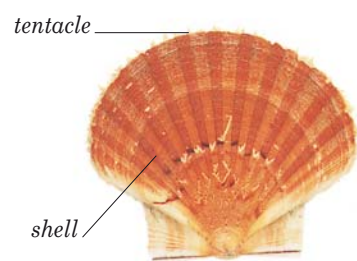
lettuce sea slug



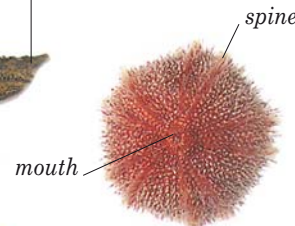
shore crab



scarlet serpent brittlestar



scallop



sea urchin



red seaweed



dog-fish egg cases



zebra pipefish

seal**seals** *noun*

1 a sea mammal usually found in cold seas. Seals eat fish and are excellent swimmers. Some seals are clumsy on land, where they move by rolling or sliding along.



2 a piece of paper or wax that is used to mark something or to close it so that you can tell whether it has been opened.

*wax seal***seal****seals sealing sealed** *verb*

to close something securely or tightly.

Seal the envelope.

search**searches searching searched** *verb*

to look hard for something.



He searched for his ball in the long grass.

search *noun***season****seasons** *noun*

1 one of the four divisions of the year marked by particular kinds of weather. *Our seasons are spring, summer, fall, and winter.*

2 a particular part of the year. *The football season starts next week.*

seat**seats** *noun*

anything that is used for sitting on.

*child's car safety seat**seat belt***second****seconds** *noun*

a very short period of time. There are 60 seconds in one minute.

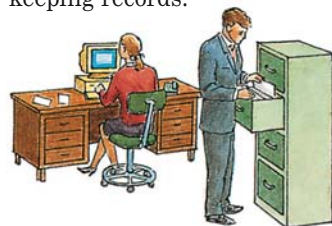
secret**secrets** *noun*

something that is not known by everyone.

Can you keep a secret?

secret *adjective***secretary****secretaries** *noun*

a person whose job is to assist other people by making business appointments, writing letters, and keeping records.

**section****sections** *noun*

a separate part or portion of something.

The library has a children's section.

secure**adjective**

1 well fastened.

A secure door.

secure *verb***see**

sees seeing saw seen *verb*
to notice something with your eyes.



You can see a long way with binoculars.

seed**seeds** *noun*

a small, hard part of some flowering plants, from which new plants may grow (see **growth** on page 94).

*sunflower seeds***seek****seeks seeking sought** *verb*

to search for something, or try to achieve something.

Seeking help.

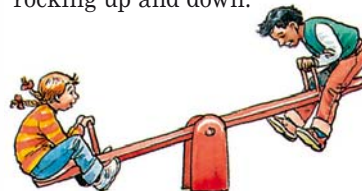
seem**seems seeming seemed** *verb*

to appear to be.

She seems worried about something.

seesaw**seesaws** *noun*

a balancing toy. Children play on a seesaw by sitting at either end of a board and rocking up and down.

**seize****seizes seizing seized** *verb*

to take hold of something suddenly.

The thief seized her bag.

■ say seez

seldom**adverb**

not often, or rarely.

I seldom get home before six.

select**selects selecting selected** *verb*

to choose something you want from a number of things.



She selected a pot of paint from the tray.

selection *noun***selfish****adjective**

only caring about yourself.

He was very selfish and never shared his toys.

sell**sells selling sold** *verb*

to give something to someone in return for money.

They sell all kinds of vegetables at the market.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

semaphore

noun

a way of sending messages by signaling with two flags. The flags are held in different positions to represent each letter of the alphabet.



The letter "x" in **semaphore**.

■ say sem-uh-for

send

sends sending sent *verb*

to make someone or something go to another place.

Send me a postcard!

senior

adjective

older, more experienced, or more important.

Senior club members set the rules.

■ say seen-yur

sense

senses *noun*

1 one of the five ways in which we can receive information about the world. The five senses are sight, hearing, touch, smell, and taste.



You need your **sense** of hearing to use a telephone.

2 a feeling.

*A **sense** of disappointment.*

3 reasonable decisions or good judgment.

*She has a lot of **sense**.*

4 a meaning that can be understood.

*It makes **sense**.*

sensible

adjective

thinking clearly or in a practical way.



*She was **sensible** about dressing for the cold weather.*

sensibly *adverb*

sensitive

adjective

1 quick to feel, understand, or react to something.



***Sensitive** hairs on this plant make the leaves close when they are touched.*

2 easily upset or hurt.

*His skin was very **sensitive** where he had been burned.*

sentence

sentences *noun*

1 a group of words that make sense together. Sentences start with a capital letter and end with a period. They usually include a verb.

2 a punishment decided by a judge in a court of law.

*He received a four-year prison **sentence**.*

separate

separates separating

separated *verb*

to set apart from each other.



*He **separated** the yellow marbles from the green ones.*

separate *adjective*

separately *adverb*

sequel

sequels *noun*

something that follows an earlier event, or continues a story from a previous book or movie.

*A movie **sequel**.*

■ say see-kwul

sequence

sequences *noun*

a number of things that follow in a particular order.

■ say see-kwens

sequin

sequins *noun*

a small, shiny, metal or plastic disk that is sewn onto material as a decoration.

■ say see-kwin



serial

serials *noun*

a story that is broadcast or published in a series of parts.

series

noun

1 a group of similar things that follow one another in order.

*A **series** of books on nature.*



serious

adjective

1 requiring careful thought.

*A **serious** question.*

2 not smiling or laughing.

*A **serious** expression.*

3 worrying or dangerous.



*The fallen tree caused **serious** damage to the roof.*

servant

servants *noun*

a person whose job it is to work for someone in that person's home.

serve

serves serving served *verb*

1 to help someone, usually by giving them something they want or need.

2 to start play in games such as tennis by hitting the ball to your opponent.



service**services** *noun*

- 1 the act of serving.
*Good restaurant **service**.*
 2 employment in the armed forces or in a public organization.
*Military **service**.*
 3 the supply of something that helps or serves people.
*A telephone **service**.*
 4 religious worship.
*A church **service**.*
 5 the act of checking and repairing machinery so that it continues to work well.
*A car **service**.*

set**sets** *noun*

a group of things that belong together.



A toy construction **set**.

set**sets setting set** *verb*

- 1 to put in position or arrange something.
*She **set** the vase on the table.*
 2 to decide or determine a limit, time, or date.
*She **set** the party for Friday.*
 3 to go below the horizon.
*The Sun **sets** in the west.*
 4 to go hard.
*The cement took a long time to **set**.*

settle**settles settling settled** *verb*

- 1 to calm down or stop moving.

*The dog **settled** down to sleep.*

**several***adjective*

- a number, usually three or more, but not many more.
***Several** people waved as they walked past.*

severe*adjective*

- 1 extremely bad.
*A **severe** accident.*
 2 strict or hard.
*The rock face was a **severe** test for the climbers.*
severely *adverb*

sew**sews sewing sewn** *verb*

to join something together using a needle and thread.



Sewing on a shirt button.

■ say so

sewer**sewers** *noun*

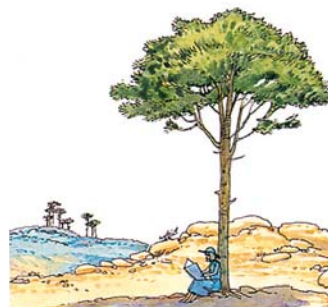
- a large, underground pipe or channel that takes dirty water and waste matter away.
 ■ say soo-er

sex**sexes** *noun*

- one of two groups, male or female, that people, animals, and plants are divided into.

shade**shades** *noun*

- 1 a cool place where the Sun's direct light doesn't reach.



*She sat in the **shade** to read.*

shady *adjective*

- 2 a slight difference in color.



*Different **shades** of paint.*

shadow**shadows** *noun*

- a dark shape made by something that is blocking the light.

shadow**shaft****shafts** *noun*

- 1 a long, vertical passageway.
*A lift **shaft**.*
 2 a long, straight part of something.
*A **shaft** of light.*

shaggy*adjective*

- having long, rough, untidy hair.



■ comparisons **shaggier shaggiest**

shake**shakes shaking shook shaken** *verb*

- 1 to move something rapidly up and down, or from side to side.



***Shaking** hands.*

- 2 to tremble with fear, shock, or cold.

shall*verb*

- a word used to show that something will happen in the future.

*I **shall** go shopping later.*

■ always used with another verb

shallow*adjective*

- not deep.



*They played in **shallow** water.*

shame**shames** *noun*

- 1 a sad thing that happens.
*It's a **shame** you can't come.*
 2 an uncomfortable, guilty feeling about something you have done.
ashamed *adjective*

shampoo**shampoos** *noun*

- a soapy liquid that is used for washing hair.

shampoo *verb*

shape

shape

shapes *noun*

the outline or form of an object.

Everything has a shape. Some shapes are two-dimensional, because they have width and length, but no height. Some shapes are three-dimensional, because they have width, length, and height.

Two-dimensional shapes



rectangle



semicircle



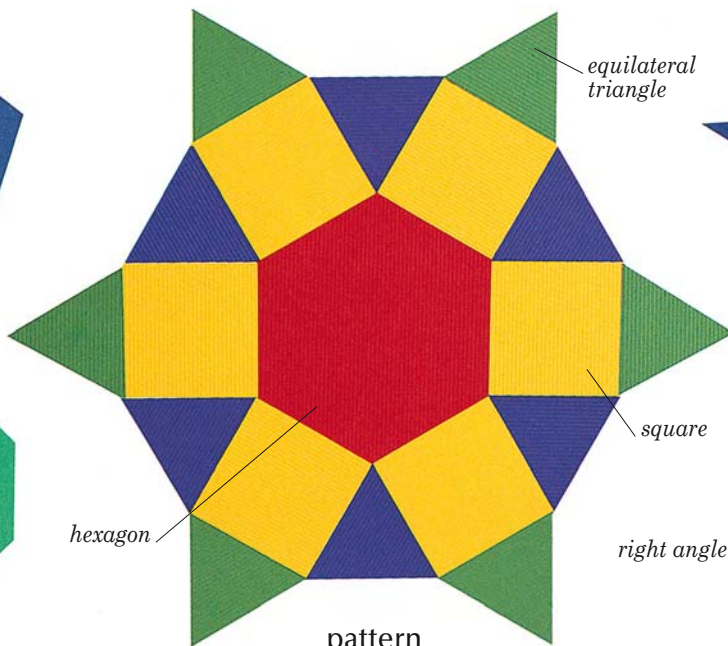
crescent



isosceles triangle



pentagon



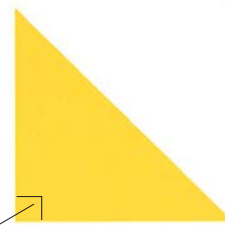
star



diamond



octagon



right-angled triangle

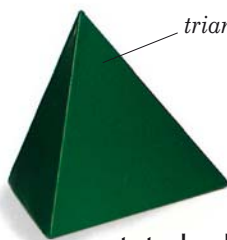
Three-dimensional shapes



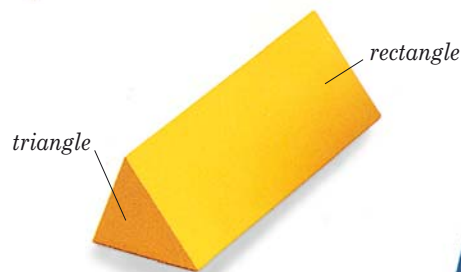
cylinder



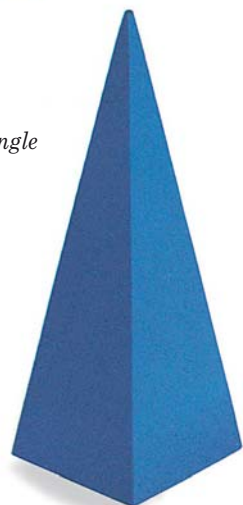
cone



tetrahedron



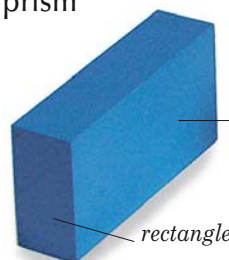
prism



pyramid



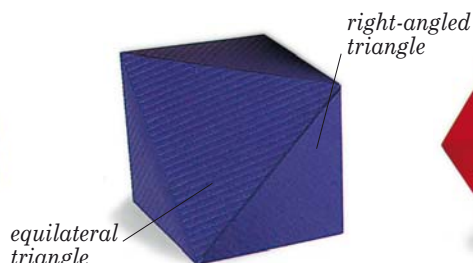
cube



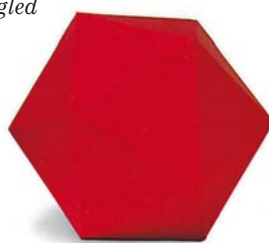
cuboid



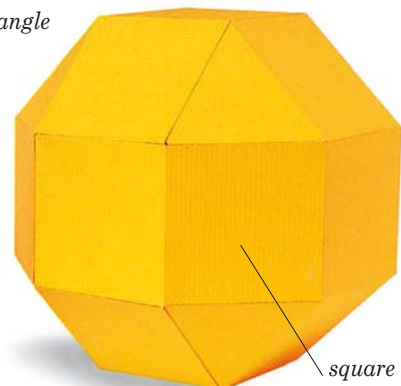
sphere



octahedron



icosahedron



rhombicuboctahedron

share

shares sharing shared *verb*
 1 to have or use together.
 2 to divide something into parts to give to others.



They **shared** the melon.

shark

sharks *noun*
 a large fish with rows of sharp teeth that lives in both cold and warm oceans. Sharks eat fish or small water animals and are able to detect smells and sounds at great distances.



leopard **shark**

sharp

adjective
 with a thin edge or a fine point that may be used for cutting things.
*Careful—that knife is **sharp**!*
 ■ comparisons **sharper sharpest**

shatter

shatters shattering shattered *verb*
 1 to break into many pieces.



When she sang the top notes, the glass **shattered**.
 2 to ruin someone's plans, or to make someone upset.
*The loss of their jobs **shattered** their dreams of buying a home.*

shave

shaves shaving shaved *verb*
 to remove hair from the skin with a razor.

**shawl**

shawls *noun*
 a large piece of cloth worn over the shoulders.

shear

shears shearing sheared shorn *verb*
 to cut off wool or fur.
*We **shear** sheep for their wool.*

shed

sheds *noun*
 a small building for storing things such as garden tools.

shed

sheds shedding shed *verb*
 to drop, lose, or separate from something.



Snakes **shed** their skins.

sheep

sheep *noun*
 a farm animal reared for its wool and meat.

**sheer**

adjective
 1 very steep.
*It was a **sheer** drop.*
 2 complete or absolute.
***Sheer** exhaustion.*

sheet

sheets *noun*
 a large, thin, flat piece of cloth, paper, plastic, or metal.
*A **sheet** of steel.*

shelf

shelves *noun*
 a horizontal piece of wood or metal for storing things on.

shell

shells *noun*
 the hard, outer covering that protects some living things. Eggs, nuts, and animals such as snails, crabs, and tortoises have shells (see **reptile** on page 168).



egg **shell**

nut **shell**

crab's **shell**

**shellfish**

noun
 any small, edible water animal that has a shell.

shelter

shelters *noun*
 a thing that protects someone or something from the weather or from danger.



The doorway was a **shelter** from the rain.

shelter *verb*
sheltered *adjective*

sheriff

sheriffs *noun*
 a law officer whose job is to see that people obey the law in a particular area.

shield

shields *noun*
 a strong piece of metal or leather that soldiers used to carry in battle to protect their bodies from their opponents' weapons.



an ancient Indian **shield**

shield

shields shielding shielded *verb*
 to protect.



She **shielded** her eyes from the sun.

shin

shin

shins *noun*

the front part of your leg below the knee.



shin

shine

shines shining shone *verb*

to give out or reflect light.



The car headlights **shone** on the road ahead.

shiny *adjective*

ship

ships *noun*

a large vessel for transporting people and cargo by sea. A ship is powered by a motor or sails and is bigger than a boat.

shipwreck

shipwrecks *noun*

1 the destruction of a ship at sea.

The whole of the ship's cargo was lost in the **shipwreck**.

2 the remains of a ship that was destroyed at sea.



■ say ship-rek

shirt

shirts *noun*

a piece of clothing for covering the top half of your body. Shirts have sleeves and usually have a collar and buttons down the front.



shiver

shivers shivering shivered *verb*
to tremble with cold or fear.



He **shivered** in the cold wind.

shock

shocks *noun*

1 an unpleasant experience.

shock *verb*

shocking *adjective*

2 pain and injury caused by a flow of electricity through a person's body.

3 a state of weakness caused by injury or pain, or by an unpleasant experience.

He was in **shock** after the accident.

shoe

shoes *noun*

a protective covering worn on your feet, often made of leather.



shook

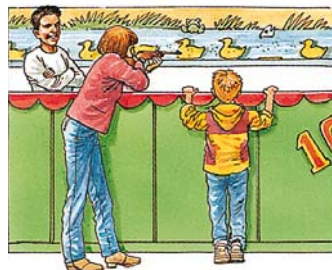
from the verb **to shake**

The dog **shook** himself dry.

shoot

shoots shooting shot *verb*

1 to fire a bullet from a gun or another weapon.



She **shot** at the ducks in the fairground booth, hoping she would win a prize.

2 to wound or kill with a bullet or other weapon.

The hunters **shot** the birds.

3 to take pictures with a camera.

She **shoots** lots of animal photographs.

shop

shops shopping shopped *verb*

to visit a store to look at and buy things.

Let's go **shopping** today.

shop *noun*

shore

shores *noun*

the edge of an ocean, sea, or lake.



seashore

short

adjective

1 not long in measurement.

short hair



2 not lasting a long time.
The movie was very **short**.

■ comparisons **shorter shortest**

■ opposite **long**

3 not having enough of something.

We are one playing card **short**.

shortage

shortages *noun*

a situation where there is not enough of something.

There is a **shortage** of bread in the supermarket.

shorten

shortens shortening

shortened *verb*

to make something shorter.



She **shortened** the little girl's skirt for her.

shorts

noun

a pair of short pants that usually do not reach below the knees.

shot

shots *noun*

an injection.

The doctor gave her a **shot** to make her feel better.

should*verb*

a word used to show that something must be done, ought to be done, or is expected to happen.

*I **should** do my homework.*

■ opposite **should not** /

shouldn't

■ always used with another verb

shoulder*noun*

the place below your neck where your arms join your body.

**show***shows noun*

a public performance or exhibition.

shower*showers noun*

1 a device that sends out a fine spray of water, used for washing your body.



2 a short, sudden rain.

3 a sudden fall of something in large quantities.

*A **shower** of meteors.*

■ rhymes with **our**

shower verb

shrink*shrinks shrinking shrank**shrunk verb*

to become smaller.



*His sweater had **shrunk** in the wash.*

shuffle*shuffles shuffling shuffled verb*

1 to mix things up to change their order.



*He **shuffled** the cards.*
2 to move by dragging your feet along the ground.

shrive*shrivels shriveling shriveled**verb*

to become small and wrinkled, or dry out.

*Water your plants or they will **shrive** and die.*

shut*shuts shutting shut verb*

to close something.

*He **shut** the book carefully.*

■ opposite **open**

shut adjective

shout*shouts shouting shouted verb*

to call out loudly.

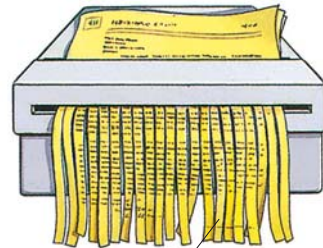
shout noun

shovel*shovels noun*

a broad spadelike tool that you use to move something, like earth or snow, by scooping it up.

shred*shreds noun*

a small, narrow strip that has been cut or torn off something.



shreds of paper

shrub*shrubs noun*

a large plant that is smaller than a tree, often with many stems and little or no trunk.

shrug*shrugs shrugging shrugged verb*

to raise your shoulders to show that you do not care or do not know.

**show***shows showing showed verb*

to allow something to be seen, or to make something clear to other people.



*He **showed** the class his favorite photograph in the book.*

shriek*shrieks shrieking shrieked verb*

to cry out in a high-pitched voice because you are excited or afraid.

*He **shrieked** when he saw the mouse.*

■ say **shreek**

shriek noun

shrill*adjective*

making a sharp, high sound.

*A **shrill** whistle.*

■ comparisons **shriller shrillest**

shudder*shudders shuddering shuddered**verb*

to shake or tremble violently for a short time.

*The thought of spiders makes me **shudder**.*

shutter*shutters noun*

1 a hard cover for a window.



*The house has **shutters** on every window.*

2 the part of a camera inside the lens that opens and closes to allow light to fall onto the film.

shy*adjective*

timid and lacking confidence with people.

■ comparisons **shier shiest**

shyly adverb

sick*adjective*

ill, or not healthy.

■ comparisons **sicker sickest**

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z**side****sides** *noun*

- 1 the edge of something.
*Triangles have three **sides**.*
- 2 the outside surfaces of something, but not the front or back.



A car viewed from the **side**.

- 3 a team or group of people that is against another group.
*Which **side** are you on?*

sideways**adverb**

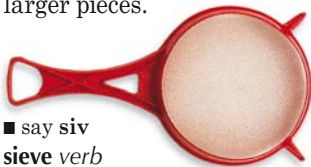
- toward the side or from the side.
*Crabs walk **sideways**.*

siege**sieges** *noun*

- the action of surrounding a place to try to force the people inside to surrender.
■ say seej

sieve**sieves** *noun*

- a container made of plastic or metal that has mesh or small holes for sorting solids from liquids, or fine grains from larger pieces.



■ say siv
sieve *verb*

sift**sifts sifting sifted** *verb*

- to sort through something carefully in order to separate larger pieces from smaller pieces.



Sifting for gold.

sigh**sighs sighing sighed** *verb*

- to let out a long, deep breath slowly.
■ say sye

sight**noun**

- 1 the ability to see.
*She lost her **sight** in an accident.*
- 2 something that can be seen.
*The ship was a fine **sight** as it sailed up the river.*
■ say site

sign**signs signing signed** *verb*

- 1 to write your signature.



*The boy **signed** his friend's cast.*

- 2 to use sign language to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties.
■ say sign

sign**signs** *noun*

- 1 a symbol that represents something.
*The **sign** for dollar is "\$."*
- 2 a movement that expresses a meaning.
*He nodded his head as a **sign** that he wanted to leave.*
- 3 a public notice that gives information.



- A road **sign**.*
- 4 anything that indicates something is going to happen.
*Is there any **sign** of snow?*

signal**signals** *noun*

- 1 an action or object that is used to send a message without words.



- He put his right arm out as a **signal** that he wanted to turn right.*
- 2 the electrical current by which sounds and pictures are transmitted to radios, televisions, and telephones.

signature**signatures** *noun*

- your special way of writing your own name.



■ say sig-nuh-chur

significant**adjective**

- very important, or having a special meaning.
*A **significant** event.*

Sikh**Sikhs** *noun*

- a person who follows Sikhism, an Indian religion. Sikhs believe in a single God.
■ say seek

silent**adjective**

- not making any sound.

silence *noun***silently** *adverb***silhouette****silhouettes** *noun*

- a dark outline of something seen against a pale background.
■ say sil-oo-et

silk**silks** *noun*

- a thin, soft fabric made from threads spun by a silkworm.

**silly****adjective**

- not sensible.
*What a **silly** idea!*
■ comparisons sillier silliest

silver**noun**

- 1 a precious metal found in the ground that is used in making coins and jewelry.



silver



silver ring

- 2 the color of the metal silver.
silver *adjective*

similar**adjective**

- almost, but not exactly, the same.



*These mugs are **similar**.*

simmer

simmers simmering simmered verb

to cook something so that it bubbles very gently.
*Leave the soup to **simmer** for 20 minutes.*

simple

simple adjective

1 easy to understand or solve.
*A **simple** solution.*

■ opposite **complicated**
2 plain.



simple

earrings ornate earrings
■ comparisons **simpler simplest**

simplify

simplifies simplifying simplified verb

to make something easier.

sincere

sincere adjective

honest, or not pretending.
*She was **sincere** when she said she was sorry.*

■ say sin-seer
sincerely adverb

sing

sings singing sang sung verb

1 to make a musical sound with your voice.



*She likes to **sing**.*
2 to perform by singing.
*She is **singing** in an opera.*

single

single adjective

something that is only for one person, or only one of something.
single bed



sink

sinks sinking sank sunk verb

1 to go down below the surface of water.
*The boat was **sinking** fast.*
2 to go down slowly.
*The Sun **sank** below the horizon.*

sink

sinks noun

a basin with a water supply, faucets, and a drain.



kitchen sink

sip

sips sipping sipped verb

to drink in small amounts.



*He **sipped** his coffee slowly.*
sip noun

siren

sirens noun

a device that makes a loud noise and is used as a warning signal.
*A fire engine's **siren**.*
■ say sy-run

sister

sisters noun

a female person who has the same mother and father as someone else.

sit

sits sitting sat verb

1 to rest your body by supporting your weight on your bottom, rather than on your feet.



2 to rest or be positioned.
3 to pose for something.
*She **sat** for her portrait.*

site

sites noun

an area of ground used for a particular purpose.



*A construction **site**.*

situation

situations noun

what is happening in a particular place at a particular time.



*He found himself in a desperate **situation**.*
■ say sich-oo-ay-shun

size

sizes noun

a measurement of how large or small something is.



*These shoes are the wrong **size**.*

sizzle

sizzles sizzling sizzled verb

to make a hissing sound during cooking.
*The sausages **sizzled** under the broiler.*

skate

skates skating skated verb

to slide along on a hard surface wearing special shoes with blades or wheels.



skating noun

roller skate

skateboard

skateboards noun

a small board on wheels that people stand on to ride along.

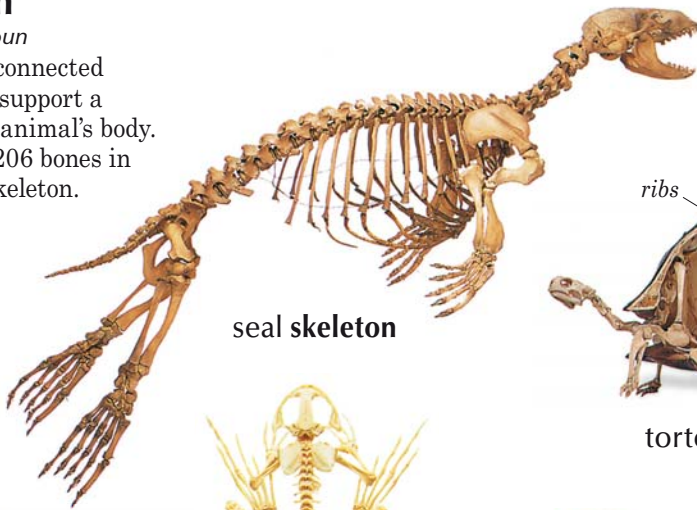


skeleton

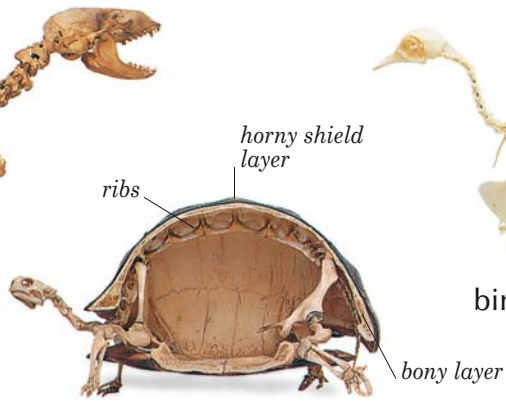
skeleton

skeletons *noun*

a group of connected bones that support a person's or animal's body. There are 206 bones in a human skeleton.



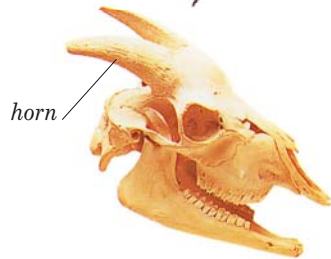
seal skeleton



tortoise skeleton



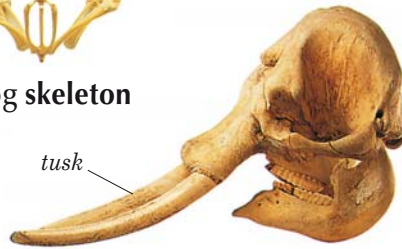
bird skeleton



goat skull



frog skeleton



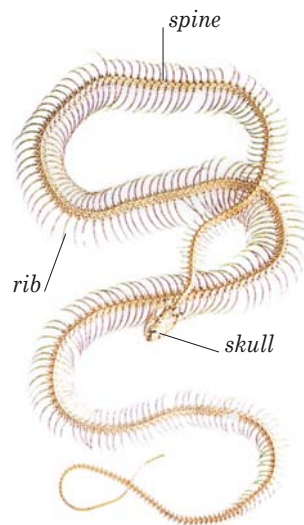
elephant skull



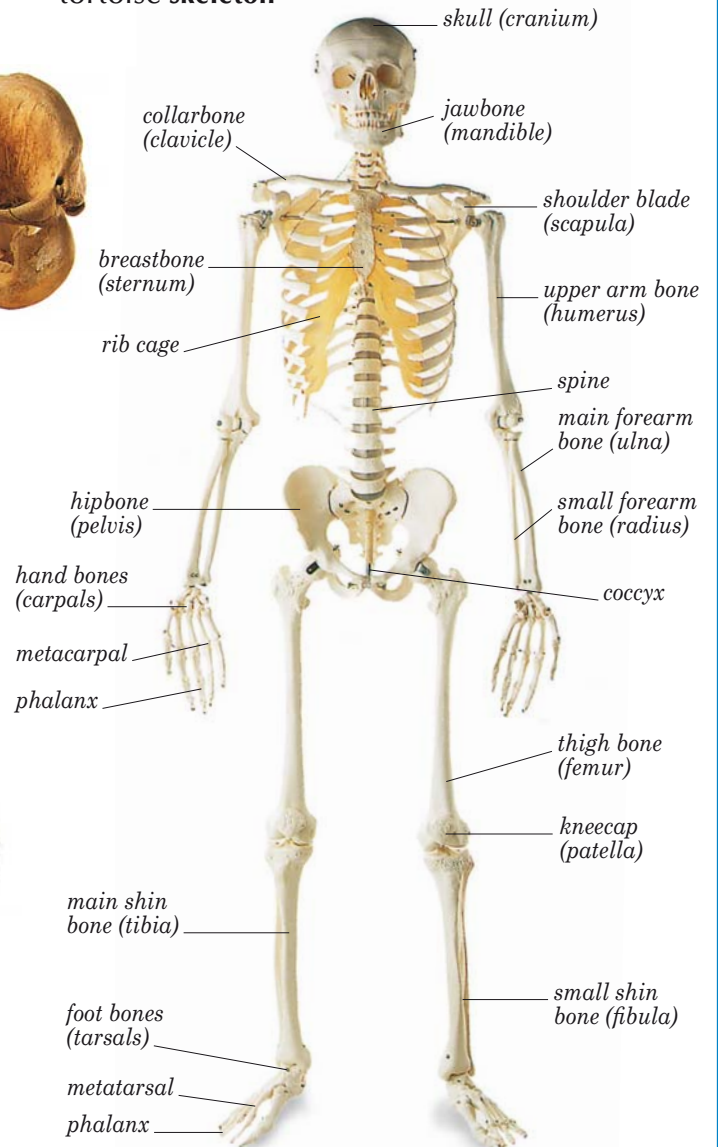
fish skeleton



monkey skeleton



snake skeleton



human skeleton



crocodile skeleton

sketch**sketches** *noun*

1 a quick drawing.

A **sketch** of a ship.

2 a short play.

ski**skis skiing skied** *verb*

to move over snow or ice on two long pieces of wood, metal, or plastic attached to special boots.

■ say **skee**
ski *noun***skid****skids skidding skidded** *verb*

to slide out of control.

The car **skidded** on the icy road.**skill****skills** *noun*

an ability to do something.

*Juggling is a difficult **skill** to learn.***skillful** *adjective***skin****skins** *noun*1 the thin, protective layer that animals and people have on the outside of their bodies (see **mammal** on page 124).2 a thin layer that covers the flesh of vegetables and fruit (see **fruit** on page 85).**skip****skips skipping skipped** *verb*

1 to move along, hopping lightly from one foot to another.

*She **skipped** down the road.*

2 to jump over a turning rope.

**skipping** /
*rope***sky****skies** *noun*

the air around the Earth as we see it. The sky usually looks blue.

*Not a cloud in the **sky**.***skyscraper****skyscrapers** *noun*

a very tall building with many stories.

**slam****slams slamming slammed** *verb*

to shut something with a bang.

Slam** the door.slang***noun*

everyday words and phrases that are not normally used in writing or formal speaking.

slant**slants slanting slanted** *verb*

to slope sideways.

The wooden shelf **slanted** to the right.**slap****slaps slapping slapped** *verb*

to hit quickly with the palm of your hand.

slap *noun***slave****slaves** *noun*

someone who is forced to work without being paid and is not free to leave.

sled**sleds** *noun*

a low platform with curved strips of metal or wood underneath. Sleds are used to carry people and things over snow and ice.

**sleek***adjective*

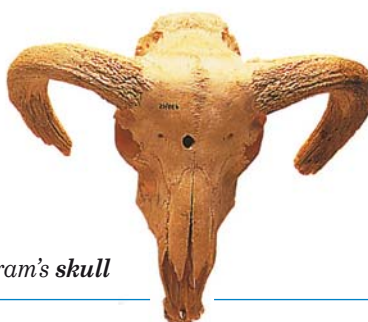
smooth and shiny.

Seals** have **sleek** fur.sleep****sleeps sleeping slept** *verb*

to rest your body and mind with your eyes closed.

**sleep** *noun***sleeve****sleeves** *noun*

the part of a piece of clothing that covers the arm.

*sleeve**ram's skull***skull****skulls** *noun*the bone frame of the head that protects the brain and supports the face (see **skeleton** on page 188).

sleigh

sleigh

sleighs *noun*

a large sled, usually pulled by an animal and used for traveling over snow or ice.



■ say **slay**

slender

adjective

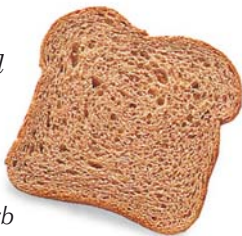
long and thin.
*A **slender** branch.*

slice

slices *noun*

a thin, flat piece cut from something.

*a **slice** of bread*



slice *verb*

slide

slides sliding slid *verb*

to move smoothly over a surface.
*She **slid** across the ice on her skates.*

slide

slides *noun*

1 a piece of children's play equipment for sliding down.



2 a transparent photo in a cardboard or plastic frame.

slight

adjective

very small in amount.
*There's a **slight** chance he'll come.*

■ say **slite**

■ comparisons **slighter slightest slightly** *adverb*

slim

adjective

fairly thin.

■ comparisons **slimmer slimmest**

slime

noun

an unpleasantly wet and slippery substance.
*Snails leave a trail of **slime** as they move along.*
slimy *adjective*

sling

slings *noun*

a piece of material used to support an injured arm.



sling

slip

slips slipping slipped *verb*

1 to move, or to move something easily or quietly.
*She **slipped** the note under the door.*
2 to slide or fall over by accident.
*He **slipped** in the mud.*

slipper

slippers *noun*

a soft, comfortable, loose shoe worn indoors.



slippery

adjective

smooth and difficult to grip.
*She couldn't hold on to the **slippery** fish.*

slit

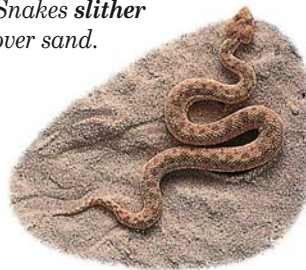
slits *noun*

a long, narrow, straight cut.
slit *verb*

slither

slithers slithering slithered *verb*

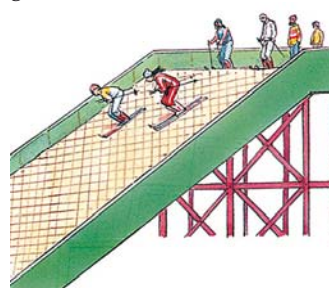
to slide along.
*Snakes **slither** over sand.*



slope

slopes *noun*

ground that slants.



*They practiced on the artificial ski **slope**.*
slope *verb*

slot

slots *noun*

a small, narrow opening for putting something in.



*She put a coin in the **slot**.*
slot *verb*

slouch

slouches slouching slouched *verb*

to sit, stand, or walk so that your shoulders are bent over and your back is not straight.
■ rhymes with **ouch**

slow

adjective

1 taking a long time, or not hurrying.



*Tortoises are very **slow**, while rabbits move quickly.*
2 behind the time.
*This watch is 5 minutes **slow**.*

■ comparisons **slower slowest**
■ opposite **fast**
slowly *adverb*

sly

adjective

doing something in a sneaky or secretive way.
*She had a **sly** plan to trick her brother.*
■ comparisons **slier sliciest**
slyly *adverb*

smack

smacks smacking smacked *verb*

to open and close your lips noisily.

small

adjective

little in size, or not great or big.



***small** can of paint*

***big** can of paint*

■ comparisons **smaller smallest**
■ opposite **big**

smart*adjective*

1 quick and intelligent.

A **smart** idea.

2 well-dressed.

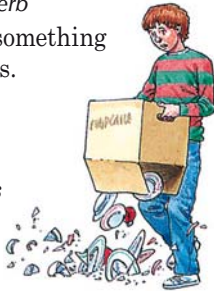


*He looked very
smart in his
new suit.*

■ comparisons **smarter** **smartest**

smash**smashes** *smashing***smashed** *verb*

to break something into pieces.



*The plates
smashed
on the
ground.*

smear**smears** *smearing* **smear** *verb*

to spread something sticky or messy.



*He smeared glue onto the back
of the picture.*

■ say **smeer**
smear *noun*

smell**smells** *smelling* **smelled** *verb*

1 to use your nose to notice odors.



*Smelling a rose.
2 to have an odor.
The barn smelled of hay.*

smell**smells** *noun*

1 the sense you use to notice odors through your nose.

Smell is one of the five senses.

2 the odor of something, usually unpleasant.

What a **smell**!**smile****smiles** *smiling* **smiled** *verb*

to show you are happy by widening your mouth and turning up the corners of your lips.



smile *noun*

smoke*noun*

the cloud of gas and small ash particles that rises from a fire.

smoke *verb***smolder****smolders** *smoldering* **smoldered** *verb*

to burn very slowly, without any flames.

■ say **smole**-dur**smooth***adjective*

having an even surface, without sharp edges or lumps.

As **smooth** as glass.■ opposite **rough****smudge****smudges** *noun*

a dirty mark made by rubbing or smearing something onto a surface.



*She had a smudge of chalk
on her cheek.*

smudge *verb***smuggle****smuggles** *smuggling* **smuggled** *verb*

to take something into a place secretly and illegally.



*They smuggled their cargo
into the country under cover
of darkness.*

snack**snacks** *noun*

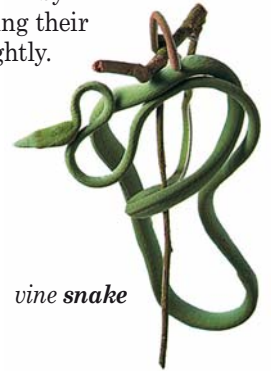
a small amount of food eaten between meals or instead of a meal.

snail**snails** *noun*

a slow-moving animal with a spiral shell. Snails live on land or in water and eat mainly plants. When in danger, snails pull their soft bodies back into their shells.

snake**snakes** *noun*

a long, thin reptile with no legs. Snakes eat insects, eggs, fish, or animals. Some snakes are poisonous, while others kill by squeezing their prey tightly.



vine snake

snap**snaps** *snapping* **snapped** *verb*

1 to make a sudden cracking noise.

Snap your fingers.

2 to break suddenly.



*She snapped
the stick in half.*

3 to talk in a quick, angry way.
"Why haven't you done your homework?" he **snapped**.

snarl**snarls** *snarling* **snarled** *verb*

to growl fiercely, showing the teeth.

The guard dog **snarled** at the burglar.

snatch

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

snatch

snatches snatching snatched verb
to take hold of something suddenly.
*I **snatched** my coat and ran out of the house.*

sneak

sneaks sneaking sneaked verb
to move or act in a quiet or secret way.



*He **sneaked** out of the room when no one was looking.*
sneaky adjective

sneer

sneers sneering sneered verb
to show scorn about something or someone.
*"My bike is better than yours," she **sneered**.*
sneer noun

sneeze

sneezes sneezing sneezed verb
to force air out of your nose in a sudden, uncontrolled way.



sneeze noun

sniff

sniffs sniffing sniffed verb
1 to breathe in noisily through your nose.
*Stop **sniffing** and blow your nose!*
2 to breathe in through your nose, trying to smell something.
*Dogs find out about things by **sniffing** them.*

snip

snips snipping snipped verb
to cut something with scissors in one, quick movement.



Snipping the top off the box.

snore

snores snoring snored verb
to breathe noisily as you sleep.

snorkel

snorkels noun
a short tube that a swimmer holds in his or her mouth in order to breathe underwater.

snorkel

snorkels snorkeling snorkeled verb
to swim using a snorkel.



snout

snouts noun
an animal's long nose and jaws (see **dinosaur** on page 61, **mammal** on page 124, and **reptile** on page 168).

snow

snow noun
soft, white flakes of ice that fall from the clouds in cold weather.
snow verb
snowy adjective

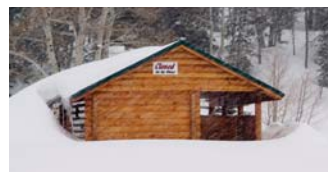
snowball

snowballs noun
a ball shape made by pressing snow together.



snowdrift

snowdrifts noun
snow that has been blown into a pile by the wind.



snowflake

snowflakes noun
a group of ice crystals that falls as a tiny piece of snow.



snowman

snowmen noun
a figure that you build with snow.



snowplow

snowplows noun
a machine used to clear snow off the roads or off other surfaces.

snowstorm

snowstorms noun
a storm during which a lot of snow falls.

snug

snug adjective
comfortable and warm.



*The cat looked very **snug** curled up inside the basket.*

snuggle

snuggles snuggling snuggled verb
to lie close together in order to keep warm.

soak

soaks soaking soaked verb
to make or become thoroughly wet.



*The rain had **soaked** her hair.*

soap

soaps noun
a substance used for washing.



soar

soars soaring soared verb
to fly high in the air.



*The eagle **soared** over the valley.*

sob

sobs sobbing sobbed *verb*
to cry noisily, catching your breath.



The little boy was **sobbing** in the corner.

soccer

soccer *noun*
a game played with a round ball that players may move with any part of their bodies except their hands and arms. Players score by moving the ball into the other team's goal.

social

social *adjective*
to do with people living together in communities.
Social *history*.
■ say so-shul

society

societies *noun*
1 all the people who live in a group or in a country, and their way of life.
Laws protect society.
2 a club or an organization.
An animal welfare society.
■ say suh-sy-i-tee

sock

socks *noun*
a piece of clothing that covers your foot and the lower part of your leg.



socket

sockets *noun*
a hole that something, such as a plug or bulb, fits into.
An electric socket.

soft

soft *adjective*
1 easy to put out of shape by touching, or not firm or hard.
A soft pillow.
■ opposite **hard**
2 gentle or smooth to the touch.



A soft ball of yarn.
■ opposite **rough**
3 not harsh or loud.
A soft sound.
■ comparisons **softer softest**

software

software *noun*
programs that are put into a computer to make it work.

soil

soils *noun*
the top layer of earth in which plants can grow.



You can grow some vegetables in pots of soil.

solar

solar *adjective*
having to do with the power of the Sun or any other light.

solar panel



A solar-powered calculator.

sold

from the verb to sell
She sold her bike when she grew too big for it.

soldier

soldiers *noun*
a person who is part of an army.

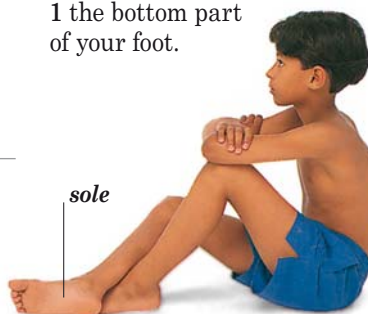


a Roman soldier

■ say sole-jur

sole

soles *noun*
1 the bottom part of your foot.



sole

2 the bottom of a shoe.



3 an edible type of flat fish.

sole

sole *adjective*
one or only.
He was the sole survivor of the crash.

solemn

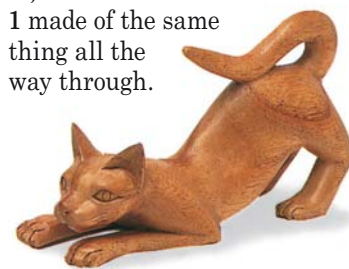
solemn *adjective*
serious.
A solemn promise.
■ say sol-em

solid

solids *noun*
a substance that keeps its shape, and is not a liquid or a gas.
Ice, rock, and jelly are solids.

solid

solid *adjective*
1 made of the same thing all the way through.



This cat is carved from a solid block of wood.
2 firm or strongly made.
They built a solid wall around the castle.

solo

solo *adjective*
on your own.
She made a solo flight around the world.
■ say so-low

solo

solos *noun*
a piece of music that is played or sung by one person.



She played a violin solo.

solution

solutions *noun*
1 the answer to a problem.
The solution to the crossword.
2 a liquid that has something dissolved in it.
A solution of salt and water.
■ say suh-loo-shun

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

solve

solves solving solved *verb*
to find the answer to a problem or mystery.



To **solve** the puzzle you must end up with one marble in the middle.

some

adjective
1 several or a few, but not a definite number or amount.
*Could you buy **some** apples, please?*
2 part of, but not all.
*I ate **some** cake.*
◆ **Somebody** has taken my ruler.
◆ *I must get there **somehow**.*
◆ *Will **someone** set the table please.*
◆ *Let's get **something** to eat.*
◆ ***Sometimes** I go to the swimming pool after school.*
◆ *You must have put it **somewhere**.*

somersault

somersaults somersaulting somersaulted *verb*
to roll or leap forward or backward so that your whole body turns over.



■ say **summer-salt**
somersault *noun*

son

sons *noun*
a person's male child.
■ say **sun**

sonar

noun
a device that finds and records the depth of water. Sonar works by sending out sound waves and measuring how long it takes for the echo to return. Submarines use sonar to navigate at sea.



■ say **so-nar**

song

songs *noun*
a piece of music with words that you sing.

soon

adverb
after a short time.
*It will **soon** be lunchtime.*

sore

adjective
aching or hurting.



*His head was **sore** where he had bumped it.*

■ **comparisons** **sorer** **sorest**

sorry

adjective
feeling sad or unhappy about what has happened.
*I am **sorry** that I stepped on your toe.*

■ **comparisons** **sorrier** **sorriest**
■ **opposite** **pleased**

sort

sorts *noun*
a group of similar things, or a type of something.
*What **sort** of vacation will you take this year?*

sort

sorts sorting sorted *verb*
to arrange things into different types or groups.



*He **sorted** the socks and put them in pairs.*

sought

from the verb to seek
*The two countries **sought** peace.*
■ say **sawt**

soul

souls *noun*
the spiritual part of a person. Some people believe that the soul continues after a person's body is dead.

sound

sounds *noun*
something that can be heard.

soup

soups *noun*
a liquid food made from fish, meat, or vegetables, cooked in water or milk.



vegetable soup
■ say **soop**

sour

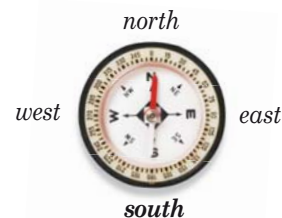
adjective
with a sharp taste, like vinegar or a lemon.
■ rhymes with **power**

source

sources *noun*
the place where something comes from or is found.
*The **source** of a river.*

south

noun
one of the four main directions on a compass. South is to your right when you are facing the rising Sun.



southern *adjective*

souvenir

souvenirs *noun*
something that you keep to remind you of a person, place, or event.
*Holiday **souvenirs**.*
■ say **soo-vuh-neer**

sow

sows sowing sowed sown *verb*
to put seeds in the soil so that they will grow into plants.



*She **sowed** some seeds in a window box.*

■ say **so**

soybean

noun

a vegetable seed used for food or crushed for its oil.

space

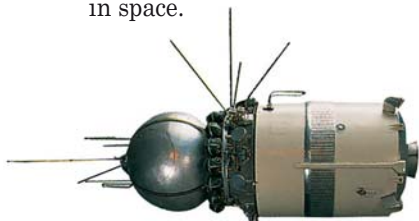
noun

1 the place where all the stars and planets are found.
2 an empty area or gap.

spacecraft

spacecrafts noun

a vehicle for traveling in space.



Vostok 1 was the first manned **spacecraft**.

spade

spades noun

a shovel or tool that is used for digging.



spaghetti

noun

a type of long, thin pasta.



■ say spu-**get**-ee

span

spans noun

1 a period of time.
2 the distance between two objects.

spare

adjective

more than is needed.



spare tire

spark

sparks noun

a small, burning piece of material that is thrown up from a fire.

sparkle

sparkles sparkling sparkled verb

to reflect tiny flashes of bright light.



Diamonds

sparkle.

sparkling adjective

speak

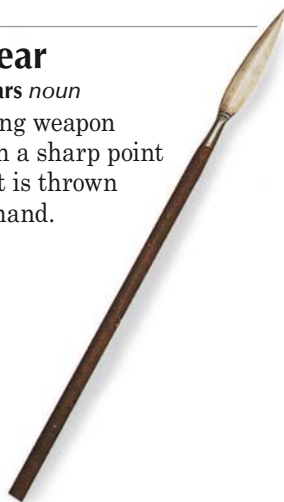
speaks speaking spoke spoken verb

to say words, or to talk.

spear

spears noun

a long weapon with a sharp point that is thrown by hand.



special

adjective

different from the rest, usually because it is better.

■ say **spesh**-ul

■ opposite **ordinary**

species

species noun

a group of animals or plants that usually look similar or behave in a similar way.

*There are about 320 **species** of salamander in the world.*

■ say **spee**-sheez



specific

adjective

definite or precise.

*Can you be more **specific**?*

■ say spi-sif-ik

speck

specks noun

a very small piece or spot.

*A **speck** of dust.*

speckled

adjective

covered with tiny marks or spots.

*A **speckled** egg.*



spectator

spectators noun

a person who watches an event but does not take part.



*The **spectators** cheered for their favorite team.*

speech

speeches noun

1 the ability to speak and the way people speak.

***Speech** is a power only humans have.*

2 a talk given to an audience.

speed

speeds noun

a measurement of how fast something is moving.

spell

spells spelling spelled or spelt verb

to say or write the letters of a word in the correct order.
*How do you **spell** "special"?*

spell

spells noun

words that are supposed to have a magic power.
*The magician cast a **spell** on the frog.*

spend

spends spending spent verb

1 to use money to buy things.
*I **spent** my money on a book.*
2 to pass time.
*We **spent** two weeks camping in the forest.*

sphere

spheres noun

a solid, round shape, like a ball (see **shape** on page 182).

■ say **sfeer**

spice

spices noun

a substance made from dried parts of a plant and used to add flavor to food.



cayenne pepper

paprika



cinnamon stick

spicy

adjective

strongly flavored with spice.

spider

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

spider

spiders *noun*

a small animal with eight legs. Spiders spin nets of thin, sticky threads called webs, which they use to trap insects for food. They kill their prey with poison.



spike

spikes *noun*

a sharp point, often made of metal or wood, or a pointed part of an animal or plant.

spill

spills spilling spilled or **spilt** *verb*
to let something drop or overflow from a container.



She spilled her drink.

spin

spins spinning spun *verb*

1 to turn around quickly, or to make something turn quickly.

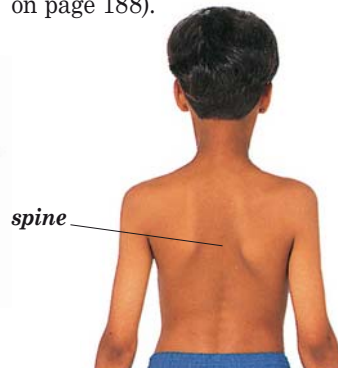


2 to produce threads. Spiders and silkworms spin threads by producing them from their bodies. People spin raw cotton and wool to make threads.

spine

spines *noun*

1 the column of bones that makes up the backbone of a skeleton (see **skeleton** on page 188).



2 one of the stiff, sharp points on an animal, like a porcupine, or on a plant, like a cactus (see **fish** on page 79, **plant** on page 151, and **sea life** on page 178).

3 the part of a book where the pages are joined and that holds the book together.

spiral

spirals *noun*

an object shaped in a curve that turns around a central point.



spire

spires *noun*

a tall, pointed structure at the top of a tower.

church spire



spirit

spirits *noun*

1 a person's mind and feelings.

In good spirits.

spiritual *adjective*

2 a being, such as a ghost, that does not have a body.

spit

spits spitting spat *verb*

to force saliva or something else out of your mouth.

She spat out the rotten apple.

spite

noun

deliberate nastiness.

He ignored him out of spite.

spiteful *adjective*

splash

splashes splashing splashed *verb*

to scatter water or another liquid.



The children splashed around in the pool.

splash *noun*

splinter

splinters *noun*

a thin, sharp piece that has broken off something hard, such as wood or glass.

split

splits splitting split *verb*

1 to divide into parts.



She split the logs with an ax.

2 to tear or crack, perhaps by mistake.

The bag split open.

splutter

splutters spluttering spluttered *verb*

to speak quickly in a confused way.

She knocked over the display and spluttered an apology.

spoil

spoils spoiling spoiled *verb*

1 to destroy or damage something.

Don't draw on that—you'll spoil it.

2 to give a child so much that he or she becomes demanding and unpleasant.

spoke

from the verb to speak

They spoke in a whisper in case anyone was listening.

sponge

sponges *noun*

a soft, flexible material used for washing and cleaning. Some sponges are made of plastic, but real sponges are made from the skeletons of sea creatures.

■ say **spunj**



bath sponge

sponsor

sponsors sponsoring sponsored *verb*

to give money to support a charity or event. Sometimes money is given in return for a person completing an activity.

The sporting goods store sponsored the race.

sponsor *noun*

spoon

spoons *noun*

a small utensil with a curved bowl at one end. Spoons are used for eating or stirring.



plastic spoon



metal spoon

sport

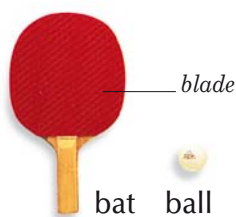
sports noun

an activity or game that requires physical effort or skill. People play sports for exercise or pleasure.

badminton



table tennis



field hockey



windsurfing



golf



football



athletics



basketball



squash



ice hockey



cricket



baseball



spot

spot

spots *noun*

1 a small, round area that is a different color from the area around it.

*This cup and saucer are covered in white **spots**.*

2 a place.

*It was a perfect picnic **spot**.*



spot

spots spotting spotted *verb*

to notice or see.

*Can you **spot** my car?*

spotlight

spotlights *noun*

a strong light pointed at a small area, usually on a stage.

spout

spouts *noun*

the part of a container that a liquid is poured from.



teapot **spout**

spray

sprays spraying sprayed *verb*

to scatter a fine shower of liquid onto something.



*He **sprayed** the plant with water.*

spray *noun*

spread

spreads spreading spread *verb*

to open something out or make it cover a bigger area.



*He **spread** the blanket out on the ground.*

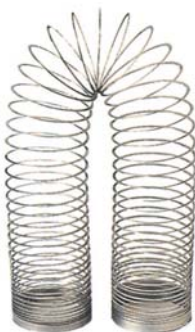
■ say **spred**

spring

springs *noun*

1 the season between winter and summer when the weather becomes warmer and many plants start to grow.

2 a coil of thin metal that jumps back into shape after it has been pressed together or pulled apart.



3 a place where water flows out of the ground.



spring

springs springing sprang sprung *verb*

1 to jump upward in a lively way.



*She **sprang** over the gymnastic apparatus.*

spring *noun*

2 to appear or grow quickly.

*New houses **sprang** up all over the hillside.*

sprint

sprints sprinting sprinted *verb*

to run very fast for a short distance.



sprint *noun*

sprout

sprouts sprouting sprouted *verb*

to begin to grow.

*Green shoots **sprouted** from the bean.*

sprout *noun*



spy

spies *noun*

a person who gathers information in secret.

spy *verb*

square

squares *noun*

a shape with four equal sides and four right angles (see **shape** on page 182).

square *adjective*

squash

squashes squashing squashed *verb*

1 to crush something so that it becomes flat.

2 to squeeze together.



*We all **squashed** onto the sofa.*

■ say **skwosh**

squeak

squeaks squeaking squeaked *verb*

to make a short, high-pitched sound like a mouse.

squeak *noun*

squeal

squeals squealing squealed *verb*

to make a long, high-pitched sound like a piglet.

squeal *noun*

squeeze

squeezes squeezing squeezed *verb*

to press hard, often in order to push something out.



*She **squeezed** the paint out of the tube.*

squirm

squirms squirming squirmed *verb*

to twist the body from side to side, or to wriggle.

*The rabbit **squirmed** under the fence.*

■ say **skwurm**

squirrel

squirrels *noun*

a small, furry rodent. Some types of squirrel live in trees, while others live on the ground. Squirrels eat nuts, berries, fruits, and insects.



squirt

squirts squirting squirted *verb*
to shoot out a thin jet of liquid.



He squirted the dishwashing liquid into the bowl.

■ rhymes with **dirt**

stab

stabs stabbing stabbed *verb*
to pierce or wound with a knife or other pointed object.
She stabbed the potato with a fork to see if it was cooked.

stable

stables *noun*

a building where horses or other animals are kept.



a stable for horses

stack

stacks *noun*

a pile of things, one on top of another.



A stack of plates.
stack *verb*

stadium

stadiums or stadia *noun*

a sports ground surrounded by seats for spectators.



staff

staff *noun*

a group of people who work together in a business, school, or other organization.



The staff at the garage wear uniforms.

stag

stags *noun*

a male deer, especially a red deer that is over four years old.

stage

stages *noun*

1 a platform used for plays and other performances.
2 a point reached in the progress of something.
They made the long journey in several stages.

stagger

staggers staggering staggered *verb*

to walk in an unsteady way.
They staggered home after the long walk.

stain

stains *noun*

a dirty mark that is difficult to remove.



coffee stain
stain *verb*

stair

stairs *noun*

one of a series of steps, set one after the other.



A flight of stairs.

stalactite

stalactites *noun*

a spike of rock that is formed from dripping water and hangs down from the roof of a cave.

■ say *stuk-lak-tite*

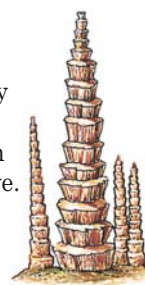


stalagmite

stalagmites *noun*

a spike of rock that is formed by dripping water and builds up on the floor of a cave.

■ say *stu-lag-mite*



stale

stale *adjective*

no longer fresh.

Stale bread is hard and dry.

stalk

stalks *noun*

1 the stem of a plant or a leaf (see **plant** on page 151).
2 a long, thin part of an animal (see **sea life** on page 178).



leaf stalk

stall

stalls *noun*

1 an area divided off in a stable or barn for one animal.



2 a table used to display and sell goods, usually at a market.



■ rhymes with **call**

stall

stalls stalling stalled *verb*

to come to a stop suddenly, without meaning to.
The old car stalled at the traffic light.

stammer

stammers stammering stammered *verb*

to stutter or speak with difficulty, often stopping in the middle of words and repeating sounds.

stammer *noun*

stamp

stamp

stamps *noun*
a sticker you put on an envelope or package to show that you have paid for it to be delivered.



stamp

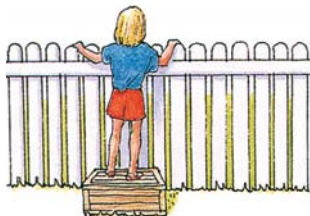
stamps stamping stamped *verb*
to bring your foot down very hard.



stamp *noun*

stand

stands standing stood *verb*
to be in an upright position.



She **stood** on a box to look over the fence.

standard

standards *noun*
a level of quality that is considered acceptable, or how good something is.
*The **standard** of spelling in this class is very high.*

standard

adjective
ordinary or usual.
*Headlights are **standard** equipment on all cars.*

stank

from the verb to stink
*The boat **stank** of fish.*

staple

staples *noun*
a small, thin strip of metal used to join sheets of paper together.
■ say stay-pul

star

stars *noun*
1 an object in the sky that appears as a ball of light. The Sun is the nearest star to Earth.



2 a shape with five or more points (see **shape** on page 182).

3 a famous actor, actress, or other performer.

stare

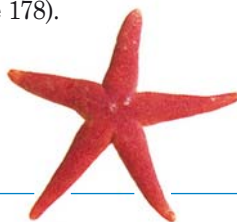
stares staring stared *verb*
to look for a long time at something with your eyes wide open.



The cat **stared** at the mouse.

starfish

starfish *noun*
a star-shaped sea animal, usually with five arms. Starfish eat plants and sea animals, such as crabs and other shellfish. They sense things through tentacles on their arms (see **sea life** on page 178).



start

starts starting started *verb*
to begin.



*The runners lined up, ready to **start** the race.*
start *noun*

startle

startles startling startled *verb*
to give someone a surprise or a shock.



*His son **startled** him.*

starve

starves starving starved *verb*
to suffer or die from lack of food.
starvation *noun*

state

states *noun*
1 the condition of something, or what it is like.
*In an untidy **state**.*
2 a group of people under one government. A state can be a whole country or part of a country.
*The United **States** of America.*

state

states stating stated *verb*
to say something clearly.
statement *noun*

station

stations *noun*
1 a place where buses and trains stop so that people can get on and off.
2 a building used by a public service, such as the police.
*A police **station**.*
■ say stay-shun

statue

statues *noun*
a figure of a person or animal made from stone, wood, or another hard material.



Statue of Liberty

■ say stach-oo

stay

stays staying stayed *verb*
1 to remain in one place.
*Dad **stayed** at home while we went to the show.*
2 to live somewhere for a short time.
*I went to **stay** with my cousin during the summer vacation.*
3 to continue to be in one state.
*It **stayed** sunny all week.*

steady

adjective
1 firm.
*He held the ladder **steady**.*
2 continuous or unchanging.
*A **steady** fall of snow.*



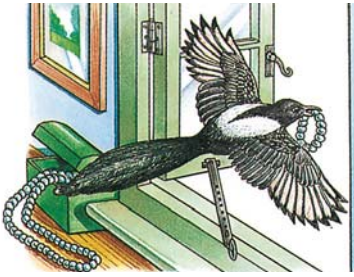
■ say sted-ee
■ comparisons **steadier**
steadiest
steadily *adverb*

steak

steaks *noun*
a thick slice of fish or meat, usually beef.
■ say stake

steal

steals stealing stole stolen *verb*
to take something that does not belong to you without the owner's permission.



Magpies **steal** shiny things.

steam

noun
the gas that water turns into when it boils. Steam can be used as a source of power.

steel

noun
a hard, strong metal made from iron mixed with a small amount of carbon. Steel can also be combined with other metals. Stainless steel is a mixture of steel, chromium, and nickel.



Many kitchen utensils are made of **steel**.

steep

adjective
slanting up or down sharply. A **steep** hill.

■ comparisons **steeper steepest**

steer

steers steering steered *verb*
to control the direction something is going in. She **steered** her car into the driveway.

stem

stems *noun*
the main stalk of a plant that grows up out of the soil (see **growth** on page 94 and **plant** on page 151).

step

steps *noun*
1 the movement made by lifting your foot and putting it down when you walk along or dance.

step *verb*
2 a level surface for putting your foot on to help you climb up or down, usually as part of a staircase or ladder.



3 a stage in a series of things to do.

The first **step** in learning to swim is to enjoy being in the water.

stepladder

stepladders *noun*
a portable ladder with flat steps that can stand up without leaning on anything.



stereo

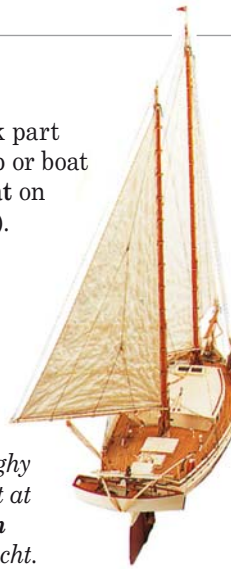
stereos *noun*
equipment for playing recorded sound. The sound comes from two different directions so that it sounds natural.
■ say stair-ee-oh
stereo *adjective*

stern

adjective
firm or strict. A **stern** warning.

stern

noun
the back part of a ship or boat (see **boat** on page 31).



The dinghy was kept at the **stern** of the yacht.

stethoscope

stethoscopes *noun*
an instrument used by doctors for listening to the heart and lungs.



stick

sticks *noun*
1 a thin piece of wood.
2 something long and thin. A **stick** of chalk.

stick

sticks sticking stuck *verb*
1 to glue or fasten one thing to another.

She **stuck** the model airplane together with glue.

sticky *adjective*
2 to press a sharp point into something. He **stuck** a pin into the balloon.

stiff

adjective
not easy to bend or move.



This folder is made of **stiff** plastic cardboard.

■ comparisons **stiffer stiffest**

still

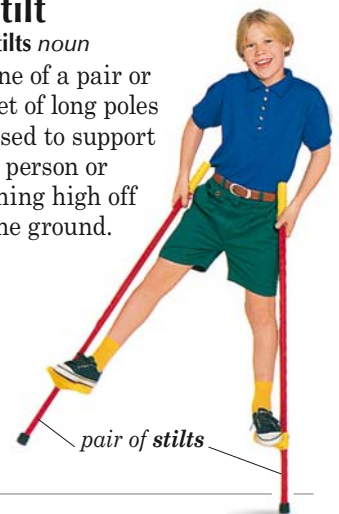
adverb
1 up until now. He is **still** there.
2 even so, or nevertheless. I don't like rice pudding, but I **still** have to eat it.
3 an even larger amount. **Still** more snow fell.

still

adjective
not moving or without sound.

stilt

stilts *noun*
one of a pair or set of long poles used to support a person or thing high off the ground.



The bread **stuck** out of the basket.

sting

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

sting

stings stinging stung verb

to prick the skin, or to cause a sharp pain. Some insects sting when they are frightened or angry, injecting a poison into the skin.

stink

stinks stinking stank stunk verb

to have a strong, bad smell.

*This garbage **stinks**!*

stink noun

stir

stirs stirring stirred verb

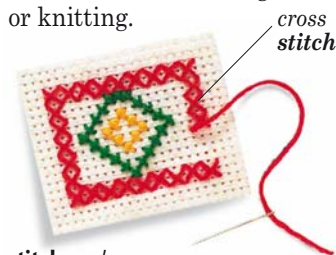
to mix something by moving it around with a spoon or similar tool.



stitch

stitches noun

a loop of thread or wool made with a needle in sewing or knitting.



stitch verb

stock

stocks stocking stocked verb

to keep a supply of something.

*Do you **stock** writing paper in this store?*

stock noun

stolen

*from the verb **to steal***

*A painting was **stolen** from the gallery.*

stomach

stomachs noun

1 the part of your body where food goes after you have eaten it, to be partly digested.



2 the outside part of your body at the front between your ribs and your hips.

■ say **stum-ik**

stone

stones noun

1 the hard material that rocks are made of.



*A bird table made of **stone**.*

2 a small, loose piece of rock.



*The field was full of **stones**.*

stood

*from the verb **to stand***

*They **stood** at the bus stop for an hour.*

stool

stools noun

a seat without a back or arms.



*kitchen **stool***

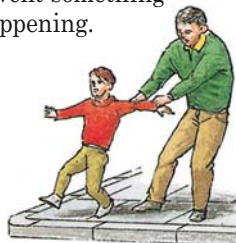
stop

stops stopping stopped verb

1 to come, or bring, to an end.

*The rain **stopped**.*

2 to prevent something from happening.



*The man **stopped** the boy from running into the road.*

stopwatch

stopwatches noun

a watch that can be started and stopped to measure how much time something takes (see **time** on page 216).

store

stores storing stored verb

to put something away for when you need it.



*They **stored** the sports equipment in the cupboard.*

store

stores noun

a large shop or warehouse.
*A department **store**.*

stork

storks noun

a large bird with a long beak and long legs that lives near shallow water. Storks eat fish, insects, rodents, and snakes. They live in large nests built in trees and on cliffs.



*marabout **stork***

storm

storms noun

a period of bad weather with strong winds and thunder and lightning, or snow.

story

stories noun

a tale, or a description of an event, either real or imaginary.

*Tell me a **story**.*

stove

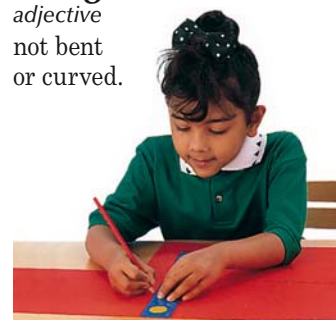
stoves noun

a piece of equipment used for cooking or heating.

straight

straight adjective

not bent or curved.



*She drew a **straight** line.*

■ say **strate**

■ comparisons **straighter**
straightest

strain

strains straining strained verb

1 to try so hard that it hurts or tires you.

*Be careful not to **strain** yourself when you exercise.*

strain noun

2 to pass something through a sieve in order to filter out larger pieces.

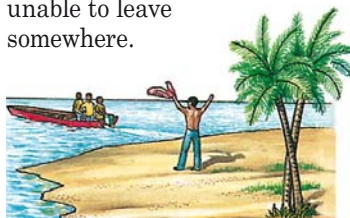


strand**strands** *noun*

1 any thread that is twisted together with others to make a stronger line.
 2 anything that looks like a rope or string.
 A **strand** of hair.

stranded

adjective
 unable to leave somewhere.



He was left **stranded** on the island.

strange

adjective
 unusual or unfamiliar.
 ■ comparisons **stranger**
strangest

stranger

strangers *noun*
 a person you have not seen before or who is new to a place.

strap**straps** *noun*

a strip of leather or other material, used for fastening or holding things.

shoulder
strap

**straw****straws** *noun*

1 stalks of dried wheat or other cereal plants. Straw is used for farm animals and pets to lie on.

**strawberry****strawberries** *noun*

a small, red fruit that is soft and sweet and grows on a plant.

**stray**

strays straying strayed *verb*
 to wander away from someone or somewhere.



One duckling **strayed** from its mother.

streak**streaks** *noun*

a long, thin mark or smear.
 After the football game his clothes were covered with **streaks** of mud.

stream**streams** *noun*

1 a small river.



2 a steady flow of something.
 A **stream** of cars rushed along the street.

streamlined*adjective*

having a smooth shape that allows quick and easy movement through air or water.



This cycling helmet has a **streamlined** shape.
streamline *verb*

street**streets** *noun*

a road in a city or town.
 What is the name of the **street** you live in?

strength**strengths** *noun*

the quality of being strong or powerful.



The weight lifter had incredible **strength** in his arms.

strengthen**strengthens strengthening****strengthened** *verb*

to make something strong or stronger.
 You can **strengthen** your muscles by exercising.

stress**stresses** *noun*

1 a strain on a person or thing.

He is under a lot of **stress**.

2 an extra force laid on part of a word when speaking. In the word "stretcher," the stress is on the first syllable.

stretch**stretches stretching stretched** *verb*

1 to pull something so that it becomes longer or bigger.
 2 to straighten or reach out as much as you can with part of your body.



She **stretched** out her arms.

3 to reach one place from another.



The road **stretches** all the way to the mountains.

stretcher**stretchers** *noun*

a light bed with handles that is used to carry someone who is hurt.

**strict***adjective*

keeping closely to the rules.
 The teacher was very **strict**.

■ comparisons **stricter strictest**

stride

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

stride

strides striding strode verb
to walk with long steps.



stride noun

strike

strikes noun
the action of stopping work in order to get better pay and working conditions, or to protest about something.
On strike.

strike

strikes striking struck verb
1 to hit something hard.



*The tree was **struck** by lightning.*
2 to stop work in order to protest about something.

string

strings noun
a long, narrow cord used for fastening or as part of a musical instrument (see **musical instrument** on page 133).



strip

strips noun
a long, narrow piece of something.
*A **strip** of paper.*

stripe

stripes noun
a long, narrow band of color.



*This swimsuit has blue **stripes**.*
striped adjective

stroke

strokes stroking stroked verb
to rub gently with the hand.



*He **stroked** the rabbit.*

stroll

strolls strolling strolled verb
to walk slowly in a relaxed way.
*They **strolled** through the woods.*
stroll noun

strong

adjective
1 tough.
*A **strong** rope.*
2 powerful.
*Elephants are very **strong**.*
■ comparisons **stronger**
strongest
■ opposite **weak**

structure

structures noun
1 something that has been built.



*The Eiffel Tower is a tall, steel **structure**.*

2 the way that something is put together or organized.
*A company's **structure**.*

struggle

struggles struggling struggled verb
to try hard, or to fight hard.
*He **struggled** with the math problem for a long time.*

stubborn

adjective
determined to have your own way.



*A **stubborn** mule.*
■ say **stub-urn**

stuck

from the verb **to stick**
1 I **stuck** the label on the jar.
2 The thorn **stuck** in her leg.

student

students noun
a person who is studying at some kind of school.
■ say **stoo-dnt**

studio

studios noun
1 a room where an artist or photographer works.
2 a room or building where television programs or movies are made.
■ say **stoo-dee-oh**

study

studies studying studied verb
1 to look at something carefully.



*She **studied** the flower through a magnifying glass.*
2 to learn about a subject from books and classes.
*She **studied** for her exams.*

stuffy

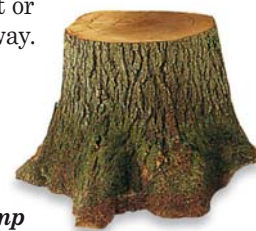
adjective
without fresh air.
*The room was **stuffy** so she opened the window to let in some fresh air.*

stumble

stumbles stumbling stumbled verb
to trip and almost fall.

stump

stumps noun
a short part of something left behind after the rest has been cut or worn away.



*tree **stump***



*television **studio***

stunt

stunts *noun*

a dangerous action that is done as part of a film or performance.



The **stunt** involved jumping over the cars on a motorcycle.

stupid

adjective

foolish, or not intelligent.

■ say **stoo**-pid

■ comparisons **stupider**

stupidest

■ opposite **clever**

sturdy

adjective

strong and well made.

A **sturdy** table.

■ comparisons **sturdier**

sturdiest

stutter

stutters **stuttering** **stuttered** *verb*

to stammer or speak with difficulty, often stopping in the middle of words or repeating sounds.

stutter *noun*

style

styles *noun*

1 the way that something is done or made.

Which **style** of tennis racket do you prefer, wooden or metal?

2 a fashion or design.



What **style** of car is this?

■ say **stile**

subject

subjects *noun*

something you are talking, writing, or learning about.

submarine

submarines *noun*

a vessel that can travel underwater.



■ say **sub**-muh-reen

substance

substances *noun*

a material or object that can be seen or felt.

There was a sticky **substance** on the table.

substitute

substitutes *noun*

someone or something that is used in place of another person or thing.

butter



margarine

Margarine is used as a **substitute** for butter.

■ say **sub**-sti-toot

subtract

subtracts **subtracting** **subtracted** *verb*

to take one number away from another number.

$$8-5=3$$

Five **subtracted** from eight equals three.

subtraction *noun*

subway

subways *noun*

an underground railroad system.

succeed

succeeds **succeeding** **succeeded** *verb*

to manage to do what you were trying to do.

They **succeeded** in moving the heavy piano up the stairs.

■ say suk-seed

success

successes *noun*

a thing that works out well.

His magic act was a complete **success**.

■ say suk-sess

successful *adjective*

such

adjective

1 of a particular kind.

Pins, needles, and **such** things.

2 so much.



There was **such** a lot of decorating to do, that he didn't know where to begin.

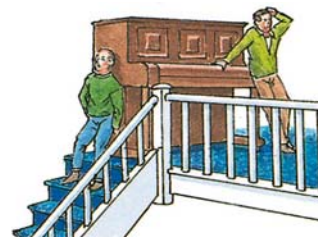
suck

sucks **sucking** **sucked** *verb*

to pull liquid into your mouth, or to hold something in your mouth and lick it.



He **sucked** his drink through a straw.



suddenly

adverb

quickly and without warning.



Suddenly she had an idea.

sudden *adjective*

suffer

suffers **suffering** **suffered** *verb*

to feel pain, or to be ill.

She is **suffering** from the flu.

suffocate

suffocates **suffocating** **suffocated** *verb*

to die because you are unable to breathe.

■ say suf-uh-kate

sugar

noun

a sweet substance made from plants and used in food and drinks.

brown sugar



■ say shoog-ur

suggest

suggests **suggesting** **suggested** *verb*

to mention a new idea or plan to someone.

I **suggested** going to the park to ride our bikes.

■ say sug-jest

suggestion *noun*

suicide

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

suicide

noun
killing yourself deliberately.
■ say soo-i-side

suit

suits noun
a jacket and skirt or pants, designed to be worn together.



■ rhymes with **boot**

suit

suits suiting suited verb
to look good on someone.
*Does this **suit** me?*

suitable

adjective
right for a particular purpose or occasion.



*These boots are **suitable** for walking over rough ground.*
■ say soo-tuh-bull

suitcase

suitcases noun
a large bag with a handle that is used for carrying clothing and other things when you travel.



sulk

sulks sulking sulked verb
to be silent because you are in a bad mood.
sulky adjective

sum

sums noun
1 a total made by adding two or more numbers together.

$$3+49=52$$

*The **sum** of 3 and 49 is 52.*
2 an amount of money.
*A new bike will cost you a large **sum** of money.*

summary

summaries noun
a short form of a story or a piece of information that just gives the main points.
*They gave a **summary** of the news at the end of the program.*

summer

summers noun
the warmest season of the year. Summer comes between spring and fall.

summit

summits noun
the highest point of something.



*The two climbers finally reached the **summit** of the mountain.*

Sun

noun
the star that is the center of our solar system (see **universe** on page 229).

sun

noun
the light and heat that we get from the Sun.
*The cat was sitting in the **sun**.*

sunflower

sunflowers noun
a tall plant with large, yellow flowers. The seeds can be eaten or used to make cooking oil.



sunglasses

noun
glasses with dark lenses that you wear to protect your eyes from sunlight.



sunlight

noun
the light from the Sun.

sunrise

sunrises noun
the time when the Sun is coming up over the horizon in the morning.

sunset

sunsets noun
the time when the Sun is going down below the horizon in the evening.



sunshine

noun
bright sunlight.

superb

adjective
extremely good.
*A **superb** performance.*
■ say soo-purb

superior

adjective
higher in rank or position.
*Soldiers must salute their **superior** officers.*
■ say soo-peer-ee-ur
■ opposite **inferior**

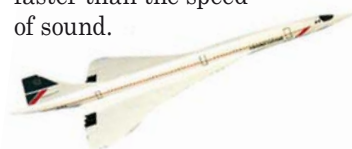
supermarket

supermarkets noun
a large store that sells food and other items. People select the goods they want and pay for them at the exit.



supersonic

adjective
faster than the speed of sound.



*The Concorde was a **supersonic** aircraft.*
■ say soo-per-son-ic

superstition

superstitions noun
a false belief based on fear or lack of knowledge about something.
*A common **superstition** is that it is unlucky to walk under ladders.*
■ say soo-per-stish-un
superstitious adjective

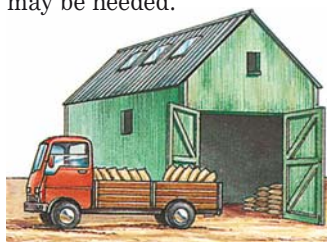
supper

suppers noun
a meal eaten in the evening.

supply

supplies *noun*

a quantity of something that may be needed.



*The farmer kept a **supply** of grain in the barn.*

supply *verb*

support

supports supporting supported *verb*

to hold something or someone up to stop it, or them, from falling.



*She **supported** her friend who had hurt his leg.*

support *noun*

suppose

supposes supposing supposed *verb*

to think that something is true or likely.

*I **suppose** you are right.*

sure

adjective

certain, or with no doubt.

*I am **sure** you will enjoy your stay here.*

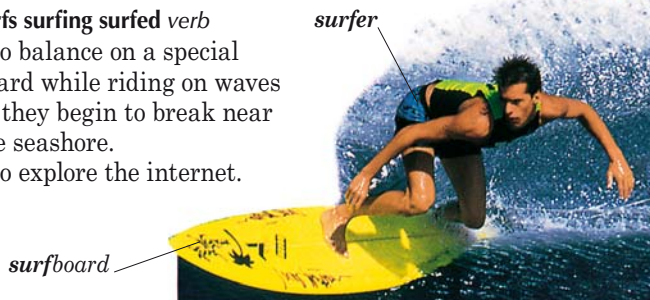
■ say **shoor**

surf

surfs surfing surfed *verb*

1 to balance on a special board while riding on waves as they begin to break near the seashore.

2 to explore the internet.



surface

surfaces *noun*

the outside or top of something.



*These buttons have shiny **surfaces**.*

■ say **sur-fus**

surgeon

surgeons *noun*

a doctor who treats patients by doing operations.



■ say **sur-jun**

surgery

surgeries *noun*

1 a medical operation that involves cutting open part of a patient's body.

2 a place where you go to see a doctor or dentist for treatment.

■ say **sur-juh-ee**

surname

surnames *noun*

the last part of someone's name that shows which family they belong to.

surprise

surprises *noun*

something that happens when you do not expect it.

*She got a **surprise** when she received the package!*

surprise *verb*

surprising *adjective*

surrender

surrenders surrendering *verb*

surrendered *verb*

to give yourself up.



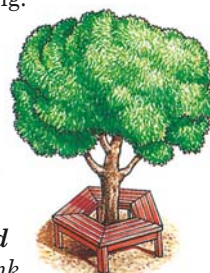
*The kidnappers finally **surrendered** to the police.*

surround

surrounds surrounding *verb*

surrounded *verb*

to be or to go on all sides of something.



*The bench **surrounded** the tree trunk.*

survive

survives surviving survived *verb*

to continue to live after an event in which you might have died.

*They all **survived** the crash.*

survivor

survivors *noun*

a person who is still alive after experiencing an event that might have killed them.

*He was one of three **survivors** of the shipwreck.*

■ say **sur-vy-vur**

suspect

suspects suspecting suspected *verb*

1 to think that someone is guilty of something.

*I **suspect** her of being a thief.*

suspect *noun*

2 to suppose that something is likely.

*I **suspect** it will rain.*

suspend

suspends suspending suspended *verb*

to attach something by its top so that it hangs down.



*The baskets are **suspended** from a hook.*

suspense

noun

the feeling of being anxious or excited about what might happen next.

*This movie is full of **suspense**.*

suspicious

adjective

1 suspecting something bad.

*I became **suspicious** when my friends didn't answer the telephone for a week.*

2 behaving in a way that makes people suspect you.



*A **suspicious** character was climbing into the house.*

■ say **su-spish-us**

swallow

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

swallow

swallows **swallowing** **swallowed** verb

to make your food go down your throat and into your stomach.



The snake **swallowed** the egg whole.

swallow

swallows noun

a small bird with long wings and a forked tail. Swallows eat mainly insects and are found in most parts of the world.

swam

from the verb **to swim**
I **swam** across the pool.

swamp

swamps noun
an area of wet or marshy land.

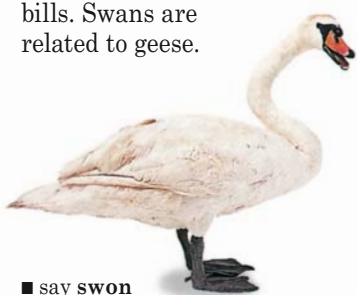


A mangrove **swamp**.

swan

swans noun

a large bird that lives in and around water. Swans feed on water plants, which they grasp with their sharp-edged bills. Swans are related to geese.



■ say swon

swap

swaps **swapping** **swapped** verb
to give one thing in return for something else.
He **swapped** his toy for her tennis racket.

swarm

swarms noun
a large number of insects moving together.
A **swarm** of bees.

■ say swarm

sway

sways **swaying** **swayed** verb
to swing or lean from side to side.



The trees **swayed** in the wind.

swear

swears **swearing** **swore** **sworn** verb
1 to make a solemn promise.
She **swears** that she didn't do it.
2 to speak rude or unpleasant words.

sweat

noun
the salty liquid that comes out of your skin when you are hot.
She was covered in **sweat** after the race.
sweat verb

sweatshirt

sweatshirts noun
a thick, cotton shirt with long sleeves.



sweep

sweeps **sweeping** **swept** verb
1 to clean up dust, dirt, or other mess using a brush.



2 to push away.
The flood **swept** the car off the road.

sweet

adjective
1 containing sugar or tasting like sugar.
Grapes are very **sweet**.
2 very pleasant or kind.
It was **sweet** of you to bring me flowers.
■ comparisons sweeter sweetest

sweet

sweets noun
a small piece of snack food, made mostly of sugar, and also called candy.



swell

swells **swelling** **swelled** **swollen** verb
to become larger.



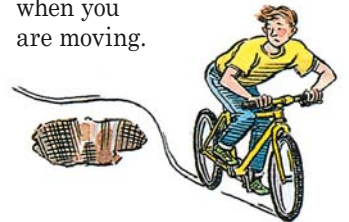
The male frigate bird's throat **swells** up to attract females.

swelling

swellings noun
a swollen place on the body.
She had a **swelling** where she had bumped her head.

swerve

swerves **swerving** **swerved** verb
to turn quickly to one side when you are moving.



The cyclist **swerved** to avoid the hole.

swift

adjective
moving quickly.
■ comparisons swifter swiftest

swim

swims **swimming** **swam** **swum** verb
to move through water using arms, legs, or fins.



swim noun

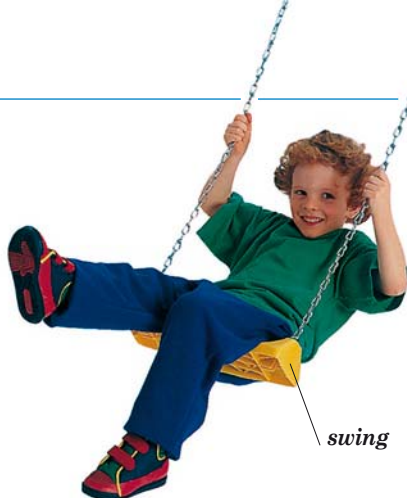
swimming pool

swimming pools noun
a large, artificial area of water for swimming in.

swing

swings swinging swung *verb*
to move backward and forward, usually while hanging from a support.

swing *noun*

**symbol**

symbols *noun*
a sign or object that reminds you of something else, or represents something else.



*A dove is a **symbol** of peace.*

■ say sim-bul

symmetrical

adjective
having two halves that match each other.



*This cut-out shape is **symmetrical** through its middle.*

■ say si-met-ri-kul

symmetry *noun*

sympathy

noun
a caring feeling shown by someone for someone else. *When you're hurt, it's nice to get **sympathy**.*

■ say sim-puh-thee
sympathetic *adjective*

symptom

symptoms *noun*
a sign that shows you have a particular illness or disease. *One of the **symptoms** of measles is red spots.*

■ say simp-tum

synagogue

synagogues *noun*
a building where Jews go to worship.

■ say sin-uh-gog

synthetic

adjective
made with artificial materials, not natural ones.

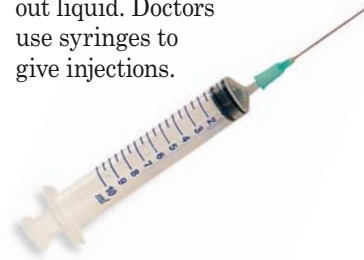


*This frog is made from **synthetic** fur.*

■ say sin-thet-ik

syringe

syringes *noun*
a tube with a nozzle or hollow needle attached that is used for sucking up and squirting out liquid. Doctors use syringes to give injections.



■ say suh-rinj

syrup

syrups *noun*
a sweet, sticky liquid food, often made from sugar.



maple syrup



■ say sur-up

system

systems *noun*
a group of things that work together in an organized way.

■ say sis-tum

swirl

swirls swirling swirled *verb*
to move with a twisting or circular motion.



*The boat and leaves **swirled** around as they floated downstream.*

swoop

swoops swooping swooped *verb*
to move downward through the air in a curving movement.



*The stunt plane **swooped** down out of the sky.*

sword

swords *noun*
a weapon with a long blade and a handle.



18th-century sword

■ say sord

swore

from the verb to swear
*She **swore** she was telling the truth.*

syllable

syllables *noun*
a word or part of a word made up of a single sound. The word "once" has one syllable and the word "single" has two.

■ say sil-uh-bul

switch

switches *noun*
a lever or button used to turn equipment or a machine on and off.
switch *verb*

swivel

swivels swiveling swiveled *verb*
to turn around on a central point.



Swiveling around on a chair.

Tt

table

tables *noun*

1 a piece of furniture with a flat surface and legs underneath to support it.



2 a list of facts or figures written in columns.
A multiplication table.

tablet

tablets *noun*

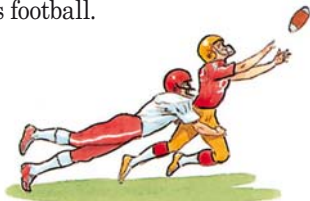
a small, hard piece of medicine.

tackle

tackles tackling tackled *verb*

1 to try to solve something.
They had to tackle some difficult math problems.

2 to seize and try to throw someone to the ground, usually in a sport such as football.



tactful

adjective

trying to avoid hurting someone's feelings.

She was very tactful when talking about his new haircut.

■ opposite **tactless**

tactfully *adverb*

tactics

noun

methods used to make something happen.

The team's tactics helped to win the game.

tactical *adjective*

tadpole

tadpoles *noun*

a young frog or toad. Tadpoles live in water. As they grow their tails get smaller and they grow legs.



tail

tails *noun*

the part that sticks out beyond the back end of an animal's body.



tailor

tailors *noun*

a person who makes or mends clothes. Tailors usually make clothes to fit a particular person.

take

takes taking took taken *verb*

1 to get hold of or carry.

She took her coat off the rack.

2 to bring or lead.

My parents took me to the movie theater.

3 to make use of something.

Take the first turn on the left.

4 to require or need.

It takes three hours to cook.

5 to travel by or on something.

Let's take the bus.

6 to remove or steal.



The thief took a wallet from someone's coat pocket.

tale

tales *noun*

a story about things that may not be true.

A fairy tale.

talent

talents *noun*

a special natural skill or ability.

She showed a talent for dancing at an early age.



talk

talks talking talked *verb*

to say words, or to speak.

He talked to his sister on the telephone for an hour.

■ say **tawk**

talk *noun*

talkative

adjective

talking a lot.

Our parrot is very talkative.

tall

adjective

1 very high.



The tall office building was surrounded by shorter ones.

■ opposite **short**

2 having a particular height.

He is 4 feet tall.

■ comparisons **taller tallest**

tambourine

tambourines *noun*

a musical instrument that is held in the hand and shaken or tapped to provide a rhythm.



■ say tam-buh-reen

tame

adjective

used to living or working with human beings.

The bird they rescued from the cat became very tame.

■ comparisons **tamer tamest**

■ opposite **wild**

tan

tans *noun*

the color of your skin after you've been in the sun.

tan *verb*

tangle

tangles tangling tangled *verb*

to twist into an untidy mass of knots.



The kittens tangled the yarn.

tangle *noun*

tank**tanks** *noun*

- 1 a large container for liquid or gas.
- 2 a heavy vehicle with guns that moves along on metal belts instead of wheels.

**tanker****tankers** *noun*

a vehicle or large ship that carries oil or other liquids.

tantrum**tantrums** *noun*

a noisy display of bad temper.



*He had a **tantrum** when he was told to clean his room.*

tap**taps tapping tapped** *verb*

to hit gently with your fingers.



*She **tapped** on his shoulder.*
tap *noun*

tap**taps** *noun*

a device that you turn to control the flow of liquid or gas from a pipe.

tape**tapes** *noun*

- 1 a long, narrow strip of material such as paper, plastic, or metal.



*three kinds
of **tape***

- 2 a strip of plastic coated with magnetic powder that is used for recording sounds, video pictures, and computer information.

tape measure**tape measures** *noun*

a tape marked in centimeters and inches that is used for measuring length.

**tar****tar** *noun*

a thick, dark, sticky liquid that is made from coal or wood. Tar is used in making road surfaces.

target**targets** *noun*

an object that you try to hit when shooting or throwing something.



*archery **target***

tartan**tartan** *adjective*

decorated with a special pattern of lines and squares. Tartan patterns originally came from Scotland.



***tartan** scarf*

task**tasks** *noun*

a piece of work or a duty.
*My **task** was cleaning the car.*

taste**taste** *noun*

- 1 one of the body's five senses that we use to find out the flavor of something.
- 2 the flavor of something when you have licked it or put it in your mouth.



*She tried the soup to see if she liked the **taste**.*

taste *verb***tasty** *adjective***tattoo****tattoos** *noun*

a permanent picture or design printed on someone's skin using needles filled with colored ink.

tax**taxes** *noun*

money that people have to pay to a government that is used to provide public services.
tax *verb*

taxi**taxis** *noun*

a car that you can hire to travel in by paying the driver money (see **car** on page 39).

■ say tak-see

tea**tea** *noun*

a drink made by pouring boiling water onto the chopped, dried leaves of the tea plant.

tea plant *leaves***cup of tea****teach****teaches teaching taught** *verb*

to help someone learn about a subject or learn a skill.
*He has **taught** history for three years.*

teacup**teacups** *noun*

a cup used for drinking tea.

**team****teams** *noun*

a group of people who work or play sports together.



*football **team***

teapot**teapots** *noun*

a container with a spout, lid, and handle that is used for making and serving tea.

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

tear

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

tear

tears tearing tore torn *verb*
to make a hole or split in something by pulling hard.



*The dog **tore** his pant leg.*

■ rhymes with **care**
tear *noun*

tear

tears *noun*
a drop of salty water that comes from your eyes when you cry.



■ rhymes with **deer**

tease

teases teasing teased *verb*
to bother someone by saying or doing things in a playful, but annoying way.
*He **teased** his little sister about her dolls.*

technology

noun
science that is put to use in everyday life.
*Medical **technology**.*
■ say tek-nol-uh-jee
technological *adjective*

teenager

teenagers *noun*
a person between the ages of 13 and 19 (see **growth** on page 94).

telephone

telephones *noun*
an instrument that allows you to talk to and hear people who are far away, by means of electrical signals. Telephone is often shortened to phone.



telescope

telescopes *noun*
an instrument with lenses inside it. When you look through it distant things appear closer and larger.



television

televisions *noun*
a piece of electrical equipment that receives pictures and sound that are broadcast by a television station. Television is often shortened to TV.



*flat-screen **television***

tell

tells telling told *verb*
to put something into words, or let someone know something.
***Tell** me a story.*

temper

tempers *noun*
1 a mood.
*Are you in a good **temper** today?*
2 an angry mood.
*She threw the book across the room in a **temper**.*

temperature

temperatures *noun*
a measurement of how hot or cold something is.



*She took the child's **temperature**.*
■ say tem-pur-uh-chur

temple

temples *noun*
a building where people go to worship.



*Buddhist **temple***
■ say tem-pul

temporary

adjective
lasting for only a short time.



*The box was a **temporary** bed for the cat.*
■ say tem-puh-rare-ee
■ opposite **permanent**
temporarily *adverb*

tempt

tempts tempting tempted *verb*
to try to persuade someone to do something that they wouldn't usually do or shouldn't do.
*Can I **tempt** you to take another slice of cake?*
■ say temt
temptation *noun*

tendency

tendencies *noun*
the way that a person or thing usually or often behaves.
*She has a **tendency** to be late.*
tend *verb*

tender

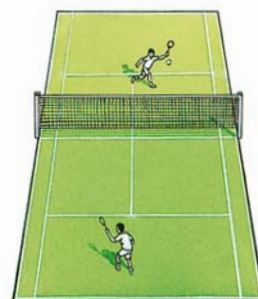
adjective
1 easy to chew or cut.
*A **tender** piece of steak.*
2 feeling sore when touched.



*The lion had a **tender** paw after stepping on a thorn.*
3 gentle and loving.
*He gave his baby a **tender** smile.*
tenderly *adverb*

tennis

noun
a game that is played with a racket and ball on a court divided by a net. The players try to hit the ball over the net in a way that makes it hard for their opponent to return it (see **sport** on page 197).



tennis court

tense

adjective

1 nervous.

2 stretched tight.

Tense muscles.

■ opposite **relaxed**

tense

noun

a form of a verb that shows whether the action is taking place in the past, present, or future.

tent

tents *noun*

a portable shelter made of waterproof material stretched over a frame of poles.



term

terms *noun*

one of the periods of time during a year when a school or university is open for teaching.

terminal

terminals *noun*

a building at the end of a travel route where passengers arrive and depart.

terrible

adjective

very bad or unpleasant.

*It was a **terrible** day.*

terrify

terrifies terrifying terrified *verb*

to frighten very badly.



*Heights **terrified** him.*

territory

territories *noun*

an area of land that is controlled by a country's laws or lived in by an animal.
*The pride of lions never left their own **territory**.*

■ say **tear**-i-tor-ee

terror

noun

great fear.

terrorist

terrorists *noun*

a person who uses or threatens to use violence to force people to do something, usually for a political cause.

terrorism *noun*

terrorize *verb*

test

tests testing tested *verb*

to try something out.



*She **tested** the liquid to see if it was an acid.*

test *noun*

text

noun

the words of something written or printed.

text message

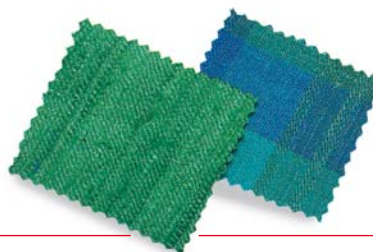
noun

a written message sent between cell phones.

textile

textiles *noun*

a cloth or fabric made by weaving or knitting.



texture

textures *noun*

the way something feels when you touch it.



*Sandpaper has a rough **texture**.*

■ say **teks**-chur

thank

thanks thanking thanked *verb*

to say that you are grateful for something.

*They **thanked** him for their presents.*

thank you *interjection*

thaw

thaws thawing thawed *verb*

to melt or to make something melt.

*The snow started to **thaw** in the sunshine.*

thaw *noun*



theater

theaters *noun*

a building where plays and shows are performed.

■ say **thee**-uh-tur

theft

thefts *noun*

the act of stealing.

*He reported the **theft** of the painting to the police.*



theme

themes *noun*

a main subject, idea, or topic.



*The **theme** of the costume party was cartoon characters.*

theory

theories *noun*

an idea about how or why something happens.

*She tested her **theory** with scientific experiments.*

■ say **thee**-uh-ree or **theer**-ee

thermometer

thermometers *noun*

a device that measures temperature.

■ say **thur**-mom-i-tur



*wall **thermometer***

thesaurus

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

thesaurus

thesauruses or **thesauri** *noun*
a book that groups words that have similar meanings together.
■ say thi-saur-rus

thick

adjective
1 large in width or depth.

thick candle



2 packed closely together.
A thick forest.
■ opposite **thin**
3 having a certain measurement in width or depth.
The plank was three inches thick.
■ comparisons **thicker thickest**

thief

thieves *noun*
a person who steals things.
■ rhymes with **beef**

thigh

thighs *noun*
the part of your leg between your knee and your hip.



thigh

■ rhymes with **sky**

thimble

thimbles *noun*
a small, hard covering worn on the end of your finger when you are sewing. The thimble protects your finger and helps you push the needle through the fabric.

thin

adjective
1 small in width or depth.

thin candle



2 hardly covered.
A thin layer of snow covered the ground.
■ opposite **thick**
3 not having much fat.
A thin man.
■ opposite **fat**
■ comparisons **thinner thinnest**

thing

things *noun*
1 an object that is not alive.
2 an idea or an action.
There are four things I want to do this evening.

think

thinks thinking thought *verb*
to use your mind to create ideas or opinions.



She thought about what she could eat for lunch.

thirsty

adjective
needing something to drink.



He was very thirsty after a day without water.

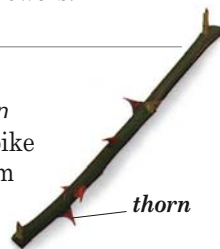
■ comparisons **thirstier thirstiest**

thistle

thistles *noun*
a wild plant with prickly leaves and purple, white, or yellow flowers.

thorn

thorns *noun*
a sharp spike on the stem of a plant.



thorough

adjective
complete in every way.
He had a thorough search for his book.
■ say thur-oh
thoroughly *adverb*

thought

thoughts *noun*
an idea or opinion that you have been thinking about.
■ say thawt

thoughtful

adjective
caring about other people's feelings and needs.



It was thoughtful of her to help him.

■ say thawt-ful
■ opposite **thoughtless**

thread

threads *noun*
a thin yarn such as cotton or silk, that is used for sewing.
■ say thred



sewing thread

embroidery thread

thread

threads threading threaded *verb*
to pass a length of thread or rope through a hole in something.



Threading beads onto a string.

threat

threats *noun*
a warning that something may happen.
There's a threat of rain in the air.
■ say thret
threaten *verb*

thrill

thrills *noun*
an excited feeling.
It was a real thrill to ride on the roller coaster.
thrilling *adjective*

throat

throats *noun*
the tube that leads from your mouth, through your neck, to your stomach and lungs.
■ rhymes with **boat**

throne

thrones *noun*
a special chair used by a ruler of a country.



through*preposition*

from one side or end to the other.

*She drove **through** the tunnel.*

■ say **throo**

throw

throws **throwing** **threw** **thrown** *verb*

to send something out of your hand and through the air forcefully.

**thud***noun*

a dull sound made when a heavy object falls on something.

*The book dropped to the floor with a **thud**.*

thumb*noun*

the short, thick finger set apart from your other fingers at the side of your hand.

thumb

■ say **thum**

thunder*noun*

a loud, rumbling sound that comes after a flash of lightning during a storm.

thunderstorm*thunderstorms noun*

a storm that has thunder and lightning.

**tick***ticks noun*

1 a small animal that feed on the blood of animals.
2 the clicking sound of a clock.
*Each clock **tick** made me more nervous.*
tick *verb*

ticket*tickets noun*

a piece of paper that shows that you have paid to do something, such as travel on a bus or go into a theater.

**tickle***tickles tickling tickled verb*

to touch someone's skin lightly, making them laugh or squirm.

tide*tides noun*

the regular change in the level of the sea that happens twice a day.



*The **tide** is out.*

tidy

tidies **tidying** **tidied** *verb*
to put in order.



*He **tidied** up his room.*

tie*ties tying tied verb*

1 to fasten something with a knot or bow.



*She **tied** a ribbon in her hair.*
2 to score the same number of points as someone else in a contest.

*They **tied** for first place.*

tie *noun*

tie*ties noun*

a thin strip of fabric worn around the neck and knotted under the collar of a shirt.

tiger*tigers noun*

a large, wild mammal that is part of the cat family. Tigers live in many regions of Asia, from tropical forests to cold plains. They hunt at night for their food.

**tight***adjective*

fitting closely.

*A **tight** fit.*

■ say **tite**

■ comparisons **tighter** **tightest**

■ opposite **loose**

tighten *verb*

tightly *adverb*

tightrope*tightropes noun*

a rope stretched high above the ground that acrobats balance on.

**tile***tiles noun*

a thin piece of decorated baked clay or other material that is used as a wall or floor covering.

**till***tills tilling tilled verb*

to prepare land for planting.
*The farmer **tilled** his fields before planting the new season's crops.*

tillable *adjective*

tilt*tilts tilting tilted verb*

to move or be moved into a sloping or leaning position.
*The huge pile of books **tilted** dangerously.*

timber*noun*

cut wood that is used for building and making things.

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

time

time

times noun

1 all of the past, present, and future.
Time is measured in periods such as centuries, years, months, weeks, days, and hours.

2 a particular point in the day.

What time is it?

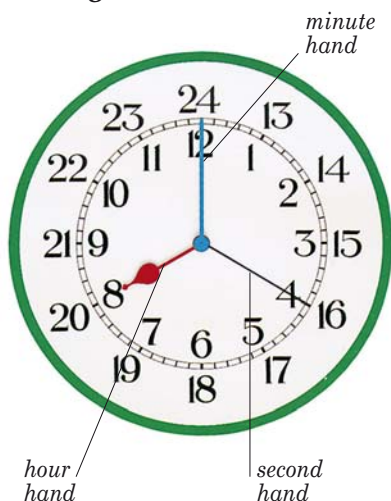
3 a period in the past, present, or future.

In Roman times, many roads were built throughout Europe.

4 an occasion or event.

I go swimming three times a week.

Telling the time



24-hour clock



o'clock



quarter past



half past

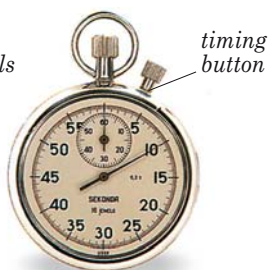


quarter to

Time-measuring devices



pocket watch



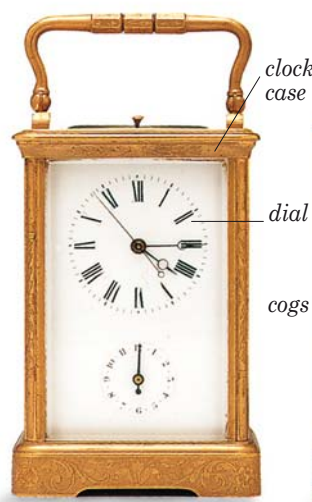
stopwatch



back view

front view

wristwatch

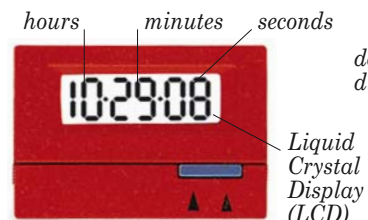


front view



back view

carriage clock



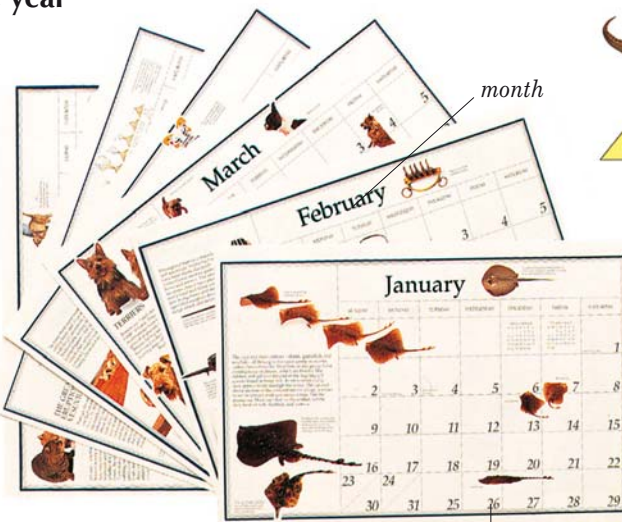
digital alarm clock



nurse's watch

Months of the year

January
February
March
April
May
June
July
August
September
October
November
December



calendar

date

Time periods

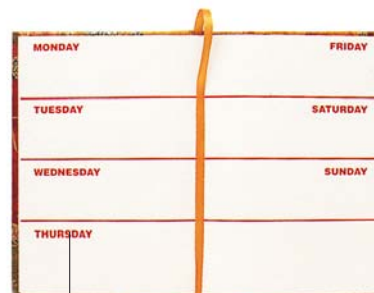


past

present

future

Days of the week



day

date book

Monday
Tuesday
Wednesday
Thursday
Friday
Saturday
Sunday

timetable

timetables *noun*

a chart that shows the times when events should happen, or when jobs should be done.



He checked the **timetable** to find out when the bus left.

timid

adjective

easily frightened or shy.

The bird was very **timid** and flew away when I moved.

timidly *adverb*

tin

tins *noun*

1 a light, soft, silvery metal.



tin ore



tin can

2 a metal container for putting things in or for preserving food.

tingle

tingles tingling tingled *verb*

to have a slight stinging feeling in a part of your body. Carbonated drinks make my mouth **tingle**.

tinkle

tinkles tinkling tinkled *verb*

to make a light, ringing sound. The bells **tinkled** as the sleigh moved along.

tiny

adjective

very small.

■ comparisons **tinier tiniest**

tip

tips tipping tipped *verb*

1 to move something so that it is not upright.

2 to turn something over so that the contents fall out. She **tipped** the dirty water out of the bucket.

tip

tips *noun*

1 the narrow, pointed end of something.



Touching the **tip** of his nose.

2 a helpful hint or piece of useful information.

Do you have any **tips** for getting rid of stains?

3 a small, extra gift of money, given in return for a service.

I left the waiter in the restaurant a **tip**.

tiptoe

tiptoes tiptoeing tiptoed *verb*

to walk slowly and quietly on your toes.



tired

adjective

feeling that you would like to sleep or rest.

She felt **tired** after working in the garden all day.

tissue

tissues *noun*

1 a thin, soft paper used for wiping skin.



2 a material that makes up a part of a living thing.

Brain **tissue**.

■ say tish-yoo

title

titles *noun*

1 the name of a creative piece of work such as a book, movie, or painting.

2 a person's professional position.

Her **title** was Senior Editor.

■ say tite-l

toad

toads *noun*

an amphibian similar to a frog, but with a rougher, dryer skin. Toads eat insects, usually live on land, and move along with short hops. They hibernate in winter.

green toad



toadstool

toadstools *noun*

a poisonous fungus with an umbrella-shaped top.

toast

noun

1 bread that is grilled on both sides until it is crisp and brown.

2 the action of wishing someone well by raising your glass and drinking.

Let's drink a **toast** to the bride and groom.

toast *verb*

tobacco

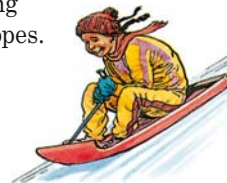
noun

a plant whose leaves are dried and used in cigarettes and pipes.

toboggan

toboggans *noun*

a flat sled that is used for sliding down slopes.



today

adverb

on this day.

I'm going to the zoo **today**.

today *noun*

toddler

toddlers *noun*

a young child who is learning or has just learned to walk (see **growth** on page 94).

toe

toes *noun*

one of the five separate parts at the end of your foot.

toe



toffee

toffees *noun*

a chewy sweet made from sugar and butter.



together

adverb

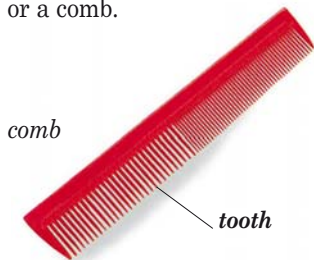
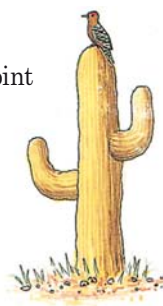
with each other.

Shall we go **together**?

toilet

toilets *noun*

a bowl with a seat that is connected to a drain and flushed with water. People use toilets to dispose of waste from the body.

told*from the verb to tell**She **told** her friends what she had done over the weekend.***tomato****tomatoes** *noun**a soft, juicy, red fruit that can be eaten raw in salads or cooked (see **fruit** on page 85).**ripe beef tomato***tomorrow****adverb***on the day after today.**I'm going away **tomorrow**.***tomorrow** *noun***tone****tones** *noun**the quality of a sound or a voice.**He spoke in a **low tone**.*■ rhymes with **own****tongue****tongues** *noun**a flexible flap of muscle in your mouth that you use to eat, taste, and speak.*■ say **tung****tonight****adverb***on the evening and night of the present day.**Let's go to the concert **tonight**.***tonight** *noun***tonsil****tonsils** *noun**one of two small lumps of tissue at the back of your throat.***took***from the verb to take**He **took** the can out of the cupboard.***tool****tools** *noun**a piece of equipment that helps you do a job.***toolbox***saw**screwdriver**hammer***tooth****teeth** *noun**1 one of the hard, white, bonelike structures inside your mouth that you use for biting and chewing.**tooth**2 one of the pointed parts on an object such as a saw or a comb.**comb**tooth***toothbrush****toothbrushes** *noun**a small brush with a long handle that you use for cleaning your teeth.***top****tops** *noun**1 the highest point of something.**The bird sat on the very **top** of the cactus.*■ opposite **bottom**
2 a lid.*3 a spinning toy.**4 a piece of clothing worn on the upper part of your body.**pajama top***topic****topics** *noun**a subject that is spoken or written about.**The fire was the main **topic** of conversation for weeks.***topple****topples toppling toppled** *verb**to fall over.**The dominoes **toppled** over.***torch****torches** *noun**a burning piece of wood carried as a light.**Olympic torch***tore***from the verb to tear**She **tore** her sleeve on a nail.***tornado****tornadoes** or **tornados** *noun**a violent, whirling wind that causes great damage to the land and buildings.*■ say **tor-nay-doh****tortoise****tortoises** *noun**a slow-moving reptile with a hard shell. Tortoises live in hot regions. They eat grass and other plants and can live a long time (see **reptile** on page 168).*■ say **tort-us****toss****tosses tossing tossed** *verb**1 to throw with a quick, easy motion.**We **tossed** the ball around before the game.**2 to throw a coin and guess which side will face up in order to decide something.*
*We **tossed** a coin to see who should have the first turn.***toss** *noun*

total**totals** *noun*

the entire amount of everything added together.
The total of 2, 3, and 4 is 9.

■ say **tote-l****total****adjective**

complete.
Total darkness.

toucan**toucans** *noun*

a colorful bird with a large beak that lives in the rain forests of South America. Toucans nest in holes in trees and feed on fruit, insects, small lizards, and eggs.

■ say **too-kan****touch**

touches touching touched *verb*
 to put your hand or another part of your body on something.



Can you touch the floor with your hands, while keeping your legs straight?

■ say **tuch****touch** *noun***tough****adjective**

1 strong and not easy to break or damage.



Crash helmets are made of tough plastic.

■ opposite **weak**

2 very difficult.

A tough problem.■ opposite **easy**■ say **tuff**■ comparisons **tougher toughest****tour****tours** *noun*

a journey that takes you to see several places.

We went on a sightseeing tour of the city.

■ say **toor****tourist****tourists** *noun*

a person who travels and visits places for pleasure.

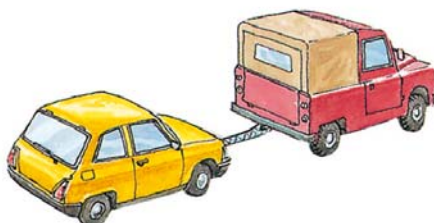
**tournament****tournaments** *noun*

a series of contests or matches in a sport or game.

*A chess tournament.***tow****tows towing towed** *verb*

to pull something along behind.

The truck towed the car to the garage.

■ say **toe****toward****preposition**

in the direction of.



The horse trotted across the field toward her.

towel**towels** *noun*

a piece of soft, thick cloth or paper that is used for drying things.

**tower****towers** *noun*

a tall, narrow structure.

The Eiffel Tower.■ rhymes with **our****town****towns** *noun*

a place with houses and other buildings, where people live, work, and shop. A town is smaller than a city but larger than a village.

toy**toys** *noun*

an object to play with.

*jack-in-the-box***trace****traces tracing traced** *verb*

1 to copy a picture by placing a sheet of thin paper over it and drawing around the outline.



She traced the picture of a tiger from a book.

2 to follow or discover something by observing marks or clues.

She traced her family's history back three centuries.

trace**traces** *noun*

a small mark or track left behind by something.

There were traces of a fire in the cave.

track**tracks** *noun*

1 a mark or marks left by someone or something that is moving.



The fox left tracks in the fresh snow.

2 a path or rough road.
They drove the truck up a bumpy track.

3 a course used for races.
They did four laps around the running track.

4 rails laid on the ground for trains to run on.

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

tractor

tractor

tractors *noun*

a farm vehicle with large wheels that is used for pulling heavy loads or machinery over rough ground.



trade

trades trading traded *verb*
to exchange one thing for another.

tradition

traditions *noun*

a special event, belief, or way of doing something that has continued in the same way for many years.

*It is a **tradition** to celebrate the New Year with a party.*

■ say truh-dish-un

traditional *adjective*

traffic

noun

vehicles, ships, or aircraft moving along a route.



*There was a lot of **traffic** on the bridge.*

tragedy

tragedies *noun*

1 a very sad and unfortunate event.

*The train crash was a terrible **tragedy**.*

2 a play with a sad ending.
*Shakespeare's Romeo and Juliet is a **tragedy**.*

■ say traj-i-dee

tragic

adjective

bringing great sadness.

*A **tragic** accident.*

■ say traj-ik

tragically *adverb*

trail

trails trailing trailed *verb*

1 to drag something along behind or let something hang loosely.



*He **trailed** his toy train behind him.*

2 to walk or move slowly behind someone.

*The children **trailed** along behind their mother.*

trail

trails *noun*

1 a path or track.

*A nature **trail**.*

2 a track, scent, or other sign left by something that has passed by.



*He left a **trail** of garbage behind him.*

trailer

trailers *noun*

a small vehicle or container that can be towed behind a car, truck, or tractor.

train

trains *noun*

a vehicle that runs on tracks. Train cars are pulled along by an engine in front.



train

trains training trained *verb*

1 to practice doing exercises or skills for a sport.

*She **trains** for three hours a day.*

2 to teach or to learn a skill.

*He **trained** his dog to sit.*

training *noun*



traitor

traitors *noun*

a person who turns against his or her country or friends by helping an enemy.

trample

tramples trampling trampled *verb*

to crush something by stepping on it.



*The dog **trampled** all over the flowers.*

trampoline

trampolines *noun*

a piece of gymnastic equipment made of strong fabric and attached to a frame by springs.



■ say tram-puh-leen

trance

trances *noun*

a kind of sleep, or a dazed state, when you are not completely conscious.

■ say trans

transfer

transfers transferring *verb*

transferred *verb*

to move something from one person or place to another.

*He **transferred** his money to a savings account.*

translate

translates translating translated *verb*

to turn words in one language into words of another language.

*She **translated** the French poem into English.*

transparent

adjective

able to be seen through.



*This pitcher is **transparent**.*

■ say trans-pair-unt

transplant

transplants *noun*

an operation to move an organ or tissue from one person or part of the body to another.

*A heart **transplant**.*

transportation

noun

a way of carrying goods or people from one place to another. Different methods of transportation are used to travel on land, on water, or in the air.



dairy tanker



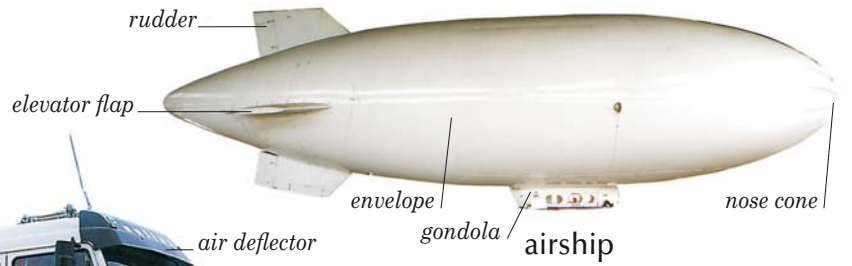
rickshaw



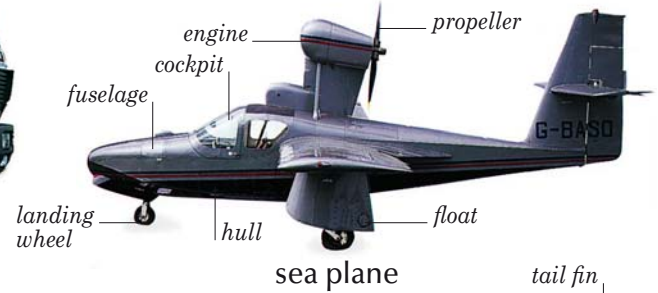
motorcycle



mountain bike



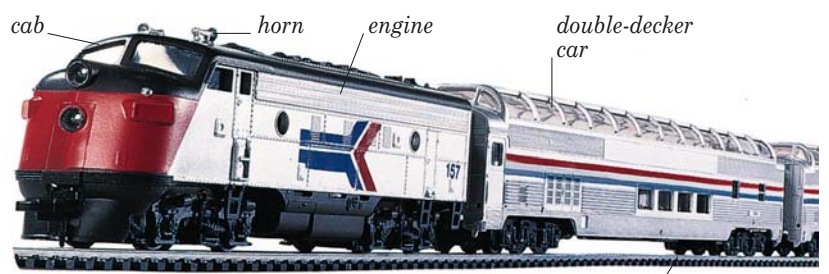
airship



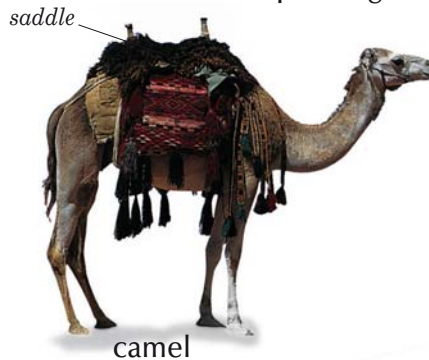
sea plane



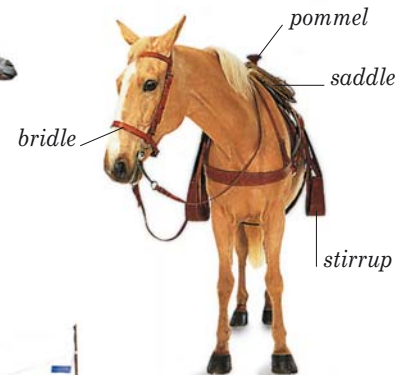
helicopter



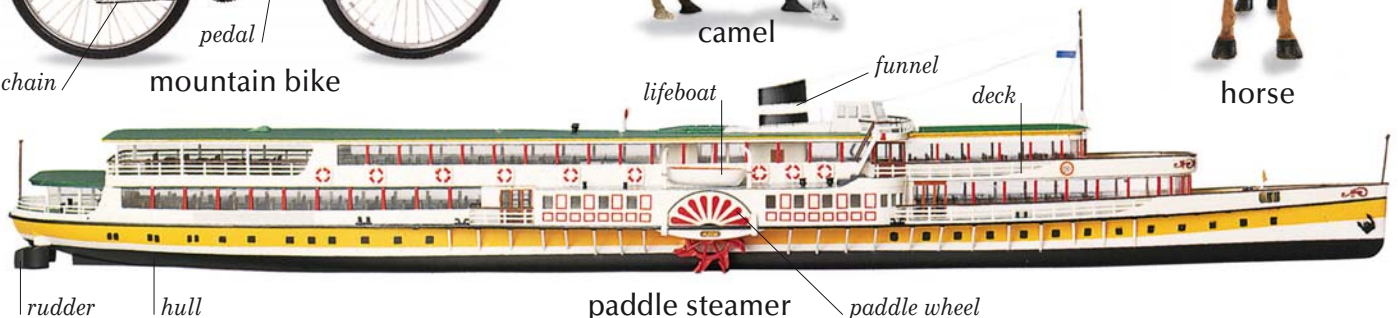
passenger train



camel



horse



paddle steamer

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

transport

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

transport

transports *verb*
transported *verb*

to carry people or things from one place to another.
*The goods were **transported** by train.*

transportation *noun*

trap

traps *verb*
trapping *verb*
trapped *verb*
to catch an animal or person and hold them in some way so that they cannot get away.
trap *noun*

trapdoor

trapdoors *noun*
a small door cut into a floor, on a stage, or in the ceiling.



trapeze

trapezes *noun*
a high swing used by acrobats for performing stunts.



trash

trash *noun*
garbage, or something that is worthless or useless.

traumatic

traumatic *adjective*
upsetting enough to have a long-lasting effect on someone.
*Giving evidence in the trial was very **traumatic**.*

■ say **traw**-ma-tik
trauma *noun*

travel

travels *verb*
traveling *verb*
traveled *verb*
to go from one place to another.



*We **traveled** around the lakes and mountains on vacation.*
travel *noun*

trawler

trawlers *noun*
a boat that is used to catch fish by dragging a large net behind it along the bottom of the sea.



tray

trays *noun*
a flat board, often with a rim, that is used for carrying food and drinks.



treacherous

treacherous *adjective*
very dangerous.



*The sea can be **treacherous** for a small boat.*
■ say **trech**-ur-us

tread

treads *noun*
the raised part of a tire.
■ say **tred**

tread



tread

treads *verb*
treading *verb*
trod *verb*
trodden *verb*
to put your foot on something.



*The elephant **trod** on his foot.*

treason

treason *noun*
the act of being a traitor to your country by trying to destroy the government or the ruler, or by helping the enemy during a war.

■ say **tree**-zun

treasure

treasures *noun*
a large amount of gold, jewels, or other valuable things.



■ say **trezh**-ur

treasurer

treasurers *noun*
a person who looks after the money and accounts of a government, a club, or a company.

treat

treats *noun*
a special thing that gives someone pleasure.



*They were taken to the fair as a birthday **treat**.*

■ say **treet**

treat

treats *verb*
treating *verb*
treated *verb*
1 to behave in a certain way toward people, animals, or things.
*She **treats** her pet hamster very well.*
2 to try to make someone well.



*She **treated** the cut on his head.*

treatment *noun*

treaty

treaties *noun*
an agreement made between countries.



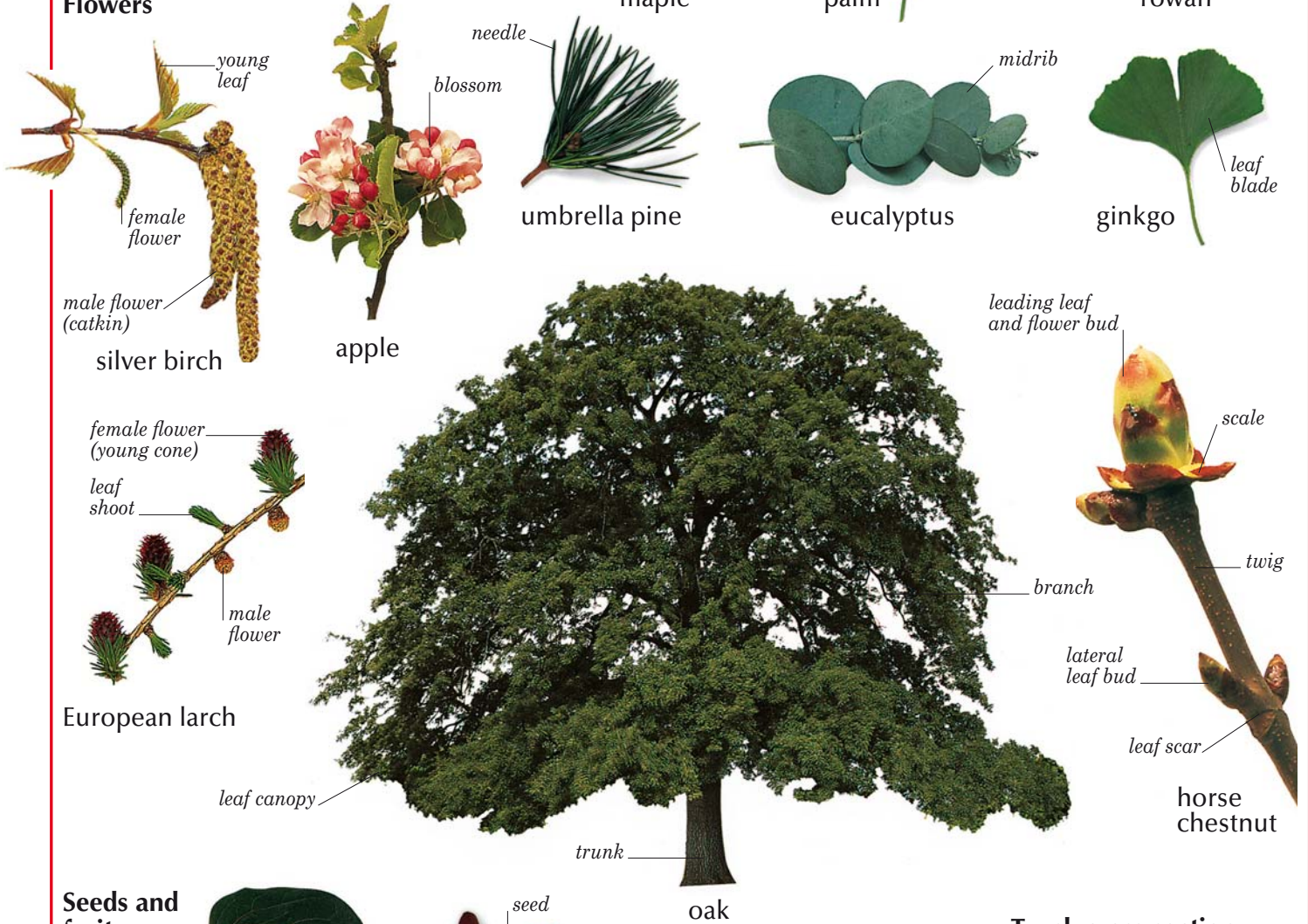
*Signing a peace **treaty**.*

tree

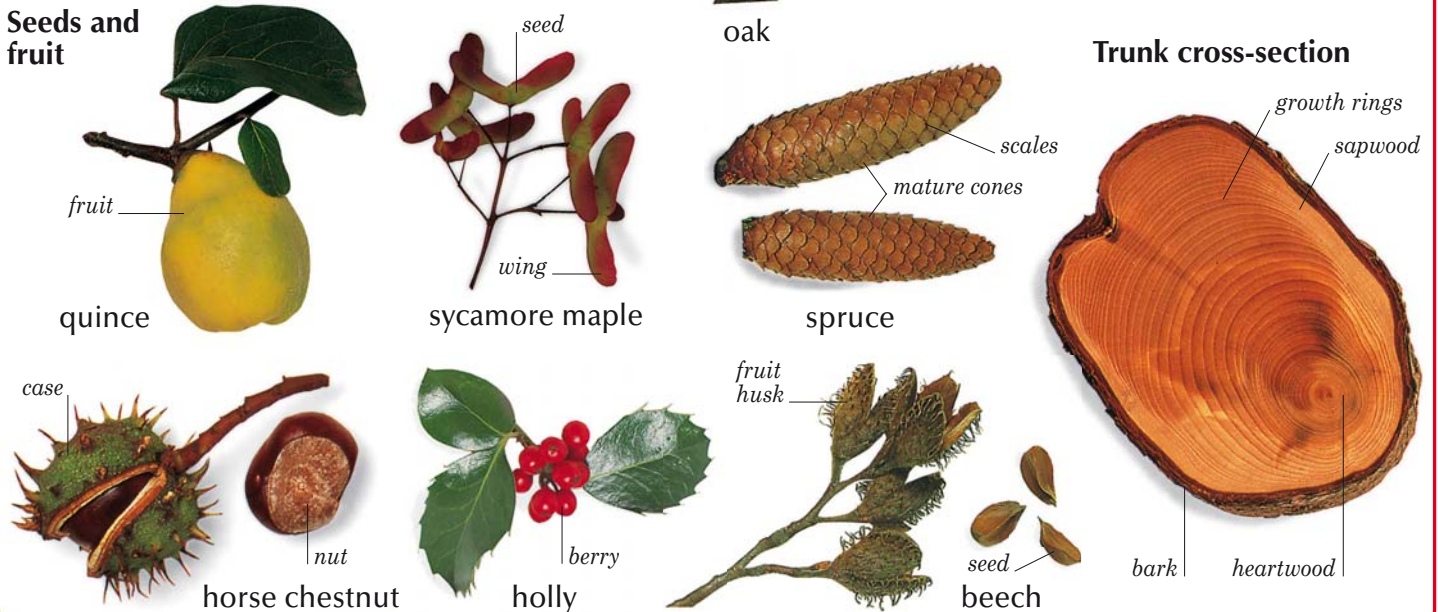
trees noun

a tall plant with branches, leaves, and a main stem called a trunk. Trees are either deciduous or evergreen.

Flowers



Seeds and fruit



Trunk cross-section



a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

tremble

tremble

trembles *trembling* **trembled** *verb*
to shake with fear or cold.

trial

trials *noun*
1 the legal process by which a judge and jury decide whether a person is guilty or innocent of a crime.
She is on trial for theft.
2 an experiment or test to see what something is like or to see if it works.
The new sports car passed its trials successfully.
■ say try-ul

triangle

triangles *noun*
1 a shape with three sides (see **shape** on page 182).
triangular *adjective*
2 a musical instrument. A triangle is played by hitting one of the metal sides with a small metal rod.



trick

tricks *noun*
1 a skillful action that is done to entertain someone.



A magic trick.
2 something done to fool someone.
trick *verb*

trickle

trickles *trickling* **trickled** *verb*
to flow very slowly.
The raindrops trickled down the window.

tricycle

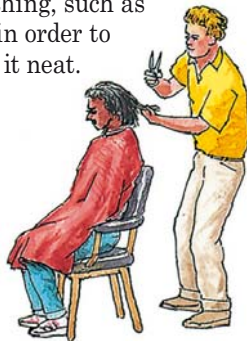
tricycles *noun*
a vehicle with three wheels that is moved by turning the pedals around, like a bicycle.



child's tricycle
■ say try-sik-ul

trim

trims *trimming* **trimmed** *verb*
to cut the edges or ends off something, such as hair, in order to make it neat.



The hairdresser trimmed his hair.

trip

trips *tripping* **tripped** *verb*
to stumble and fall.
I tripped over the book that she'd left on the floor.

trip

trips *noun*
a journey.
We went on a school trip to the museum.

tripod

tripods *noun*
a frame with three legs that is used as a support for a camera.



■ say try-pod

triumph

triumphs *noun*
a great success.
Winning the race was a triumph.
■ say try-umf
triumphant *adjective*

trod

from the verb to tread
She trod in a puddle and splashed her clothes.

trolley car

trolley cars *noun*
a vehicle that runs on tracks in streets and is powered by an electric current from an overhead wire.

trombone

trombones *noun*
a large, brass musical instrument, played by blowing through a mouthpiece. The notes are produced by sliding a long, bent tube backward and forward.



tenor
trombone

trophy

trophies *noun*
a cup, medal, or other prize that is given to the winner of a contest.



tennis trophy
■ say tro-fee

tropical

adjective
from the hot, wet area of the world near the equator.
Tropical *fruit.*

trot

trots *trotting* **trotted** *verb*
to move the way a horse does when it is walking fast. One of the horse's front hooves and the opposite back hoof are on the ground at the same time.



trot *noun*

trouble

troubles *noun*
a situation or problem that is worrying or difficult.
If you smash that window, you'll be in trouble!
■ say trub-ul

trough

troughs *noun*
a narrow, open container for animals to eat or drink from.
■ say trof

trousers

noun
pants; a piece of clothing that you wear on your legs.

trout**trout** *noun*

a type of edible fish that is part of the same family as the salmon. Most trout live in fresh water, but some species migrate to the sea after laying their eggs. They feed on insects, small fish, and shrimp.



rainbow trout

trowel**trowels** *noun*

a small hand tool similar to a shovel. Curved trowels are used for gardening. Flat ones are used for spreading cement.

gardening trowel

■ rhymes with **owl**

**truce****truces** *noun*

an agreement to stop fighting for a short time.

The armies called a truce.

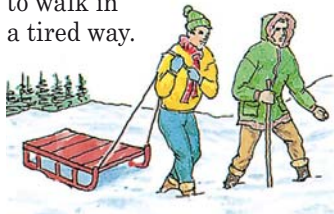
■ rhymes with **noose**

truck**trucks** *noun*

a large vehicle used for carrying goods from one place to another.

trudge**trudges** *trudging* **trudged** *verb*

to walk in a tired way.



They trudged home through the snow.

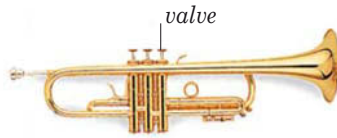
true**true** *adjective*

real and accurate.
A true story.

■ opposite **false**

trumpet**trumpets** *noun*

a small, brass musical instrument made of a long, curved, narrow tube with an end like a funnel. Notes are produced by pressing valves down and blowing through a mouthpiece.

**trunk****trunks** *noun*

1 the main stem of a tree (see **tree** on page 223).

2 the main part of the body of a person or animal, not including the head, arms, and legs.



3 the long nose of an elephant (see **mammal** on page 124).

4 a large box with a hinged lid, used for storing things.

trust**trusts** *trusting* **trusted** *verb*

to believe that someone or something is honest and reliable.

I trusted my friend not to give away the secret.

trust *noun*

trustworthy *adjective*

truth**truth** *noun*

something that is true.
Do you always tell the truth?

■ say **truth**

try**tries** *trying* **tried** *verb*

1 to make an effort to do something.

He tried to climb up the tree.

2 to test something to see if it works, or to put something on to see if it fits.



She tried on the gloves.

3 to decide in a trial, within a court of law, whether someone is innocent or guilty of a crime.

The court tried him for theft.

T-shirt**T-shirts** *noun*

a shirt made from knitted cotton with short sleeves and no collar.

**tub****tubs** *noun*

a rounded, open container that is used to store things or wash things.

tube**tubes** *noun*

1 a long, hollow pipe.

A cardboard tube.

2 a long, narrow container made of plastic or thin metal. The contents are removed by squeezing.



tube of toothpaste

tuck**tucks** *tucking***tucked** *verb*

1 to fold or push into place.



Tuck your shirt into your pants.

2 to cover up in a snug way.

I like being tucked in bed.

tuft**tufts** *noun*

a bunch of grass, threads, hair, or feathers that grows or is tied closely together.

tug**tugs** *tugging* **tugged** *verb*

to give something a quick, hard pull.

My sister tugged at my sleeve.

tulip**tulips** *noun*

a plant with a large, cup-shaped flower that grows from a bulb.

■ say **too-lip**

**tumble****tumbles** *tumbling* **tumbled** *verb*

to fall and roll over.

She tumbled down the hill.

tuna**tuna** or **tunas** *noun*

a large, edible sea fish. Tuna feed on squid and other fish. They are fast swimmers and migrate long distances every year.

■ say **too-nuh**

tune**tunes** *noun*

a series of musical notes put together in a certain order to form a melody.
*He sang a song and I played the **tune** on the piano.*

tunnel**tunnels** *noun*

an underground passage.

**turban****turbans** *noun*

a head covering consisting of a long strip of cloth wrapped around the head, worn especially by Muslim and Sikh men.

**turkey****turkeys** *noun*

a large bird that lives wild in the forests of North America. Turkeys feed on acorns, seeds, berries, and insects. Turkeys are reared on farms for their meat in many parts of the world.

**turn****turns turning turned** *verb*

1 to go around.
*The watch hands **turn** clockwise.*
 2 to change direction.
*He **turned** to see what was happening behind him.*
 3 to become.
*His fingers **turned** blue with the cold.*

turn**turns** *noun*

a chance or duty that comes to each of a number of people in order.
*It's your **turn** to do the dishes.*

turnip**turnips** *noun*

a type of plant with a round root that is eaten as a vegetable.

**turquoise****turquoise** *noun*

1 a green-blue stone that is often used in jewelry.



2 the color of the stone turquoise.

■ say **tur-koiz**

turtle**turtles** *noun*

a reptile that is part of the same family as the tortoise. Turtles live in water and feed on plants and small animals. Some turtles lay their eggs on land.



green
turtle

tusk**tusks** *noun*

a long, pointed tooth that sticks out of the mouth of certain animals (see **mammal** on page 124).

twig**twigs** *noun*

a small branch of a tree or shrub (see **tree** on page 223).

**twin****twins** *noun*

1 one of a pair of children or animals born to their mother at the same time.
*Identical **twins**.*
 2 one of two things that are exactly the same.
twin *adjective*

twinkle**twinkles twinkling twinkled** *verb*

to shine with small flashes of light.
*The stars **twinkled** in the sky.*

twirl**twirls twirling twirled** *verb*

to spin in a quick, light way.



*She **twirled** around to show them her new skirt.*

twist**twists twisting twisted** *verb*

to turn or wind something.



*She **twisted** her head around.*

type**types typing typed** *verb*

to write using the letter and number keys on a typewriter or other keyboard.
 ■ say **tipe**

type**types** *noun*

1 a group of people or things that are alike in some way.
*The store sold two **types** of boot.*
 2 printed letters.
*This book has small **type**.*

typewriter**typewriters** *noun*

a machine with a keyboard, used for printing letters and numbers on paper.

**typical****typical** *adjective*

being a good example of something, or showing all its usual qualities.
*They lived in a **typical** city street.*
 ■ say **tip-i-kul**
typically *adverb*

U u

under

preposition
below or beneath
something, or to
a lower place.



*She is holding
the ball **under**
her arm.*

underline

underlines underlining
underlined verb
to draw a line under
something, usually to
stress it or to show that
it is important.

You must reply.

underneath

preposition
below something, or in
a lower place.



*The children played
underneath the table.*
underneath *adverb*

undercover

adjective
done in secret to obtain
information.
*The police were working on
an **undercover** investigation.*

underdone

adjective
not cooked for long enough.

underground

adjective
below the ground.



*An **underground** cave.*
underground *adverb*

understudy

understudies noun
a person who learns a part
in a play or performance so
that he or she can take over if
the usual actor cannot perform.
understudy *verb*

underwater

adjective
found under the surface
of the water, or used under
the surface of the water.



*The diver swam among
the **underwater** plants
and animals.*
underwater *adverb*

ugly

adjective
unpleasant to look at.
■ say ug-lee
ugliness *noun*

ulcer

ulcers noun
a sore patch on your skin
or in your stomach.
■ say ul-ser

umbrella

umbrellas noun
a covered frame, held up
by a stick that is used to
protect a person from
the rain, or as a shade from
the sun. Umbrella frames are
covered with cloth or plastic
and can be folded
up when not in use.



umpire

umpires noun
someone who makes sure
that players follow the rules
of a game or sport.
umpire *verb*

unanimous

adjective
agreed by everyone.
*The leader was elected
by a **unanimous** vote.*
■ say yoo-nan-uh-mus

uncle

uncles noun
the brother of someone's
parent, or their
aunt's husband.

uncomfortable

adjective
1 not able to relax.



*She was too **uncomfortable**
to go to sleep.*
2 causing an unpleasant
feeling or slight pain.
Uncomfortable shoes.
■ opposite **comfortable**

unconscious

adjective
1 not able to think and feel,
possibly because of an illness
or accident.
*The falling brick knocked
him **unconscious**.*
2 done without thinking.
*He has an **unconscious** habit
of scratching his chin.*

■ say un-kon-shus
■ opposite **conscious**

uncover

uncovers uncovering
uncovered verb
to remove the cover, unwrap,
or reveal something.

*The archeologists **uncovered**
a Roman mosaic.*



a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

underwear

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

underwear

noun

the clothes that you wear next to your skin and under your other clothes.



undershirt

underpants

undo

undoes undoing undid undone
verb

to unfasten or untie.



Undoing a knot in a rope.

■ say un-doo

undress

undresses undressing undressed
verb

to take clothes off.



■ opposite dress

uneasy

adjective

not feeling comfortable or happy.

*She felt **uneasy** about leaving the door unlocked.*

uneasily **adverb**

unemployed

adjective

without a job.

*He's been **unemployed** for almost a year.*

■ opposite employed

unemployment **noun**

uneven

adjective

not smooth or level.



The road had a very **uneven** surface.

■ opposite even

unevenly **adverb**

unexpected

adjective

surprising, or happening when you do not think it will.



The **unexpected** rain made everyone leave the beach.

■ opposite expected

unexpectedly **adverb**

unfair

adjective

not right or honest.

*That's **unfair**! You have more than me!*

■ opposite fair

unfortunate

adjective

having or bringing bad luck.



*It was **unfortunate** that he'd left a roller skate on the floor.*

■ opposite fortunate

unfortunately **adverb**

unhappy

adjective

sad or miserable.

*She felt **unhappy** when she failed the exam.*

■ opposite happy

unhealthy

adjective

1 not well or not fit.

*You look **unhealthy**.*

2 bad for your health.

*It's **unhealthy** to eat snacks all the time.*

■ say un-hel-thee

■ opposite healthy

unicorn

unicorns **noun**

an imaginary animal in myths and fairy tales.

A unicorn is like a horse, but has a long, spiraled horn on its forehead.

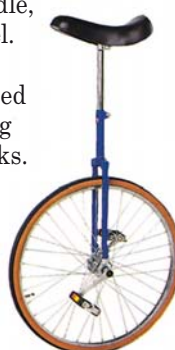
■ say yoo-ni-korn

unicycle

unicycles **noun**

a machine for riding on, with pedals, a saddle, and one wheel.

Unicycles are sometimes used for performing acrobatic tricks.



■ say yoo-ni-sy-kul

uniform

uniforms **noun**

special clothes worn by members of a group to show that they belong to that group. People in the armed forces, the police force, and some students wear uniforms.



19th-century army general's **uniform**

■ say yoo-ni-form

union

unions **noun**

1 two or more people, places, or things that are joined together to become one.

*Russia was once a part of the **Union** of Soviet Socialist Republics.*

2 a group of workers that join together to take care of the concerns of employees.

■ say yoon-yun

unique

adjective

being the only one of its kind.

*Every snowflake is **unique**.*

■ say yoo-neek



unit

units **noun**

1 a single part of something.

*A kitchen **unit**.*

2 a fixed amount used as a standard by which other things are measured.

*A foot is a **unit** of length.*

unite

unites uniting united **verb**

to join together or to do something together.

*The towns **united** in their fight against the factory's pollution.*

■ say yoo-nite

universe

noun
all of space, and everything that exists in it. The universe includes Earth, the other planets, and all the stars.

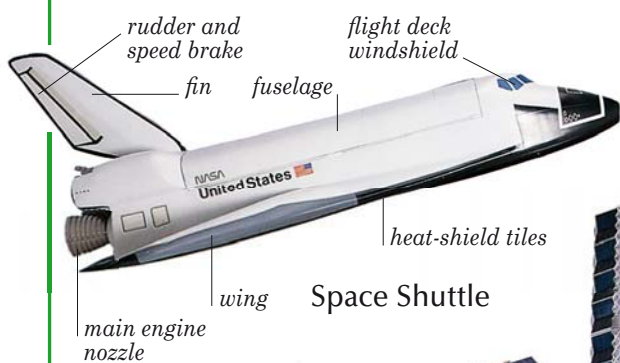
The Solar System



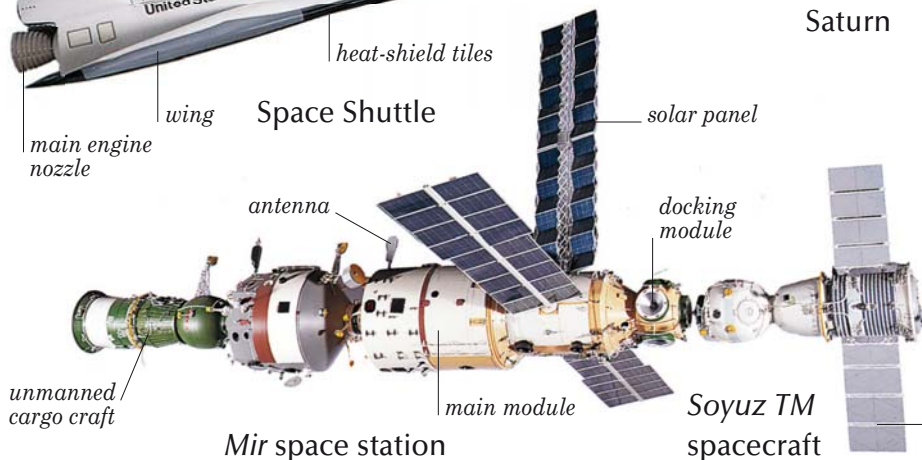
Spacecraft



upper part of the Saturn V rocket

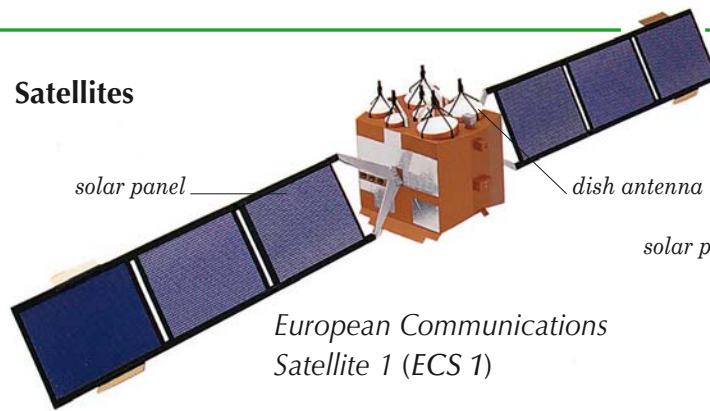


Space Shuttle

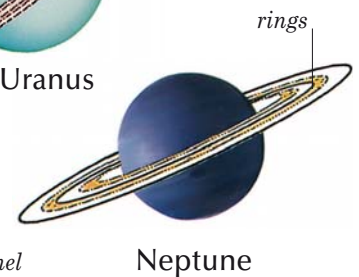
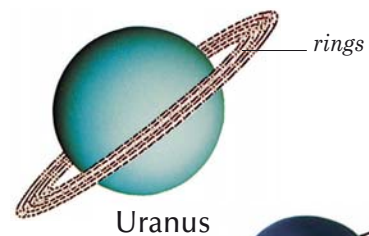
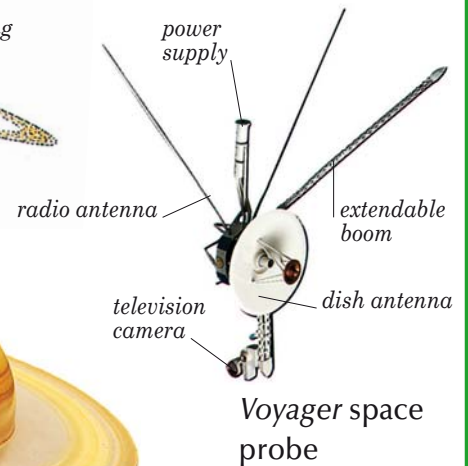
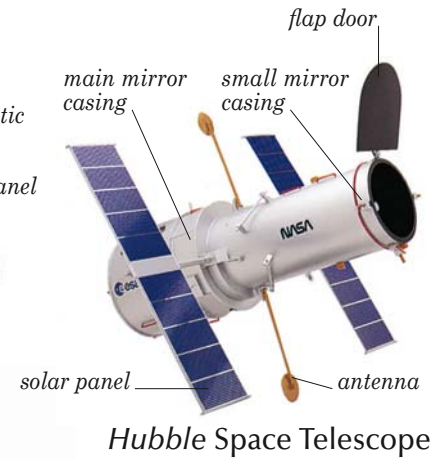
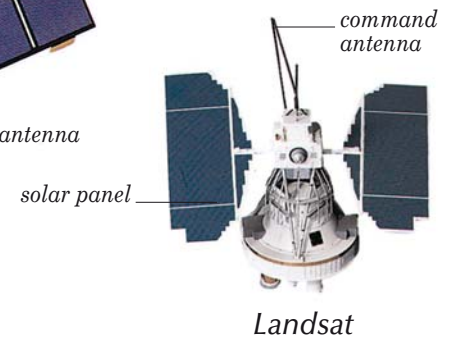
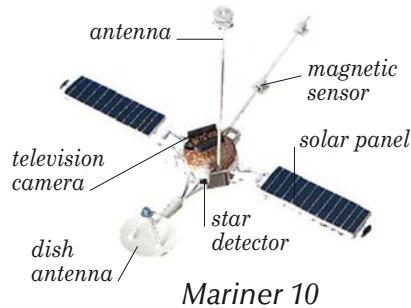


Mir space station

Satellites



Space exploration



university

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

university

universities *noun*

a place where students go for the highest level of education.



*Graduating from **university** with advanced degrees.*

■ say yoo-nuh-**vur**-si-tee

unkind

adjective

cruel or not caring.



*She was very **unkind** to her little sister.*

■ opposite **kind**

unknown

adjective

never seen or heard of.

*Highways were **unknown** in the 19th century.*

■ say un-**noen**

unlikely

adjective

not probable.

*An **unlikely** story.*

■ opposite **likely**

unload

unloads unloading unloaded *verb*

to take things out of a vehicle or container.



*He **unloaded** the groceries from the shopping cart.*

■ opposite **load**

unlock

unlocks unlocking unlocked *verb*
to open something by undoing a lock.



*He **unlocked** his bicycle.*

■ opposite **lock**

unlucky

adjective

having bad luck, or bringing bad luck.

*It's thought to be **unlucky** to walk under ladders.*

■ comparisons **unluckier**

unluckiest

■ opposite **lucky**

unnecessary

adjective

not needed.

*It's **unnecessary** to wear a coat in very hot weather.*

■ say un-**nes**-i-sair-ee

■ opposite **necessary**

unoccupied

adjective

vacant, or not being used.



*The house had been **unoccupied** for months.*

■ opposite **occupied**

unorganized

adjective

with no order or plan.

*The trip was very **unorganized**.*

■ opposite **organized**

unpack

unpacks unpacking unpacked *verb*
to take things out of a container.



Unpacking a suitcase.

■ opposite **pack**

unpleasant

adjective

not pleasing, or not nice.

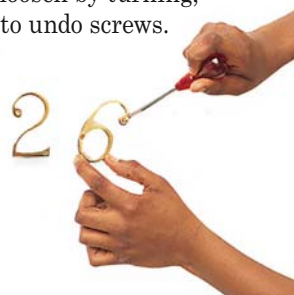
*An **unpleasant** smell.*

■ opposite **pleasant**

unscrew

unscrews unscrewing unscrewed *verb*

to loosen by turning, or to undo screws.



*She **unscrewed** the numbers from the door.*

untidy

adjective

in a mess.

*Her room was always **untidy**.*

■ say un-**ty**-dee

■ opposite **tidy**

untie

unties untying untied *verb*

to undo something that is knotted, such as rope or thread.



*She **untied** the rope and rowed away.*

■ opposite **tie**

until

preposition

up to the time of.

*We were awake **until** midnight.*

untrue

adjective

false or not based on facts.

*The story about the two-tailed dog was **untrue**.*

■ opposite **true**

unused

adjective

not in use or never used.

*An **unused** notebook.*

■ say un-**yoozd**

■ opposite **used**

unusual

adjective

rare or not ordinary.



*A very **unusual** guitar.*

■ say un-**yoo**-zhoo-al

unwise

adjective

foolish or not smart.

*It was **unwise** to play catch in the house.*

■ opposite **wise**

unwrap**unwraps** *unwrapping*
unwrapped *verb*

to take the wrapping or covering off something.

*She **unwrapped** her present.*

■ say un-rap

■ opposite **wrap****up***preposition*

toward a higher position.

*I walked **up** the hill to the house at the top.*■ opposite **down****up***adverb*

to or in a higher position.

*Stand **up**!*■ opposite **down****upright***adverb*

sitting or standing up straight rather than bent over.

*The dog stood **upright** on its hind legs.*

■ say up-rite

upright *adjective***uproar***noun*

a state of noisy activity.

*The crowd was in an **uproar**.***upset****upsets** **upsetting** **upset** *verb*

1 to make someone sad or anxious.

*The accident **upset** him.*2 to knock something over.
*The cat **upset** the vase of flowers.***upset** *adjective***upside down***adverb*

with the top part underneath, or turned the wrong way up.

*He hung **upside down** from the bar.***upside-down** *adjective***upstairs***adverb*

to or on an upper story.

*The lights are on **upstairs**.*■ opposite **downstairs****upstairs** *adjective***upward***adverb*

toward a higher position.

*She let go and the balloons drifted **upward**.*■ opposite **downward****uranium***noun*

a silvery white, radioactive metal used for producing nuclear energy.



■ say yoo-ray-nee-um

urge**urges** **urging** **urged** *verb*

to try to persuade someone to do something.

*He **urged** them to be careful when playing by the river.*

■ say urj

urge**urges** *noun*

a powerful feeling that makes you want to do something.

*A sudden **urge** to sneeze.***urgent***adjective*

needing immediate action or attention.

*An **urgent** message.*

■ say ur-junt

urgently *adverb***urine***noun*

liquid waste from the body.

■ say yoor-in

use**uses** **using** **used** *verb*

to put something into action.

*The cat **uses** a cat flap to come in and go out of the house.*

■ say yooz

use**uses** *noun*

1 the value of something for a certain purpose.

*This penknife has many **uses**.*2 the state of being used.
*Steam trains are still in **use** in some areas.*

■ say yooos

useful*adjective*

able to be used for all kinds of tasks, or good for a certain task.

*This gadget is **useful** for unscrewing lids.*

■ say yoose-ful

■ opposite **useless****usefully** *adverb***usual***adjective*

most often done or seen.

*I left work at the **usual** time.*

■ say yoo-zhoo-ul

usually *adverb***utensil****utensils** *noun*

a tool used for a particular job, especially one used in the kitchen.

*A whisk is a kitchen **utensil**.*

■ say yoo-ten-sul

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

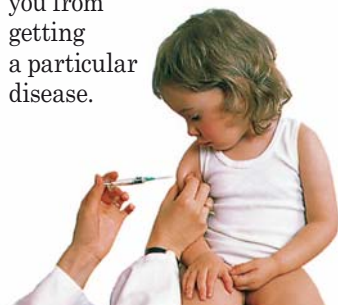


vacant

adjective
empty or not used.
*She parked in the **vacant** space.*
■ say vay-kunt

vaccination

vaccinations *noun*
an injection of a substance called a vaccine that prevents you from getting a particular disease.



■ say vak-suh-nay-shun

vacuum

vacuums *noun*
a space from which all, or almost all, of the air has been removed.
■ say vak-yoom

vacuum cleaner

vacuum cleaners *noun*
a machine that cleans by sucking up dirt.



vacuum flask

vacuum flasks *noun*
a container used for keeping liquids hot or cold. Flasks have double walls with a vacuum between them. We commonly call this a thermos.



vague

adjective
not clear or not definite.
*A **vague** idea.*
■ say vayg
vaguely *adverb*

vain

adjective
1 too proud of what you can do, what you look like, or what you own.
***Vain** people look in the mirror all the time.*
■ comparisons **vainer** **vainest**
2 unsuccessful.
*They made a **vain** attempt to put out the fire.*
vainly *adverb*

valley

valleys *noun*
an area of lowland between hills, often with a river or stream flowing through it.



valuable

adjective
1 precious, or worth a lot of money.



*This **valuable** Chinese ornament once belonged to an emperor.*

2 useful or worthwhile.

Valuable *help.*

■ say val-yoo-uh-bul

■ opposite **worthless**
value *noun*

van

vans *noun*
a boxy road vehicle that is bigger than a station wagon and smaller than a bus.

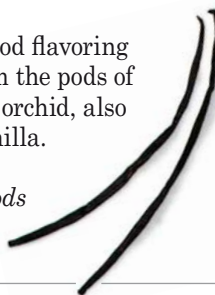
vandal

vandals *noun*
a person who deliberately damages things.
vandalize *verb*

vanilla

noun
a sweet food flavoring made from the pods of a tropical orchid, also called vanilla.

vanilla *pod*



vanish

vanishes **vanishing** **vanished** *verb*
to disappear suddenly.
*The magician waved his wand and the rabbit **vanished**.*

vapor

vapors *noun*
1 the gas that certain liquids or solids give off when they are heated.
2 steam, mist, or smoke in the air.
■ say vay-pur

variety

varieties *noun*
1 change or difference.
*It is important to have **variety** in your work, or you will be bored.*
2 a selection of different things.
*The store had a **variety** of mugs for sale.*
3 a particular type.
*What **variety** of fruit is that?*
■ say vuh-ry-i-tee

various

adjective
of several different kinds.
*I bought **various** things at the mall.*
■ say vair-ee-us

varnish

varnishes *noun*
a type of clear paint that makes a surface tough and shiny when it is dry.



wood *varnish*
varnish *verb*

vase

vases *noun*
a jar used as an ornament for displaying flowers.



■ say vayz

vegetable

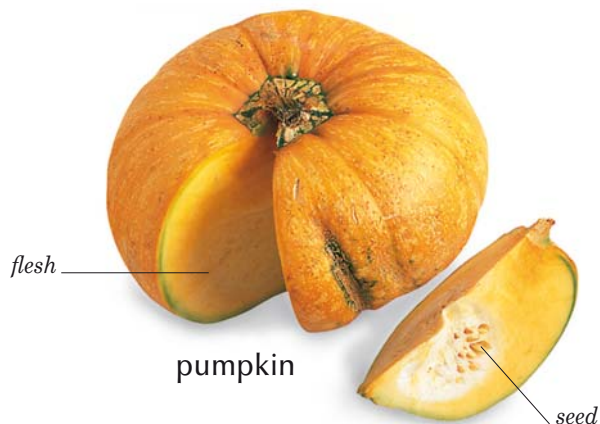
vegetables *noun*

a plant, or part of a plant, that is grown for food. Vegetables contain vitamins and minerals that keep us healthy.

■ say vej-tab-bul



okra



flesh

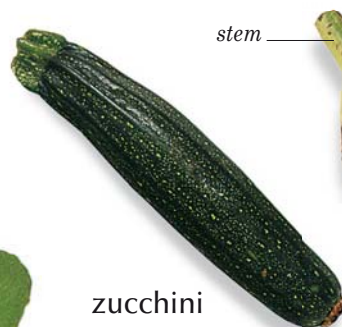
pumpkin

seed



leaf

Brussels sprouts

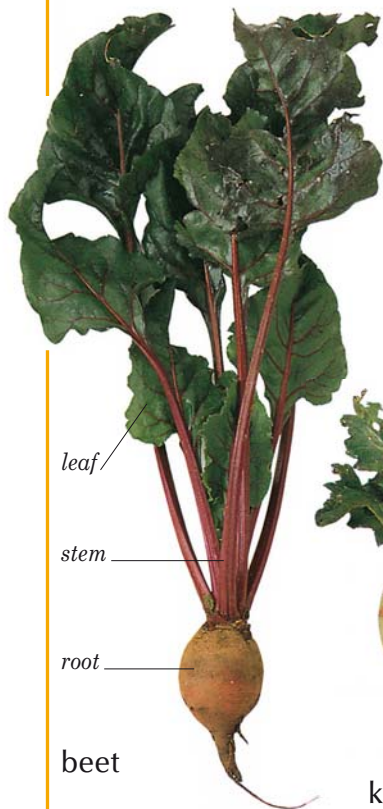


stem

zucchini



eggplant



leaf

stem

root

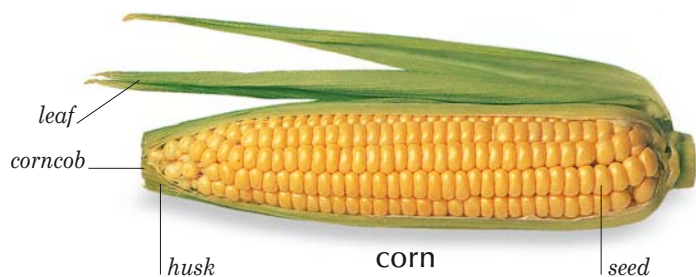
beet



kohlrabi



radish



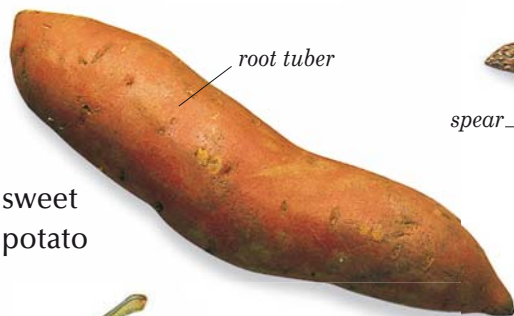
leaf

corn cob

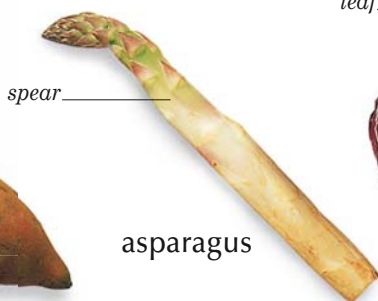
husk

corn

seed

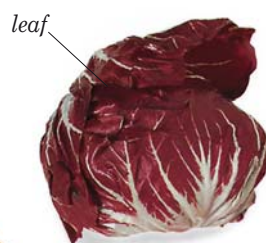


root tuber

sweet
potato


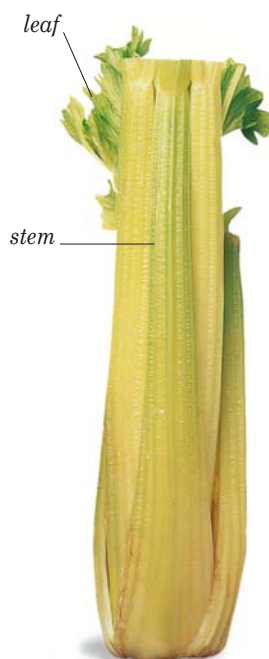
spear

asparagus



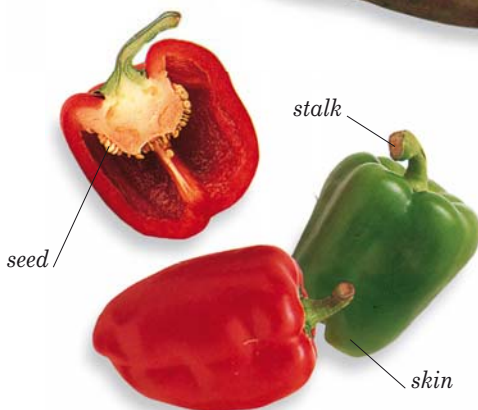
leaf

radicchio



leaf

stem

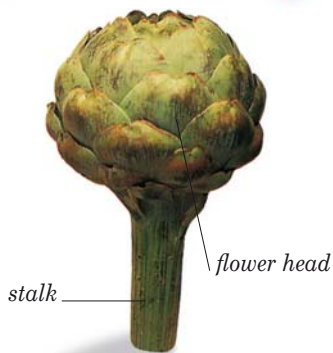


seed

stalk

skin

peppers



stalk

flower head

artichoke



chinese cabbage

celery

vegetarian

vegetarian

vegetarians *noun*

someone who does not eat meat or fish.

■ say vej-it-tear-ee-an

vehicle

vehicles *noun*

something that is used to transport people or things on land, in the air, or in space.



■ say vee-i-kul

veil

veils *noun*

a covering for the face or head that is made of thin fabric.



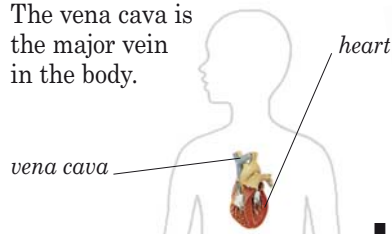
■ rhymes with pale

vein

veins *noun*

1 any one of the tubes that carries blood from other parts of the body to the heart.

The vena cava is the major vein in the body.



velvet

velvet *noun*

a type of fabric covered in short, soft fibers.



velvet *adjective*

ventriloquist

ventriloquists *noun*

a person who can speak without moving his or her lips. Most ventriloquists use dolls and make it seem as if the doll is talking.



■ say ven-tril-uh-kwist

verb

verbs *noun*

a word that describes what a person or thing is doing. A sentence usually needs a verb in order to make sense.

verse

verses *noun*

1 a section of a poem or song.

2 a general name for poetry.

He wrote a book of verse.

2 one of the fine tubes in a leaf or in an insect's wings.



■ say vane

version

versions *noun*

A different kind or form of the same thing.

I like this version of the story.

vertical

vertical *adjective*

standing straight up, at right angles to the horizon.

a vertical line



very

very *adverb*

extremely, or by a great amount.

This book is very long.

vessel

vessels *noun*

1 a craft that is used for water transportation; usually anything larger than a boat.



2 any kind of hollow container, usually for food.

When it rained, they filled the vessels with water.

■ say ves-ul

vest

vests *noun*

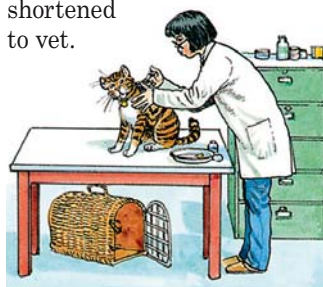
a piece of underwear worn on the top half of the body.

veterinarian

veterinarians *noun*

a person who is trained to treat sick animals.

Veterinarian can be shortened to vet.



vibrate

vibrates vibrating vibrated *verb*

to make tiny, rapid, shaking movements.

The drill vibrated noisily.

■ say vy-brate

vibration *noun*

vicious

vicious *adjective*

likely to hurt people or things.

A vicious dog attacked him.

■ say vish-us

victim

victims *noun*

a person who has been harmed or killed by something or someone.

The victim of an accident.

victory

victories *noun*

success in a contest or battle.



The race-car driver was thrilled with his victory.

■ say vik-tor-ee

view

views *noun*

1 everything that you can see from a certain place.



There was a good view of the city from the window.

2 an opinion.

In my view, more people ought to travel by train.

■ say vyoo

village

villages *noun*

a community in the country that is smaller than a town.



vinegar

vinegar *noun*

a sour liquid used to flavor or preserve food.



■ say vin-i-gur

vintage

vintage *adjective*

old and of good quality (see **car** on page 39).

violent

violent *adjective*

using strong and damaging force.

*The **violent** storm threw cars across the street.*

violence *noun*

violently *adverb*

violin

violins *noun*

a wooden musical instrument with four strings. The violin body is held below the chin and played with a bow.



bow



violin

virus

viruses *noun*

a type of germ that causes a disease such as the flu.

■ say vye-rus

visible

visible *adjective*

able to be seen.

*The mountain was **visible** for miles.*

■ opposite **invisible**

visit

visits visiting visited *verb*

to go to see a person or a place.



*I went to **visit** her in the hospital.*

visit *noun*

vitamin

vitamins *noun*

one of a group of natural substances found in foods that we need to eat to keep healthy.



parsley

pepper

*Foods containing **vitamin C**.*

vocabulary

vocabularies *noun*

1 all the words in a language.

2 all the words that are known and used by a person.

■ say vo-kab-yoo-lar-ee

voice

voices *noun*

the sound that comes out of your mouth when you speak or sing.

*He's lost his **voice**.*

■ say voys

volcano

volcanoes *noun*

a mountain that is created by lava from inside the Earth. Volcanoes sometimes erupt, sending lava and ash down onto the surrounding country.



volcanic *adjective*

volume

volumes *noun*

1 a book, usually one of a series.



*The fourth **volume** of an encyclopedia.*

2 the amount of space inside something, or the amount of space that something fills.



*This pitcher's **volume** is one quart.*

3 an amount.

*This road has a huge **volume** of traffic traveling along it.*

4 the loudness of a sound.

*Can you turn up the **volume** on the television?*

volunteer

volunteers *noun*

a person who offers to do something without being told or paid to do it.

volunteer *verb*

vomit

vomits vomiting vomited *verb*
to throw up the contents of your stomach.

vomit *noun*

vote

votes voting voted *verb*

to show your choice or opinion by putting up your hand or by marking a name on a piece of paper.



*He **voted** for the candidate by putting an "X" on the paper.*

vote *noun*

vow

vows *noun*

a solemn promise.

vow *verb*

■ rhymes with **how**

vowel

vowels *noun*

a sound represented by the letters a, e, i, o, or u (see **alphabet** on page 16).

■ rhymes with **owl**

vulture

vultures *noun*

a large bird of prey that feeds on dead animals. Vultures have a good sense of smell and good eyesight. Their feet are adapted for walking rather than holding onto branches.

*Egyptian **vulture***



**wade**

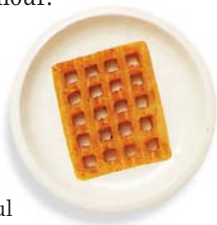
wades wading waded *verb*
to walk through water.
We waded across the stream.

wafer

wafers *noun*
a thin, crisp cookie that is often eaten with ice cream.
■ say way-fur

waffle

waffles *noun*
a crisp, thick pancake with squares pressed into it. Waffles are made from eggs and flour.



■ say wof-ul

wage

wages *noun*
the money paid to some in return for work.
He collects his weekly wages every Friday.
■ say wayj

wagon

wagons *noun*
a vehicle with four wheels used for transporting heavy loads. A wagon can be pulled by a train or a horse.

**waist**

waists *noun*
the narrower part of your body between your chest and your hips.



waist

wait

waits waiting waited *verb*
to stay in a place or delay doing something until a certain event happens.
Wait for me!
wait *noun*

waiter / waitress

waiters / waitresses *noun*
someone whose job it is to serve you with a meal.
■ waiter is male and waitress is female.

wake

wakes waking woke woken *verb*
to stop sleeping or to stop someone else from sleeping.
I woke up early this morning.
awake *adjective*

walk

walks walking walked *verb*
to move along on foot.
■ say wawk

walker

walkers *noun*
a framework, usually waist-high, that a baby or handicapped person might use to help them walk.

wall

walls *noun*
a vertical surface made of stone, brick, or another material. Walls are used to enclose a space or to form the outside structure and inside divisions of a building.



There was a high wall around the garden.

wallaby

wallabies *noun*
a plant-eating marsupial from Australia that looks like a small kangaroo.
■ say wol-UH-bee

wallet

wallets *noun*
a small, soft case for carrying money.



■ say wol-it

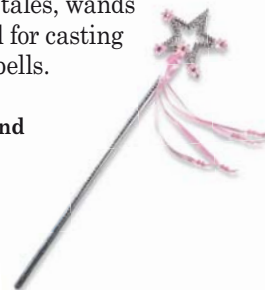
walrus

walruses *noun*
a very large sea mammal that lives on the ice in the Arctic and hunts for its food in the icy waters. Walruses have very tough skin and whiskers. They have a thick layer of fat called blubber to keep them warm instead of fur.

**wand**

wands *noun*
a long, slender stick used for performing magic tricks. In fairy tales, wands are used for casting magic spells.

■ say wond

**wander**

wanders wandering wandered *verb*
to go from place to place without any real purpose or destination.
My friends love to wander around the mall.
■ say won-der

want

wants wanting wanted *verb*
1 to wish to have or do something.
I want a puppy for my birthday.
2 to need or require something.
Do you want any help?

war

wars *noun*
a period of fighting between countries or groups of people.
■ say wore

wardrobe

wardrobes *noun*

1 a cupboard for clothing.

2 a collection of clothes.

A *winter wardrobe*.

■ say **wore-drobe**

warehouse

warehouses *noun*

a large building used for storing goods.

warm

warm *adjective*

1 having a temperature that is between cool and hot.



The hot water bottle felt nice and warm.

2 friendly and kind.

She gave us a warm welcome.

■ comparisons **warmer warmest**

■ opposite **cool**

warmth *noun*

warn

warns warning warned *verb*

to tell or signal to someone that there may be a problem or danger ahead.



The sign on the fence warned of radioactivity in the area.

■ say **worn**

warning *noun*

warship

warships *noun*

a ship armed with weapons that is used during a war.

wash

washes washing washed *verb*

to clean yourself or something else with water and soap.

wash *noun*



wasp

wasps *noun*

a type of flying insect that can sting. A wasp uses its sting to defend itself and to catch other insects for food.

■ say **wosp**

waste

wastes wasting wasted *verb*

1 to use more of something than you really need or want.

Don't waste electricity!

2 to fail to use something.

He wasted the sunny day by staying in bed all day.

waste *noun*

watch

watches watching watched *verb*

to look at and pay attention to someone or something for a time.



Watching birds.

watch

watches *noun*

a small instrument for telling the time, usually worn on the wrist (see **time** on page 216).

water

water *noun*

a clear liquid that falls as rain and forms streams, rivers, lakes, and oceans.

■ say **waw-tur**

water

waters watering watered *verb*

to supply with water.

Will you water my plants while I'm away?

water cycle

water cycle *noun*

the process by which water travels around the Earth and its atmosphere. Water from rivers and oceans evaporates into the air, where it gathers to form clouds. The water then falls as rain to fill the rivers and oceans.

waterfall

waterfalls *noun*

a place where a river falls over a steep cliff.



watermelon

watermelons *noun*

a large, juicy type of melon with green skin. The flesh is red and contains black seeds.



waterproof

waterproof *adjective*

not allowing water to pass through it.



A waterproof coat.

watt

watts *noun*

a unit for measuring electrical power.

A 100-watt lightbulb.

■ say **wot**

wave

waves *noun*

1 a moving ridge on the surface of a liquid.



2 a vibration of sound or light that travels through the air and moves in a similar way to a wave in liquid.

wave

waves waving waved *verb*

1 to signal to someone by moving your hand or an object from side to side.



She waved good-bye as the ship sailed away.

wave *noun*

2 to move backward and forward.

The branches waved in the strong wind.

wax

waxes *noun*

a solid, oily substance that melts when it is heated. Wax is used to make many things, including furniture polish and candles.



a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

way

way

ways *noun*

1 a direction or route.



The sign showed the way to the village.

2 a method.

What is the right way to use a video camera?

3 a manner of behaving.

She stared at him in a very rude way.

weak

adjective

having little strength or power.



Baby birds are very weak when they are born.

■ comparisons **weaker weakest**

■ opposite **strong**

weakness *noun*

wealthy

adjective

having a lot of money or possessions.

The inventor sold his idea and became very wealthy.

■ say **wel-thee**

■ comparisons **wealthier**

wealthiest

wealth *noun*

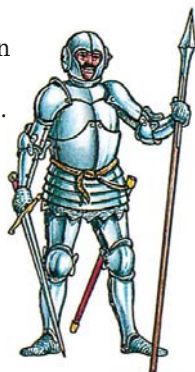
weapon

weapons *noun*

a tool that can be used to hurt someone.

In the past, spears and swords were used as weapons.

■ say **wep-un**



wear

wears wearing wore worn *verb*

to have on or covering your body.



He is wearing a South American cowboy outfit.

■ say **ware**

weary

adjective

very tired.



She felt weary after her long walk.

■ say **weer-ee**

■ comparisons **wearier weariest**

weariness *noun*

weather

noun

the condition of the atmosphere at a certain place and time, such as the air temperature and whether or not it is raining.

a weather map

■ say **weth-ur**

weathered

adjective

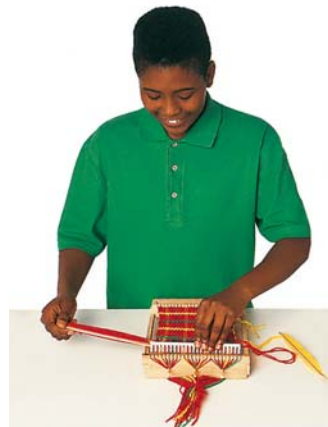
having changed shape or color due to the effects of the Sun, wind, or rain.

Weathered rock.

weave

weaves weaving wove woven *verb*

1 to pass threads over and under one another to make cloth.



He is weaving a mat out of wool.

woven *adjective*

2 to move in and out between objects.

The river weaves its way around the hills and down to the sea.

web

webs *noun*

1 a fine net of sticky threads made by a spider to trap flies.
2 a collection of pages linked electronically via the internet.

wedding

weddings *noun*

an occasion when two people get married.



weed

weeds *noun*

a wild plant that grows where it is not wanted.



Burdock is

a common weed.

week

weeks *noun*

a period of seven days.

weekend

weekends *noun*

Saturday and Sunday, the days when many people do not go to school or work.

weep

weeps weeping wept *verb*

to show you are unhappy by crying.

weigh

weighs weighing weighed *verb*

1 to measure how heavy something is.



He weighed some beans.

2 to have a certain weight.

The package weighed half a pound.

■ say **way**

weight

weights *noun*

1 the measurement of how heavy something is.

2 a piece of metal with a known heaviness, used with weighing scales to determine how much something weighs.

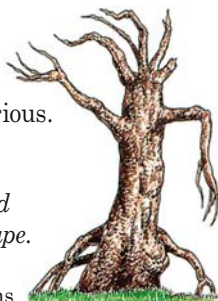
■ say **wayt**

weird

adjective
strange
and mysterious.

The tree had
a **weird** shape.

■ say **weerd**
■ comparisons **weirder weirdest**



welcome

welcomes welcoming welcomed
verb

to show someone that you are
glad they have come.

He went to the door to **welcome**
his guests.

welcoming adjective

welfare

noun
a person's health, happiness,
and comfort.
A principal has to consider
the **welfare** of the pupils.

well

wells noun
a deep hole made in
the ground
to obtain
water, gas,
or oil.



well

adjective
in good health.
Are you **well** today?

well

adverb
1 in a good or suitable way.
He behaved very **well**.
2 thoroughly.
Water the plants **well**.

went

from the verb **to go**
I **went** to the grocery store to
buy some bread.

wept

from the verb **to weep**
He **wept** when his dog died.

west

noun
one of the four main
compass directions. West
is the direction in which
the Sun sets.

north

west



east

south

western adjective

western

westerns noun
a film about cowboys
and other people living in
the western US, usually
during the 19th century.

wet

adjective
1 covered or soaked
with water.



2 rainy.

Wet weather.

3 not yet dry.

Wet paint.

■ comparisons **wetter wettest**

■ opposite **dry**

what

adjective
which thing or which kind.
What is your favorite color?
■ say **hwot**

wheat

noun
a type of cereal that is
grown on farms. The grains
from wheat are used for
making flour.



■ say **wheet**

wheel

wheels noun
a disk that turns around a
fixed, central point. Most land
vehicles move on wheels
(see **car** on page 39 and
transportation on page 221).

wheelbarrow

wheelbarrows noun
a small cart with one wheel
at the front, used for pushing
heavy loads by hand.



wheelchair

wheelchairs noun
a chair with wheels. People
use wheelchairs to move from
place to place if they have
difficulty in walking.



when

adverb
at what time.
When did you arrive?

where

adverb
at, in, or to what place.
Where are you going?

which

adjective
what particular thing or
things out of a selection.
Which car is yours?

whine

whines whining whined verb
1 to make a long, high cry.
Dogs **whine**.
2 to complain unnecessarily.
The toddler **whined** about
going to bed.

whip

whips noun
a rope or strip of leather that
is attached to a handle and is
used for urging animals
to do something.



a cowboy's
whip



sperm **whale**

whirl

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

whirl

whirls whirling whirled *verb*
to turn yourself or an object around quickly.



He whirled the lasso around his head.

whirlwind

whirlwinds *noun*
a very strong wind that blows in spirals, causing great damage.

whisk

whisks whisking whisked *verb*
1 to move quickly and lightly.
She whisked the child out of the way of the bike.
2 to beat a mixture lightly and quickly.



Whisk the egg whites until they are stiff.

whisker

whiskers *noun*
one of the stiff hairs that grows near the mouth of certain animals (see **mammal** on page 124 and **pet** on page 148).

whisper

whispers whispering whispered *verb*
to speak in a very quiet voice.



She whispered her secret into his ear.
whisper *noun*

whistle

whistles whistling whistled *verb*
to make a high, shrill sound by blowing air through your lips.



■ say hwis-ul

whistle

whistles *noun*
a device that you blow into to make high, shrill sounds.



white

white *noun*
a color.



whizz

whizzes whizzing whizzed *verb*
to move along very fast.

whole

whole *adjective*
complete, or with nothing missing.



They bought a whole quiche for the party.

■ say hole
whole *noun*

why

why *adverb*
for what reason.
Why did you go?

wicked

wicked *adjective*
behaving in a bad way on purpose.
A wicked person.
wickedness *noun*

wide

wide *adjective*
1 being a large size, or long distance, from one side to the other.



A wide river.

■ comparisons **wider widest**
■ opposite **narrow**
2 having a certain measurement from one side to the other.
The carpet is ten feet wide.
wide *adverb*
width *noun*

widow / widower

widows / widowers *noun*
a person whose husband or wife has died.
■ **widow** is female and **widower** is male.

wife

wives *noun*
a married woman.

wig

wigs *noun*
a false covering of hair for the head (see **costume** on page 51).



wild

wild *adjective*
1 in a natural environment, or not controlled by people.



Meadowsweet is a wild flower.

2 uncontrolled, violent, or crazy.
The children went wild at the amusement park.

■ rhymes with **child**
■ comparisons **wilder wildest**

wilderness

wildernesses *noun*
a wild area of land where no one lives.
■ say wil-der-ness

will

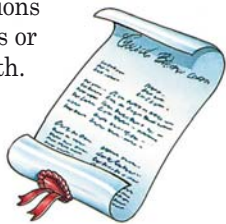
will *verb*
a word used to show that the action of a verb is happening in the future.
I will go out this afternoon.
■ opposite **will not** or **won't**
■ always used with another verb

will

wills *noun*

1 the power to choose and control your own actions.
*She forced me to do it against my **will**.*

2 a document containing instructions about what should happen to a person's possessions after his or her death.



3 determination.
*She had the **will** to win.*

willing

adjective

in agreement with something that you are asked to do.
*Are you **willing** to help in the garden?*

win

wins winning won *verb*

to come first in a game or competition.



*She was very pleased when she **won** the game.*

■ opposite **lose**

wind

winds *noun*

a current of air.



*The **wind** blew his umbrella inside out.*

■ rhymes with **grinned**
windy *adjective*

wind

winds winding wound *verb*

1 to twist or coil something up.



*He **wound** the clock.*

2 to turn in a curving way.
*They could see the car **winding** its way up the hill.*

■ rhymes with **find**

windmill

windmills *noun*

a building with large sails that uses wind power to turn a machine that grinds grain, pumps water, or makes electricity.



window

windows *noun*

an opening in a building or vehicle that lets in light and air, often covered with glass.

wine

noun

an alcoholic drink made from the juice of grapes.

wing

wings *noun*

1 one of the parts of a bird, insect, or bat that is used for flying (see **bird** on page 28, **insect** on page 108, and **mammal** on page 124).

2 one of the large, flat parts on each side of an airplane that acts in a similar way to a bird's wings (see **transportation** on page 221).

wink

winks winking winked *verb*

to open and close one eye briefly as a signal to another person.

winter

noun

the coldest season of the year. Winter comes between the fall and spring.

wipe

wipes wiping wiped *verb*

to clean or dry something by rubbing.



*He **wiped** the mirror's surface with a cloth.*

wire

wires *noun*

a long, thin, metal thread that can be bent. Wires can be used to carry electrical power.



wise

adjective

having a lot of knowledge and experience.

*The **wise** old lady gave me good advice.*

■ say **wize**

■ comparisons **wiser wisest**

■ opposite **foolish**

wish

wishes wishing wished *verb*

to feel or say that you want something.

*I **wish** I owned a car.*

wish *noun*

witch

witches *noun*

a woman who practices magic.

with

withers withering

withered *verb*

to dry up.



*Their plant **withered** while they were away on vacation.*

without

preposition

not having or not using.



*He went outside **without** his shoes.*

witness

witnesses *noun*

a person who sees an event happen.

*Three **witnesses** saw him stealing the car.*

witness *verb*

wizard

wizards *noun*

a man who practices magic.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z**wobble**

wobbles wobbling wobbled *verb*
to move
unsteadily.



He **wobbled**
on his ice skates.

woke

from the verb **to wake**
He **woke** her very early.

wolf

wolves *noun*
a wild mammal that is part
of the dog family and lives
in cold regions. Wolves live in
packs and hunt other animals
for food.

**woman**

women *noun*
an adult human female.
■ say **wum-an**

wombat

wombats *noun*
a marsupial that lives in
Australia. A wombat looks
like a small bear and lives
underground, eating leaves,
roots, and bark.

won

from the verb **to win**
We **won** the match.
■ say **wun**

wonder

noun
a feeling caused by
an extraordinary
or amazing thing.
They looked in **wonder**
at the bright lights in the sky.
■ say **wun-der**

wonder

wonders wondering wondered
verb
to question or think about
something in a curious or
doubtful way.
I **wonder** how she managed
to arrive first?

wonderful

adjective
amazing or extraordinary.
A **wonderful** idea.
■ say **wun-dur-ful**

wood

noun
1 the hard material from
a tree's trunk or branches
used to make furniture and
objects or to burn for fuel.



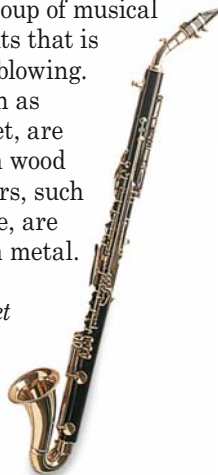
The train is made of **wood**.
wooden *adjective*

2 a group of trees
growing together.

**woodwind instrument**

woodwind instruments *noun*
one of a group of musical
instruments that is
played by blowing.
Some, such
as the clarinet, are
made from wood
while others, such
as the flute, are
made from metal.

alto clarinet

**wool**

noun
the soft hair of sheep and
some other animals that
can be used to make cloth,
clothes, carpets,
and blankets.



sheep's wool

wool yarn

woolen

adjective
made from wool.



woolen hat

word

words *noun*
1 a sound or group of sounds
that stands for an idea,
an object, or an action.
2 the group of letters you use
to write down these sounds.

word processing

verb
writing, correcting, and
storing documents
electronically.

**wore**

from the verb **to wear**
He **wore** a yellow T-shirt.

work

works working worked *verb*
1 to use effort to
do something.
I **worked** hard when I painted
the house.
2 to do a job or task.
My father **works** in a factory.
work *noun*
3 to operate efficiently.



This washing machine is not
working properly.

world

noun
the planet Earth and all the
people and things on it.

worm

worms *noun*
a small animal with a soft
body and no legs or backbone.

earthworm

**worry**

worries worrying worried *verb*
to feel anxious.
I am **worried** about my exams.
■ say **wur-ee**
worry *noun*

worse

from the adjective **bad**
very bad.
Last week's weather was bad,
but today, it is **worse**.

worship

worships worshipping worshiped verb

to respect and love, usually in a religious way.



*The ancient Egyptians **worshiped** many gods.*

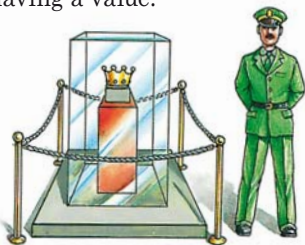
worst

from the adjective **bad**
extremely bad.

*This is the **worst** storm I've ever seen.*

worth

adjective
having a value.



*The crown was **worth** a lot of money.*

worthless

adjective
having little or no value.
*He found an old vase, but it turned out to be **worthless**.*

would

verb
1 a word used to talk about an action that depends on something else.

*I **would** go to the park, but I have to wait here.*

2 a word used to ask for something.

***Would** you like some tea?*

■ rhymes with **good**

■ opposite **would not** or **wouldn't**

■ always used with another verb

wound

wounds noun
an injury to the body where the skin is torn or cut in some way.



*She put a dressing on the **wound**.*

■ say **woond**

wound verb

wound

from the verb **to wind**
*He **wound** the string around the package.*

■ rhymes with **sound**

wove

from the verb **to weave**
*She **wove** the wool into cloth.*

■ rhymes with **stove**

wrap

wraps wrapping wrapped verb
to fold paper or fabric around something.



*He **wrapped** the present in colorful paper.*

■ say **rap**

wrapper

wrappers noun
a piece of paper, plastic, or foil that is used to cover something you buy.

*candies in their **wrappers***

■ say **rap-ur**



wreath

wreaths noun
a decoration made from flowers, leaves, or branches tied together in a circle.



■ say **reeth**

wreck

wrecks wrecking wrecked verb
to destroy or ruin.



*He crashed into the stone post, **wrecking** the car.*

■ say **rek**

wrestle

wrestles wrestling wrestled verb
to struggle with someone and try to force him or her to the ground.

■ say **res-ul**

wriggle

wiggles wriggling wriggled verb
to twist and turn from side to side.

■ say **rig-ul**

wring

wrings wringing wrung verb
to twist something hard using both hands.

■ say **ring**



*He **wrung** the water out of the cloth.*

wrinkle

wrinkles noun
a small crease or fold in skin or fabric.

■ say **ring-kul**

wrist

wrists noun
the joint between your hand and your arm.

■ say **rist**



write

writes writing wrote written verb

1 to form letters and words on a surface.

2 to create something, such as a letter, by using words.

*I **wrote** to my sister last week.*

■ say **rite**

wrong

adjective
1 not correct.

*The **wrong** answer.*

2 bad.

*It's **wrong** to steal.*

■ say **rong**

■ opposite **right**

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Xx

X-ray

X-rays *noun*

a special photograph that shows your bones and other parts that are inside your body.

chest X-ray



X-ray *verb*

xylophone

xylophones *noun*

a musical instrument with wooden bars on a frame. Each bar produces a different note when it is struck.



■ say zy-luh-fone

Yy

yacht

yachts *noun*

a small ship with a sail that is usually used for racing or pleasure, rather than for transporting goods or passengers.



■ say yot

yak

yaks *noun*

a wild ox with long hair and horns that lives in the mountains of central Asia. Yaks eat grass and are often used by people as a source of food or for carrying loads.



yap

yaps yapping yapped *verb*
to bark in a shrill way.

yard

yards *noun*

an outdoor area around a house or building
Our yard is nice and grassy.

yarn

yarns *noun*

wool, cotton, or another material spun into a thread for knitting or weaving.



yawn

yawns yawning yawned *verb*

to open your mouth and breathe in deeply, usually because you are tired or bored.



■ rhymes with dawn
yawn *noun*

year

years *noun*

a period of 12 months. A year is the time that it takes Earth to travel once around the Sun.

yearly *adverb*

yeast

yeast *noun*

a yellow-brown substance made up of tiny fungi. Yeast is used in bread and cakes to help them rise with air.



dried yeast

fresh yeast

yell

yells yelling yelled *verb*

to shout or scream loudly.



He yelled at the neighbor's cats that were fighting outside the window.

yell *noun*

yellow

yellow *noun*

a color.



yesterday

yesterday *adverb*

on the day before today.
I went to the zoo yesterday.

yesterday *noun*

yet

adverb

up to the present time.
The letter hasn't arrived yet.

yoga

noun

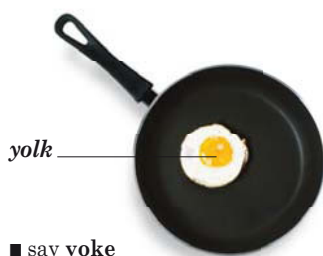
a system of exercises and deep breathing aimed at making a person healthy and relaxed in mind and body.

■ say yo-gah

yolk

yolks noun

the yellow part of an egg.



■ say yoke

young

adjective

in the early part of life.



The grandmother held the young child in her arms.

■ say yung

■ comparisons younger

youngest

■ opposite old

youth

noun

1 the state of being young.

In my youth, I had dark hair but now it is white.

2 young people in general.

A place for the youth of the town to meet.

■ say yooth

yo-yo

yo-yos noun

a toy that spins up and down on a string.



yogurt

yogurts noun

a sour food made by adding bacteria to milk.

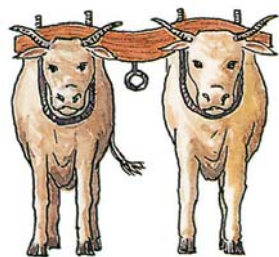
■ say yo-gurt



yoke

yokes noun

a wooden frame that fits over the shoulders of two oxen or other work animals so that they can pull a load. The yoke keeps the animals together.



zebra

zebras noun

a striped African mammal that is part of the horse family. Zebras live in herds on open plains and eat grass and shrubs.



zipper

zippers noun

a device with two rows of teeth that can be opened and closed. Zippers are used to fasten clothing or bags.



zip verb

zodiac

noun

the 12 sections into which astrologers divide the sky. Each part is represented by a sign.

■ say zoe-dee-ak

zero

zeros noun

nothing or none.



zigzag

zigzags noun

a line with a series of sharp turns and angles in it.

zigzag adjective



zigzag verb

zinc

noun

a blue-white, brittle metal.



zone

zones noun

an area that is divided off for a particular purpose.

A no-parking zone.

ZOO

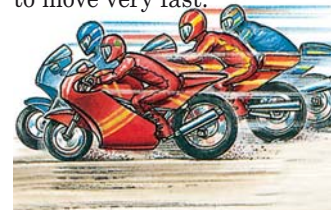
zoos noun

a place where people can observe and learn about animals.

zoom

zooms zooming zoomed verb

to move very fast.



The four motorcycles zoomed past me.

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Abbreviations

An abbreviation is a short form of a word or phrase. Some abbreviations are made by just shortening a word. For example, **ad** is short for **advertisement**, and **max** is short for **maximum**. Other abbreviations, such as **CD** for **compact disc**, are made from the first letters of the words that they stand for. On this double page you will find a useful alphabetical list of common abbreviations.

AC air-conditioning, or alternating current
(An electrical current that travels first in one direction, then in another.)

ad advertisement

AD in the year of our Lord
(Used in dates to count the year after the birth of Jesus Christ, e.g., AD 400. From the Latin *anno Domini*.)

AIDS Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
(A disease that makes a person unable to fight illnesses.)

a.m. before noon
(Used with times, e.g., 9 a.m. From the Latin *ante meridiem*.)

anon anonymous

approx. approximately

Apr. April

A.S.A.P. as soon as possible

AST Alaska standard time

Atl Atlantic

Aug. August

Ave. avenue

b born

BA Bachelor of Arts
(A title given to someone who has a liberal arts degree.)

BC Before Christ
(Used in dates to count the years before the birth of Jesus Christ, e.g., 30 BC.)

BS Bachelor of Science
(A title given to someone who has a science degree from a college or university.)

C Celsius or Centigrade

c. about
(Used with historical dates that are not certain. From the Latin *circa*.)

CD compact disc

CIA Central Intelligence Agency
(The US government department that deals with spies and state secrets.)

cm centimeter

Co. Company
(Used after the names of some companies.)

c/o care of

cont'd continued

CST central standard time

d died

DC District of Columbia or direct current
(An electrical current that travels in only one direction.)

Dec. December

dept. department

DIY do-it-yourself
(Used to describe repairs and decorating that people do to their own homes.)

DJ disc jockey

Dr. doctor

DVD digital versatile/video disc

dz dozen

E east

EAL English as an additional language.

e.g. for example
(From the Latin *exempli gratia*.)

Email electronic mail

ESP extrasensory perception
(A sense that some people are said to have that makes them aware of ghosts and other things that most people are unable to see or feel.)

EST eastern standard time

etc. and all the rest
(From the Latin *et cetera*.)

F Fahrenheit

FBI Federal Bureau of Investigation
(An agency of the American Department of Justice.)

Feb. February

flu influenza

Fri. Friday

ft foot

g gram

GMT Greenwich Mean Time
(The time used in the UK

during the winter, and from which time all around the world is measured.)

GP general practitioner
(The title given to an all-purpose medical doctor.)

HIV Human Immunodeficiency Virus
(The virus that causes AIDS.)

HMO health maintenance organizaiton

hp horse power

HQ headquarters

HST Hawaiian standard time

hwy highway

ICT Information and Communication Technology

ID identification

i.e. that is
(From the Latin *id est*.)

in inch

Inc. Incorporated
(Used in the names of most US companies.)

Inst. Institute

IOU I owe you

IQ intelligence quotient
(A test score that claims to measure a person's intelligence.)

IVF in vitro fertilization
(a medical technique where a woman's eggs are fertilized outside the womb.)

Jan. January

Jr. junior

kg kilogram

km kilometer

kph kilometers per hour

l liter	Mrs. Mistress (A title that goes before a married woman's name.)	POW prisoner of war	Soc. Society
lab laboratory		PR public relations	sq. square
lb pound (in weight) (From the Latin <i>libra</i> .)	Ms. (A title for a married or an unmarried woman.)	pro professional	Sr. senior
LCD liquid crystal display	MS Master of Sciences (A title given to someone who has a science degree from a university higher than a BS.)	Prof. professor	SS Steamship
LED light-emitting diode		P.S. postscript (An extra note written at the end of something, such as a letter. From the Latin <i>post scriptum</i> .)	St. Saint or street
LP long-playing record	MST mountain standard time	PST Pacific standard time	Sun. Sunday
Ltd. Limited (Used after the names of some British companies.)	Mt. mount or mountain	PTA Parent Teacher Association	SW southwest
m meter or mile	N north	RAM random-access memory (The part of memory in a computer that you use to work on.)	tel. telephone
MA Master of Arts (A title given to someone who has an arts degree from a university higher than a BA.)	NASA National Aeronautics and Space Administration	Rd. road	temp. temporary
Mar. March	NATO North Atlantic Treaty Organization	ref referee	3-D three-dimensional (Having height, width, and depth.)
max maximum	NE northeast	Rev. Reverend	Thurs. Thursday
MD Doctor of Medicine (From the Latin <i>Medicinae Doctor</i> .)	no. number (From the Italian <i>numero</i> .)	RIP rest in peace (Often written on a grave. From the Latin <i>requiescat in pace</i> .)	Tues. Tuesday
memo memorandum (A message to remind someone about something.)	Nov. November	ROM read-only memory (The part of the memory in a computer that stores permanent information that cannot be altered.)	TV television
min minimum	NW northwest	r.p.m. revolutions per minute (The measurement of how fast records and other things turn.)	UFO unidentified flying object
misc. miscellaneous	Oct. October	RSVP please reply (Used on invitations. From the French <i>répondez s'il vous plaît</i> .)	UK United Kingdom
Miss Mistress (A title that goes before an unmarried woman's name.)	OK all correct	rte. route	UN United Nations
mm millimeter	oz ounce	S south	Unesco United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization
Mon. Monday	p. page	Sat. Saturday	Unicef United Nations Children's Fund
mpg miles per gallon	Pac Pacific	sci-fi science fiction	US or USA United States of America
mph miles per hour	PC personal computer, or politically correct	SE southeast	UV ultraviolet
mp3 MPEG (Moving Pictures Expert Group) 1 audio layer 3 (A type of digital computer file used to store music.)	PE physical education	Sept. September	V. against (From the Latin <i>versus</i> .)
Mr. Mister (A title that goes before a man's name.)	Ph.D. Doctor of Philosophy (A title given to someone who has studied a subject to an advanced level at university.)		VDU visual display unit
	p.m. after noon (Used with times, e.g., 3 p.m. From the Latin <i>post meridiem</i> .)		VIP very important person
	PO Post Office		W west
			Wed. Wednesday
			www world wide web
			yd. yard

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Spelling guide

If you are having trouble finding a word in the dictionary, it may be because you are looking under the wrong spelling. There can be many different ways of spelling the same sound. Letters sometimes make a different

sound than usual. They may even be completely silent, like the **k** in **kneel**, or the **g** in **gnat**. The spelling guide below will help you to figure out the correct spelling for some tricky words.

Sound	As in	Other ways to spell this sound
a (say air)	hair	care, wear, there, their, prayer
a (say ay)	cake	rain, straight, break, veil, bouquet, obey, hay
a	rat	laugh
ch	chin	catch, question
d	did	butter
e	ten	any, said, friend, bury, head, leopard
e (say ee)	me	meet, seat, key, quay, machine, field, city
f	fall	laugh, telephone
g	get	ghost, guess
h	help	whole
i	fit	damage, pretty, women, busy, build, myth
i	I	eye, sigh, buy, fly, dye
j	jump	trudge, soldier, adjective, magic
k	kiss	come, anchor, sack, biscuit, walk, unique
l	leg	island
m	miss	comb
n	nose	gnat, kneel, pneumonia
o	not	swan, cauliflower, knowledge
o (say oh)	go	sew, though, boat, slow
o (say oo)	move	threw, zoom, shoe, soup, through, blue, fruit
o (say aw)	gone	autumn, awful, broad, ought
o (say ow)	now	out, bough
o (say oy)	boy	boil
oo	zoom	threw, move, shoe, soup, through, blue, fruit, queue
qu (say kw)	quite	choir
r	red	rhyme, wrong
s	saw	cell, psychology, science
s (say zh)	pleasure	mirage, confusion
sh	she	ocean, machine, special, sure, conscience, expansion, nation
t	top	debt, bought
u	up	son, does, flood, double
u	pull	woman, wool, would
u (say ur)	fur	germ, heard, bird, worm, journey
v	very	of
w	wish	what
y	yard	use, onion
z	zebra	busy, scissors, xylophone

Word building

The charts on this page show how you can take one word and build a new one from it by adding a group of letters called a prefix or a suffix. Prefixes, such as **dis-**, **un-**, or **mis-**, are joined to the front of a word. They are often used to change a word to its opposite. For example, adding the prefix **in-** turns

visible into **invisible**. Suffixes, such as **-ful**, **-ism**, or **-ment**, are joined to the end of a word. They are often used to change a word from one part of speech to another. For example, adding the suffix **-er** turns the verb **teach** into the noun **teacher**. These charts show some common prefixes and suffixes.

Prefixes

Prefix	Meaning	Example	Prefix	Meaning	Example
anti-	against	antiseptic	non-	makes the opposite	nonfiction
dis-	makes the opposite	disagree	post-	after	postwar
ex-	out of, or from	export	pre-	before	prehistoric
ex-	former	exwife	re-	again	replace
in-	makes the opposite	independent	sub-	under	submarine
inter-	between	international	super-	above, or more than	superhuman
mis-	makes the opposite	misfortune	trans-	across	transplant
multi-	many	multicolored	un-	makes the opposite	unpleasant

Suffixes

Suffixes that make nouns			Suffixes that make adjectives		
Suffix	Meaning	Example	Suffix	Meaning	Example
-age	a result	wreckage	-able	able to be	inflatable
-ance	an action or state	importance	-en	made of	woolen
-ant	a person	assistant	-ful	full of	beautiful
-ee	a person	referee	-ible	ability	flexible
-ence	an action or state	difference	-ish	a little	greenish
-er/-or	a person	teacher	-less	without	careless
-ery	a type or place of work	bakery	-like	similar to, like	lifelike
-ess	makes a feminine form	waitress	-ous	full of	joyous
-ful	as much as will fill	spoonful	-some	a tendency to	quarrelsome
-ing	an action or result	painting	Suffixes that make adverbs		
-ion	a process, state, or result	decoration			
-ism	a belief or condition	Judaism	-ly	in a manner	quickly
-ist	a person	florist	-ward	shows direction	forward
-ment	an action or state	measurement	-ways	shows direction	sideways
-ness	a quality or state	happiness			

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Facts and figures

Metric measures	Imperial measures	Temperatures
Length 10 millimeters = 1 centimeter 100 centimeters = 1 meter 1,000 meters = 1 kilometer Area 10,000 square centimeters = 1 square meter 1,000,000 square meters = 1 square kilometer Weight 1,000 grams = 1 kilogram 1,000 kilograms = 1 metric ton Volume 10 milliliters = 1 centiliter 10 centiliters = 1 deciliter 10 deciliters = 1 liter	Length 12 inches = 1 foot 3 feet = 1 yard 1,760 yards = 1 mile Area 144 square inches = 1 square foot 9 square feet = 1 square yard 4,840 square yards = 1 acre 640 acres = 1 square mile Weight 16 ounces = 1 pound 2,000 pounds = 1 short ton Volume 8 fluid ounces = 1 cup 2 cups = 1 pint 2 pints = 1 quart 4 quarts = 1 gallon	Degrees Centigrade / Celsius Boiling point of water 100°C Freezing point of water 0°C Normal body temperature 37°C Degrees Fahrenheit Boiling point of water 212°F Freezing point of water 32°F Normal body temperature 98.6°F To convert Centigrade to Fahrenheit: multiply by 9, divide by 5, and add 32. (e.g.: 20°C x 9 = 180; 180 ÷ 5 = 36; 36 + 32 = 68°F) To convert Fahrenheit to Centigrade: subtract 32, multiply by 5, and divide by 9.

The 50 states and their capital cities								
State	Abbr.	Capital City	State	Abbr.	Capital City	State	Abbr.	Capital City
Alabama	AL	Montgomery	Maine	ME	Augusta	Ohio	OH	Columbus
Alaska	AK	Juneau	Maryland	MD	Annapolis	Oklahoma	OK	Oklahoma City
Arizona	AZ	Phoenix	Massachusetts	MA	Boston	Oregon	OR	Salem
Arkansas	AR	Little Rock	Michigan	MI	Lansing	Pennsylvania	PA	Harrisburg
California	CA	Sacramento	Minnesota	MN	St. Paul	Rhode Island	RI	Providence
Colorado	CO	Denver	Mississippi	MS	Jackson	South Carolina	SC	Columbia
Connecticut	CT	Hartford	Missouri	MO	Jefferson City	South Dakota	SD	Pierre
Delaware	DE	Dover	Montana	MT	Helena	Tennessee	TN	Nashville
Florida	FL	Tallahassee	Nebraska	NE	Lincoln	Texas	TX	Austin
Georgia	GA	Atlanta	Nevada	NV	Carson City	Utah	UT	Salt Lake City
Hawaii	HI	Honolulu	New Hampshire	NH	Concord	Vermont	VT	Montpelier
Idaho	ID	Boise	New Jersey	NJ	Trenton	Virginia	VA	Richmond
Illinois	IL	Springfield	New Mexico	NM	Santa Fe	Washington	WA	Olympia
Indiana	IN	Indianapolis	New York	NY	Albany	West Virginia	WV	Charleston
Iowa	IA	Des Moines	North Carolina	NC	Raleigh	Wisconsin	WI	Madison
Kansas	KS	Topeka	North Dakota	ND	Bismark	Wyoming	WY	Cheyenne
Kentucky	KY	Frankfort						
Louisiana	LA	Baton Rouge						

a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h
i
j
k
l
m
n
o
p
q
r
s
t
u
v
w
x
y
z

Cardinal numbers		Ordinal numbers		Roman numerals	
1	one	1st	first	1	I
2	two	2nd	second	2	II
3	three	3rd	third	3	III
4	four	4th	fourth	4	IV
5	five	5th	fifth	5	V
6	six	6th	sixth	6	VI
7	seven	7th	seventh	7	VII
8	eight	8th	eighth	8	VIII
9	nine	9th	ninth	9	IX
10	ten	10th	tenth	10	X
11	eleven	11th	eleventh	11	XI
12	twelve	12th	twelfth	12	XII
13	thirteen	13th	thirteenth	13	XIII
14	fourteen	14th	fourteenth	14	XIV
15	fifteen	15th	fifteenth	15	XV
16	sixteen	16th	sixteenth	16	XVI
17	seventeen	17th	seventeenth	17	XVII
18	eighteen	18th	eighteenth	18	XVIII
19	nineteen	19th	nineteenth	19	XIX
20	twenty	20th	twentieth	20	XX
21	twenty-one	21st	twenty-first	21	XXI
30	thirty	30th	thirtieth	30	XXX
40	forty	40th	fortieth	40	XL
50	fifty	50th	fiftieth	50	L
60	sixty	60th	sixtieth	60	LX
70	seventy	70th	seventieth	70	LXX
80	eighty	80th	eightieth	80	LXXX
90	ninety	90th	ninetieth	90	XC
100	one hundred	100th	one hundredth	100	C
500	five hundred	500th	five hundredth	500	D
1,000	one thousand	1,000th	one thousandth	1,000	M

Symbols and punctuation marks							
+	plus	%	percent	&	and	?	question mark
−	minus	°	degree	@	at	!	exclamation mark
×	multiplied by	√	square root	©	copyright	—	dash
÷	divided by	π	pi	.	full stop	*	asterisk
=	equals	≈	is similar to	,	comma	()	parentheses
>	greater than	\$	dollar	;	semicolon	“ ”	quotation marks
<	less than	¢	cent	:	colon	,	apostrophe

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Countries of the world

On the next four pages is a list of the world’s countries, arranged in alphabetical order. Under each country’s name are its capital city, the name of the people who live there, and its currency. When a country has two capital cities, they are both listed. If there is a common abbreviation or symbol for the currency, such as \$ for **dollar**, this is shown in parentheses after the name of the currency.

- Afghanistan**
Capital city: Kabul
People: Afghans
Currency: Afghani (AF)
- Albania**
Capital city: Tirana
People: Albanians
Currency: Lek
- Algeria**
Capital city: Algiers
People: Algerians
Currency: Algerian Dinar (DA)
- Andorra**
Capital city: Andorra la Vella
People: Andorrans
Currency: Euro (€)
- Angola**
Capital city: Luanda
People: Angolans
Currency: Readjusted Kwanza (Kz)
- Antigua & Barbuda**
Capital city: St. John’s
People: Antiguan
Currency: Eastern Caribbean Dollar
- Argentina**
Capital city: Buenos Aires
People: Argentinians
Currency: New Argentine Peso
- Armenia**
Capital city: Yerevan
People: Armenians
Currency: Dram
- Australia**
Capital city: Canberra
People: Australians
Currency: Australian Dollar (AU\$)

- Austria**
Capital city: Vienna
People: Austrians
Currency: Euro (€)
- Azerbaijan**
Capital city: Baku
People: Azerbaijanis
Currency: New Manat
- Bahamas**
Capital city: Nassau
People: Bahamians
Currency: Bahamian Dollar
- Bahrain**
Capital city: Manama
People: Bahrainis
Currency: Bahraini Dinar
- Bangladesh**
Capital city: Dhaka
People: Bangladeshis
Currency: Taka (Tk)
- Barbados**
Capital city: Bridgetown
People: Barbadians
Currency: Barbados Dollar
- Belarus**
Capital city: Minsk
People: Belarusians
Currency: Belarussian Rouble
- Belgium**
Capital city: Brussels
People: Belgians
Currency: Euro (€)
- Belize**
Capital city: Belmopan
People: Belizeans
Currency: Belizean Dollar

- Benin**
Capital city: Porto-Novo
People: Beninese
Currency: CFA Franc*
- Bhutan**
Capital city: Thimphu
People: Bhutanese
Currency: Ngultrum (Nu)
- Bolivia**
Capital city: La Paz, Sucre
People: Bolivians
Currency: Boliviano (B)
- Bosnia & Herzegovina**
Capital city: Sarajevo
People: Bosnians
Currency: Marka
- Botswana**
Capital city: Gaborone
People: Batswana (singular Motswana)
Currency: Pula (P)
- Brazil**
Capital city: Brasília
People: Brazilians
Currency: Real
- Brunei**
Capital city: Bandar Seri Begawan
People: Bruneians
Currency: Brunei Dollar
- Bulgaria**
Capital city: Sofia
People: Bulgarians
Currency: Lev
- Burkina Faso**
Capital city: Ouagadougou
People: Burkinabé
Currency: CFA Franc*
- Myanmar (Burma)**
Capital city: Nay Pyi Taw
People: Burmese
Currency: Kyat (K)
- Burundi**
Capital city: Bujumbura
People: Burundians
Currency: Burundi Franc
- Cambodia**
Capital city: Phnom Penh
People: Cambodians
Currency: Riel

- Cameroon**
Capital city: Yaoundé
People: Cameroonians
Currency: CFA Franc*
- Canada**
Capital city: Ottawa
People: Canadians
Currency: Canadian Dollar (C\$)
- Cape Verde**
Capital city: Praia
People: Cape Verdeans
Currency: Cape Verde Escudo
- Central African Republic**
Capital city: Bangui
People: Central Africans
Currency: CFA Franc*
- Chad**
Capital city: N’Djamena
People: Chadians
Currency: CFA Franc*
- Chile**
Capital city: Santiago
People: Chileans
Currency: Chilean Peso
- China**
Capital city: Beijing
People: Chinese
Currency: Renminbi (known as Yuan)
- Colombia**
Capital city: Bogotá
People: Colombians
Currency: Colombian Peso
- Comoros**
Capital city: Moroni
People: Comorans
Currency: Comoros Franc
- Congo**
Capital city: Brazzaville
People: Congolese
Currency: CFA Franc*
- Congo, Democratic Republic**
Capital city: Kinshasa
People: Congolese
Currency: Congolese Franc
- Costa Rica**
Capital city: San José
People: Costa Ricans
Currency: Costa Rican Colón (¢)

Croatia

Capital city: Zagreb
People: Croats
Currency: Kuna

Cuba

Capital city: Havana
People: Cubans
Currency: Cuban Peso

Cyprus

Capital city: Nicosia
People: Cypriots
Currency: Euro (€)
(Turkish Lira in Northern Cyprus)

Czech Republic

Capital city: Prague
People: Czechs
Currency: Czech Koruna

Denmark

Capital city: Copenhagen
People: Danes
Currency: Danish Krone

Djibouti

Capital city: Djibouti
People: Djiboutians
Currency: Djibouti Franc

Dominica

Capital city: Roseau
People: Dominicans
Currency: Eastern Caribbean Dollar

Dominican Republic

Capital city: Santo Domingo
People: Dominicans
Currency: Dominican Republic Peso

East Timor

Capital city: Dili
People: East Timorese
Currency: US Dollar (\$)

Ecuador

Capital city: Quito
People: Ecuadoreans
Currency: US Dollar (\$)

Egypt

Capital city: Cairo
People: Egyptians
Currency: Egyptian Pound

El Salvador

Capital city: San Salvador
People: Salvadorans
Currency: Salvadorean Colón (¢), US dollar (\$)

Equatorial Guinea

Capital city: Malabo
People: Equatorial Guineans or Equatoguineans
Currency: CFA Franc*

Eritrea

Capital city: Asmara
People: Eritreans
Currency: Nakfa

Estonia

Capital city: Tallinn
People: Estonians
Currency: Kroon

Ethiopia

Capital city: Addis Ababa
People: Ethiopians
Currency: Ethiopian Birr (Br)

Fiji

Capital city: Suva
People: Fijians
Currency: Fiji Dollar

Finland

Capital city: Helsinki
People: Finns
Currency: Euro (€)

France

Capital city: Paris
People: French
Currency: Euro (€)

Gabon

Capital city: Libreville
People: Gabonese
Currency: CFA Franc*

Gambia

Capital city: Banjul
People: Gambians
Currency: Dalasi (D)

Georgia

Capital city: Tbilisi
People: Georgians
Currency: Lari

Germany

Capital city: Berlin
People: Germans
Currency: Euro (€)

Ghana

Capital city: Accra
People: Ghanaians
Currency: Cedi

Greece

Capital city: Athens
People: Greeks
Currency: Euro (€)

Grenada

Capital city: St. George's
People: Grenadians
Currency: Eastern Caribbean Dollar

Guatemala

Capital city: Guatemala City
People: Guatemalans
Currency: Quetzal (Q)

Guinea

Capital city: Conakry
People: Guineans
Currency: Guinea Franc

Guinea-Bissau

Capital city: Bissau
People: Guinea-Bissauans
Currency: CFA Franc*

Guyana

Capital city: Georgetown
People: Guyanese
Currency: Guyanese Dollar

Haiti

Capital city: Port-au-Prince
People: Haitians
Currency: Gourde (G)

Honduras

Capital city: Tegucigalpa
People: Hondurans
Currency: Lempira (L)

Hungary

Capital city: Budapest
People: Hungarians
Currency: Forint (Ft)

Iceland

Capital city: Reykjavik
People: Icelanders
Currency: Icelandic Krona

India

Capital city: New Delhi
People: Indians
Currency: Indian Rupee

Indonesia

Capital city: Jakarta
People: Indonesians
Currency: Rupiah (Rp)

Iran

Capital city: Tehran
People: Iranians
Currency: Iranian Rial

Iraq

Capital city: Baghdad
People: Iraqis
Currency: New Iraqi Dinar (ID)

Ireland

Capital city: Dublin
People: Irish
Currency: Euro (€)

Israel

Capital city: Jerusalem
People: Israelis
Currency: Shekel

Italy

Capital city: Rome
People: Italians
Currency: Euro (€)

Ivory Coast

Capital city: Yamoussoukro
People: Ivoirians
Currency: CFA Franc*

Jamaica

Capital city: Kingston
People: Jamaicans
Currency: Jamaican Dollar

Japan

Capital city: Tokyo
People: Japanese
Currency: Yen (Y)

Jordan

Capital city: Amman
People: Jordanians
Currency: Jordanian Dinar

Kazakhstan

Capital city: Astana
People: Kazakhstanis
Currency: Tenge

Kenya

Capital city: Nairobi
People: Kenyans
Currency: Kenya Shilling

Kiribati

Capital city: Tarawa Atoll
People: I-Kiribatis
Currency: Australian Dollar (AU\$)

Kosovo (disputed)

Capital city: Pristina
People: Kosovars or Kosovacs
Currency: Euro (€)

Kuwait

Capital city: Kuwait City
People: Kuwaitis
Currency: Kuwaiti Dinar

Kyrgyzstan

Capital city: Bishkek
People: Kyrgyz
Currency: Som

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Laos

Capital city: Vientiane
People: Laotians or Laos
Currency: New Kip (KN)

Latvia

Capital city: Riga
People: Latvians
Currency: Lats

Lebanon

Capital city: Beirut
People: Lebanese
Currency: Lebanese Pound (£L)

Lesotho

Capital city: Maseru
People: Basotho (singular Mosotho)
Currency: Loti (M)

Liberia

Capital city: Monrovia
People: Liberians
Currency: Liberian Dollar

Libya

Capital city: Tripoli
People: Libyans
Currency: Libyan Dinar

Liechtenstein

Capital city: Vaduz
People: Liechtensteiners
Currency: Swiss Franc

Lithuania

Capital city: Vilnius
People: Lithuanians
Currency: Litas

Luxembourg

Capital city: Luxembourg-Ville
People: Luxembourgers
Currency: Euro (€)

Macedonia

Capital city: Skopje
People: Macedonians
Currency: Macedonian Denar

Madagascar

Capital city: Antananarivo
People: Malagasy
Currency: Ariary

Malawi

Capital city: Lilongwe
People: Malawians
Currency: Malawi Kwacha

Malaysia

Capital city: Kuala Lumpur, Putrajaya
People: Malaysians
Currency: Ringgit

Maldives

Capital city: Male
People: Maldivians
Currency: Rufiyaa

Mali

Capital city: Bamako
People: Malians
Currency: CFA Franc*

Malta

Capital city: Valletta
People: Maltese
Currency: Euro (€)

Marshall Islands

Capital city: Majuro
People: Marshallese
Currency: US Dollar (\$)

Mauritania

Capital city: Nouakchott
People: Mauritians
Currency: Ouguiya (UM)

Mauritius

Capital city: Port Louis
People: Mauritians
Currency: Mauritian Rupee (Mau Rs)

Mexico

Capital city: Mexico City
People: Mexicans
Currency: Mexican Peso

Micronesia

Capital city: Palikir (Pohnpei Island)
People: Micronesians
Currency: US Dollar (\$)

Moldova

Capital city: Chisinau
People: Moldovans
Currency: Moldovan Leu

Monaco

Capital city: Monaco-Ville
People: Monégasques or Monacans
Currency: Euro (€)

Mongolia

Capital city: Ulan Bator
People: Mongolians
Currency: Tugrik

Montenegro

Capital city: Podgorica
People: Montenegrins
Currency: Euro (€)

Morocco

Capital city: Rabat
People: Moroccans
Currency: Moroccan Dirham (DH)

Mozambique

Capital city: Maputo
People: Mozambicans
Currency: New Metical (Mt.)

Namibia

Capital city: Windhoek
People: Namibians
Currency: Namibian Dollar

Nauru

Capital city: None
People: Nauruans
Currency: Australian Dollar (AU\$)

Nepal

Capital city: Kathmandu
People: Nepalese
Currency: Nepalese Rupee

Netherlands

Capital city: Amsterdam
Seat of government: The Hague
People: Dutch
Currency: Euro (€)

New Zealand

Capital city: Wellington
People: New Zealanders
Currency: New Zealand Dollar (NZ\$)

Nicaragua

Capital city: Managua
People: Nicaraguans
Currency: New Córdoba

Niger

Capital city: Niamey
People: Nigeriens
Currency: CFA Franc*

Nigeria

Capital city: Abuja
People: Nigerians
Currency: Naira (N)

North Korea

Capital city: Pyongyang
People: North Koreans
Currency: North Korean Won

Norway

Capital city: Oslo
People: Norwegians
Currency: Norwegian Krone

Oman

Capital city: Muscat
People: Omanis
Currency: Omani Rial

Pakistan

Capital city: Islamabad
People: Pakistanis
Currency: Pakistani Rupee

Palau

Capital city: Melekeok
People: Palauans
Currency: US Dollar (\$)

Panama

Capital city: Panama City
People: Panamanians
Currency: Balboa (B)

Papua New Guinea

Capital city: Port Moresby
People: Papua New Guineans
Currency: Kina (K)

Paraguay

Capital city: Asunción
People: Paraguayans
Currency: Guaraní (G)

Peru

Capital city: Lima
People: Peruvians
Currency: New Sol (NS)

Philippines

Capital city: Manila
People: Filipinos
Currency: Philippine Peso

Poland

Capital city: Warsaw
People: Poles
Currency: Zloty (Zl)

Portugal

Capital city: Lisbon
People: Portuguese
Currency: Euro (€)

Qatar

Capital city: Doha
People: Qataris
Currency: Qatar Riyal

Romania

Capital city: Bucharest
People: Romanians
Currency: New Romanian Leu (lei)

Russian Federation

Capital city: Moscow
People: Russians
Currency: Russian Rouble

Rwanda

Capital city: Kigali
People: Rwandans
Currency: Rwanda Franc

Saint Kitts & Nevis

Capital city: Basseterre
People: Kittitians, Nevisians
Currency: Eastern Caribbean Dollar

Saint Lucia

Capital city: Castries
People: St. Lucians
Currency: Eastern Caribbean Dollar

Saint Vincent & the Grenadines

Capital city: Kingstown
People: St. Vincentians
Currency: Eastern Caribbean Dollar

Samoa

Capital city: Apia
People: Samoans
Currency: Tala

San Marino

Capital city: San Marino
People: Sammarinese
Currency: Euro (€)

São Tomé & Príncipe

Capital city: São Tomé
People: São Tomeans
Currency: Dobra

Saudi Arabia

Capital city: Riyadh, Jiddah
People: Saudi Arabians
Currency: Saudi Riyal

Senegal

Capital city: Dakar
People: Senegalese
Currency: CFA Franc*

Serbia

Capital city: Belgrade
People: Serbs
Currency: Dinar

Seychelles

Capital city: Victoria
People: Seychellois
Currency: Seychelles Rupee

Sierra Leone

Capital city: Freetown
People: Sierra Leoneans
Currency: Leone (Le)

Singapore

Capital city: Singapore
People: Singaporeans
Currency: Singapore Dollar (S\$)

Slovakia

Capital city: Bratislava
People: Slovaks
Currency: Slovak Koruna

Slovenia

Capital city: Ljubljana
People: Slovenians
Currency: Euro (€)

Solomon Island

Capital city: Honiara
People: Solomon Islanders
Currency: Solomon Islands Dollar

Somalia

Capital city: Mogadishu
People: Somalis
Currency: Somali Shilin

South Africa

Capital city: Pretoria, Cape Town, Bloemfontein
People: South Africans
Currency: Rand (R)

South Korea

Capital city: Seoul
People: South Koreans
Currency: South Korean Won

Spain

Capital city: Madrid
People: Spaniards
Currency: Euro (€)

Sri Lanka

Capital city: Colombo
People: Sri Lankans
Currency: Sri Lanka Rupee (SL Rs)

Sudan

Capital city: Khartoum
People: Sudanese
Currency: New Sudanese Pound or Dinar

Suriname

Capital city: Paramaribo
People: Surinamers
Currency: Surinamese Dollar

Swaziland

Capital city: Mbabane
People: Swazis
Currency: Lilangeni (E)

Sweden

Capital city: Stockholm
People: Swedes
Currency: Swedish Krona

Switzerland

Capital city: Bern
People: Swiss
Currency: Swiss Franc

Syria

Capital city: Damascus
People: Syrians
Currency: Syrian Pound

Tajikistan

Capital city: Dushanbe
People: Tajiks
Currency: Somoni

Tanzania

Capital city: Dodoma
People: Tanzanians
Currency: Tanzanian Shilling (T Sh)

Thailand

Capital city: Bangkok
People: Thais
Currency: Baht (B)

Togo

Capital city: Lomé
People: Togolese
Currency: CFA Franc*

Tonga

Capital city: Nuku'alofa
People: Tongans
Currency: Pa'anga (Tongan Dollar)

Trinidad & Tobago

Capital city: Port-of-Spain
People: Trinidadians, Tobagonians
Currency: Trinidad and Tobago Dollar

Tunisia

Capital city: Tunis
People: Tunisians
Currency: Tunisian Dinar

Turkey

Capital city: Ankara
People: Turks
Currency: New Turkish Lira

Turkmenistan

Capital city: Ashgabat
People: Turkmen
Currency: Manat

Tuvalu

Capital city: Fongafale (Funafuti Atoll)
People: Tuvaluans
Currency: Australian Dollar and Tuvaluan Dollar

Uganda

Capital city: Kampala
People: Ugandans
Currency: New Uganda Shilling

Ukraine

Capital city: Kiev
People: Ukrainians
Currency: Hryvna

United Arab Emirates

Capital city: Abu Dhabi
People: Emiratis
Currency: UAE Dirham

United Kingdom

Capital city: London
People: British
Currency: Pound Sterling (£)

United States of America

Capital city: Washington, D.C.
People: Americans
Currency: US Dollar (\$)

Uruguay

Capital city: Montevideo
People: Uruguayans
Currency: Uruguayan Peso

Uzbekistan

Capital city: Tashkent
People: Uzbekistanis
Currency: Som

Vanuatu

Capital city: Port Vila
People: Ni-Vanuatu
Currency: Vatu

Vatican City

Capital city: Vatican City
People: Citizens of the Vatican
Currency: Euro (€)

Venezuela

Capital city: Caracas
People: Venezuelans
Currency: Bolívar (Bs)

Vietnam

Capital city: Hanoi
People: Vietnamese
Currency: Đồng (D)

Yemen

Capital city: Sana
People: Yemenis
Currency: Yemeni Rial

Zambia

Capital city: Lusaka
People: Zambians
Currency: Zambian Kwacha (K)

Zimbabwe

Capital city: Harare
People: Zimbabweans
Currency: Zimbabwe Dollar (Z\$)

* **The CFA Franc** is used in a number of French-speaking African countries. CFA stands for "Communauté Financière Africaine".

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

j

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

r

s

t

u

v

w

x

y

z

Acknowledgments

Dorling Kindersley would like to thank the following people for their help in the production of this book:

Additional design assistance

Bronwen Davies, Susan Downing, Karen Fielding, David Gillingwater, Tim Lewis, Sharon Peters, Peter Radcliffe, Sarah Scrutton, Hans Verkroost, Martin Wilson

Additional editorial assistance

Monica Byles, Helen Drew, Stella Love

Picture research

Kathleen Collier, Catherine O'Rourke, Lucy Pringle, Jenny Rayner, Joanna Thomas

Additional illustrations

Janos Marffy, Liz Roberts

Additional photography

Simon Battensby, Paul Bricknell, Geoff Brightling, Jane Burton, Peter Chadwick, Matthew Chattle, Gordon Clayton, M. Crockett, Geoff Dann, Tom Dobbie, Philip Dowell, Michael Dunning, Andreas von Einsiedel, Jo Foord, Philip Gatward, Mike Good, Christi Graham, Frank Greenaway, Peter Hayman, Stephen Hayward, Alan Hills, Jacqui Hurst, Colin Keates, Gary Kevin, Dave King, Bob Langrish, Cyril Laubscher, Bill Ling, Liz McAulay, Andrew McRobb, Diana Miller, Graham Miller, Ray Moller, David Murray, Jack Nicholls, Martin Norris, Ian O'Leary, Stephen Oliver, Daniel Pangbourne, Roger Phillips, Martin Plomer, Laurence Pordes, Susanna Price, Dave Rudkin, Karl Shone, Steve Shott, James Stevenson, Clive Streeter, Harry Taylor, Kim Taylor, David Ward, Matthew Ward. Philip Dowell © 1990 and 1991 page 90 goat and kid; page 111 jaguar; page 118 leopard; page 183 sheep. Jerry Young © 1990 and 1991 page 168 rattlesnake, flying gecko, milkshake, today lizard, starred tortoise, and leopard gecko; page 217 green toad; page 242 wolf.

Models

Shiran Abay, Di Anguige, Sarah Ashun, Oliver Barber, Lindsey Bender, Marvin Campbell, Louis Chan, Puishan Chan, Danny Cole, Andy Crawford, Ebu Djemal, Helen Drew, Andrea East, Josey Edwards, David Gillingwater, Emily Gorton, Julia Gorton, Kashi Gorton, Steve Gorton, Sheena Haria, Laura Hobbs, Paul Holden, Marcus James, Stella Love, Naomi McLean, Rachael Malicki, Jamie May, Ryan Munroe, Emily Parsons, Jade Reading, Jonathon Reed, Tim Ridley, Matthew Saunders, Sarah Scrutton, Silpa Shah, Lee Simmons, Cheryl Telfer, Nicola Tuxworth, Aubrey Weiner, Martin Wilson, David York.

Additional acknowledgments

Anatomical models on pages 20, 98, 114, 120, 122, 202 and 232 supplied by Somso Modelle, Coburg, Germany.

Chest page 43, chest of drawers page 65, and fan page 75 loaned by Gore Booker, Covent Garden, London; drum page 67 loaned by Foote's Musical Instruments, London; leotard page 118 loaned by Porselli, Covent Garden, London; cup page 55 loaned by Whittard, Covent Garden, London; chess set page 43 loaned by the British Museum Shop, London.

Thanks to Clark Denmark at the Centre for Deaf Studies, Bristol University for advice.

Thanks also to the BCP contributors: Gemma Casajuana (Conversion manager), Miguel Cunha (Conversion coordinator), Colleen Dixon (Conversion DTP), Marc Staples (Conversion DTP)

Picture agency credits

KEY: a-above; b-below/bottom; c-center; f-far; l-left; r-right; t-top.

The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:

Action Plus/Tony Henshaw 198cr. Ayrton Metals Ltd. and The Platinum Advisory Centre 112car, 112cbfr. Beaulieu Motor Museum 39cl, 222tr. The Bridgeman Art Library/Bonhams, London 112cb. Kremlin Museums, Moscow 54tl. British Museum 17cfr, 35tfl, 99bfr, 112ca. British Museum/Museum of Mankind 221cafl. John Bulmer 224tr. Christies's Images 9cbl, 131cbr. The Coleman Company 38tfr. Bruce Coleman Limited/Erwin and Peggy Bauer 226bfl; John Cancalosi 179tfl; Peter Davey 42cafr, 211tfr; P. Evans 18cr; Christer Fredriksson 22car; Frans Lanting 70tl; Luiz Claudio Marigo 124tc; William S. Paton 104bfl; Eckart Pott 166br; Andy Purcell 8bfl, 142car; Hans Reinhard 6c, 7tl, 25bfr, 58cfl, 70tfl, 163cbl; Dr Frjeder Sauer 147bfr; Konrad Woth 97tr. Compix/A and J Somaya 56tr. Corbis Theo Allofs 66ftr; Andrea Rugg Photography/Beateworks 115cl; Atlantide Phototravel 25cl, 103tl, 169cbr; Bilderbuch/Design Pics 169bl; B. Bird/Zefa 211cfrb; Christophe Boisvieux 22ftl; Ron Chapple 171cbr; Mike Chew 20cra; Philip Coblenz/Brand X 176clb; Chris Collins 242br; CS Productions/Brand X 200tr; Wolfgang Deuter/Zefa 153br;

Dex Image 199fcr; ER Productions 174clb; Fancy/Veer 208fcrb; First/Zefa 45cra; Bertrand Gardel/Hemis 130br; Uden Graham/Redlink 162fcrb; Mike Grandmaison 176cr; John Harper 46fbl; Ian Hodgson/Reuters 203fbr; Jose Luis Pelaez, Inc. 186cra; Sean Justice 63bl; Jutta Klee 57fbr; Kulka/zefa 192cbr; Frans Lanting 163fbl; Klaus Leidorf/Zefa 15fbl; Robert Llewellyn 141cla; John Lund 222bl; Mango Productions 120fcrb; Lawrence Manning 232fbl; Robert Marien 226fcla; Kevin Mason/Loop Images 91ftr; MM Productions 150cr; Moodboard 132fclb, 169fcla, 185cla, 212fcl; David Muench 91tr; Ron Nickel/Design Pics 24tl; Richard T. Nowitz 220fclb; Owaki - Kulla 130tr; Carl Purcell 171fcla; Radius Images 227fbl; Jose Fuste Raga 162br; Eddy Risch/EPA 73ftl; Bill Ross/Corbis Outline 139tr; Charles E. Rotkin 165fbr; Galen Rowell 119fcrb; Kevin Schafer 235tr; Ted Spiegel 77fbl; Thinkstock 190ftl, 196cbr; Stefano Torrione/Hemis 139fclb; Visuals Unlimited 228fcr; R. Wallace/Stock Photos/zefa 71ftr; Weatherstock 215tl; P. Wilson/Zefa 237fcr; Jim Zuckerman 241cr. **DK Images** Jerry Young 15ftr, 171br; NASA 68fcla, 172ftl; Philips Domestic Appliances and Personal Care 69tr; Rough Guides 192bl, 208fclb; The Science Museum, London 43br. **Massey Ferguson** 152bfr. **Ermine Street Guard** 195cbl. **Getty Images** 192cr; Altrendo Travel 235ftl; Image Bank/Tim Graham 160fcrb; Daryl Benson 215bl; Alistair Berg 181fclb; Philippe Bourseiller 232bl; C Squared Studios 219cbl; Rosemary Calvert 218fcla; Gabriel M. Covian 227cbr; Andy Crawford 113cra; Creative Crop 162tr; CSA Plastock 171fcr; Dex Image/Luxe Party 125fbl; Digital Vision/Erik Von Weber 114cra; Digital Vision/Robert Glusic 116cra; Digital Vision/Steve Wisbauer 118cr; Digital Vision/VisionsofAmerica/Joe Sohm 45tl; Sergio Dionisio 34bl; Dorling Kindersley 105fclb; EschCollection 234fbr; David Evans 240cbr; Don Farrall 218fcla; Stephen Ferry/Liaison 62tr; James Forte 198bl; Jill Fromer 200cla; fStop/Stephan Zirwes 116br; Yasuhide Fumoto 212clb; Gallo Images/Travel Ink 125fbr; Glowimages 20ftl; Gorilla Creative Images/Harri Tahvanainen 136clb; Gavin Gough 200ftr; Frank Greenaway 171tr; Iconica/2008 ML Harris Photography 41cla; Iconica/Caroline von Tuempling 95fcr; Image Bank/PM Images 49fbl; Image Bank/Sasha Weleber 101cbr; Mathew Imaging/WireImage 21fbr; Seth Joel 195cbr; John 222tl; Taylor S. Kennedy 206fcla; Pornchai Kittiwongsakul/AFP 14br; Darryl Leniuk 165fcla; Lonely Planet Images/Lee Foster 23br; Lonely Planet Images/Peter Hendrie 110fcla; David Madison 174cla; Simon McComb 237cbr; Ethan Miller 38fcla; Mr. Sunshine 202cbr; National Geographic/David Evans 59fclb; National Geographic/Paul Nicklen 107fcr; Mark Nolan 42ftl; Thomas Northcut 224tr; Per-Anders Pettersson 113fcr; PhotoAlto/Matthieu Spohn 127bl; Photodisc 88bc, 111bl, 193fcrb; Photodisc/Don Farrall 154ftr; Photodisc/Jack Hollingsworth 50cla; Photodisc/Jeff Maloney 114fbl; Photodisc/Kim Carson 25fcrb; Photodisc/Paul Burns 103fcla; Photographer's Choice/Michael Rosenfeld 37cbl; Photographer's Choice/Simeone Huber/Slow Images 40ftl; Photographer's Choice/Tom Walker 144bl; Photographer's Choice/Travelpix Ltd. 60br; Photographer's Choice RF/George Diebold 12tr; Photographer's Choice RR/Fry Design Ltd. 146tr; Photographer's Choice RR/Geoff Du Feu 50fcr; Photonica/Sabine Scheckel 84tl; Photonica/Silvia Otte 62fclb; Andrea Pistolesi 212cbr; Plush Studios 165bl; Poncho 167era; Pool Photo 59ftl; Mike Powell 203cbr; Rich Reid 206br; Robert Harding World Imagery/Christian Kober 169cla; Lew Robertson 150cra; Rubberball Productions 88bl; Rubberball Productions/Mike Kemp 111cla; Pete Ryan 163cr; David Sanger 242clb; Science Faction/Jim Reed 96bl; Zack Seckler 203fcrb; Erik Simonsen 175br; Check Six 211ftl; John Slater 196cra; Luke Stettner 63bc; Stockbyte 12ftr; Stone/Jeff Hunter 117bl; Stone/Kevin Cooley 34tr; Stone/Oliver Benn/Royal Philharmonic Orchestra 142tl; Stone/Rex Butcher 157br; Stone/Roger Tully 64fcla; Stone/Walter Hodges 109fbr; Taxi/Francesco Bittichese 154fclb; Taxi/Jasper White/jasper@jasperwhite.co.uk 88fbl; Taxi/Kevin Cooley 47fcla; Alan Thornton 166fcrb; Travel Ink 166cl; UpperCut Images/John Churchman 129fbl; Slaven Vlasic 130fcrb; Gary Wade 201cla; Gordon Wiltsie 196clb, 206clb; Yashoda 43fcla. **Greenwich Maritime Museum** 31tr, 31tl, 31cr, 31car, 109cl. **Robert Harding Picture Library**/G and P Corrigan 131tl. **Michael Holford** 112cal. **The Image Bank**/Charles S. Allen 5cl, 6bfr, 39b; Gary Crallé 24cbr; Gary Gay 103tr; Alvis Uptis 23ftr. **NASA** 21fcla, 68tr, 68 cafr, 172 tfl. **National Museum of Denmark, Copenhagen** 112tl. **Natural History Photographic Agency**/Peter Johnson 100cl; David Woodfall 17bfr; Norbert Wu 111ftr. **Nature Photographers Ltd**/David Hutton 115bfr. **Oxford Scientific Films** 76bfr, 99cafr, 131cfl. **The Pitt Rivers Museum** 183cbfr. **Planet Earth Pictures**/Robert Canis 131cafr. **Quadrant** 220br. **Rough Guides** 192 bl. **Rough Guides**/ Alex Robinson 208 bfl. **Science Photo Library** 224cal/John Burbridge 80cbfr; CNRI 83cbfr; Peter Menzel 162cbr; Astrid and Hanns-Frieder Michler 245br; Claude Nuridsany and Marie Perennou 192cbr; Tim Selby 232cfl; US Department of Energy 231tr. **Tony Stone Images** 120cbfl, 244bfl/Tim Beddow 226cfl; Dave Bjorn 207tr. **Thistle Quilters/The Quilter's Guild** 161cafr. **Warwick Castle** 95br. **The Worshipful Company of Goldsmiths**/Andrew Grima 112bfl.

Jacket images: Front: Corbis: Corbis: Matthias Kulka/Zefa cb; © 2008 The LEGO Group: MINDSTORMS is a trademark of the LEGO Group clb; Science Photo Library: Mehau Kulyk cr. Back: Alamy Images: Trip tr; Corbis: Tim Davis/Davis Lynn Wildlife clb; Kulka/zefa tc.

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders. Dorling Kindersley apologizes for any unintentional omissions and would be pleased, in such cases, to add an acknowledgment in future editions.

All other images © Dorling Kindersley
For further information see: www.dkimages.com